This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

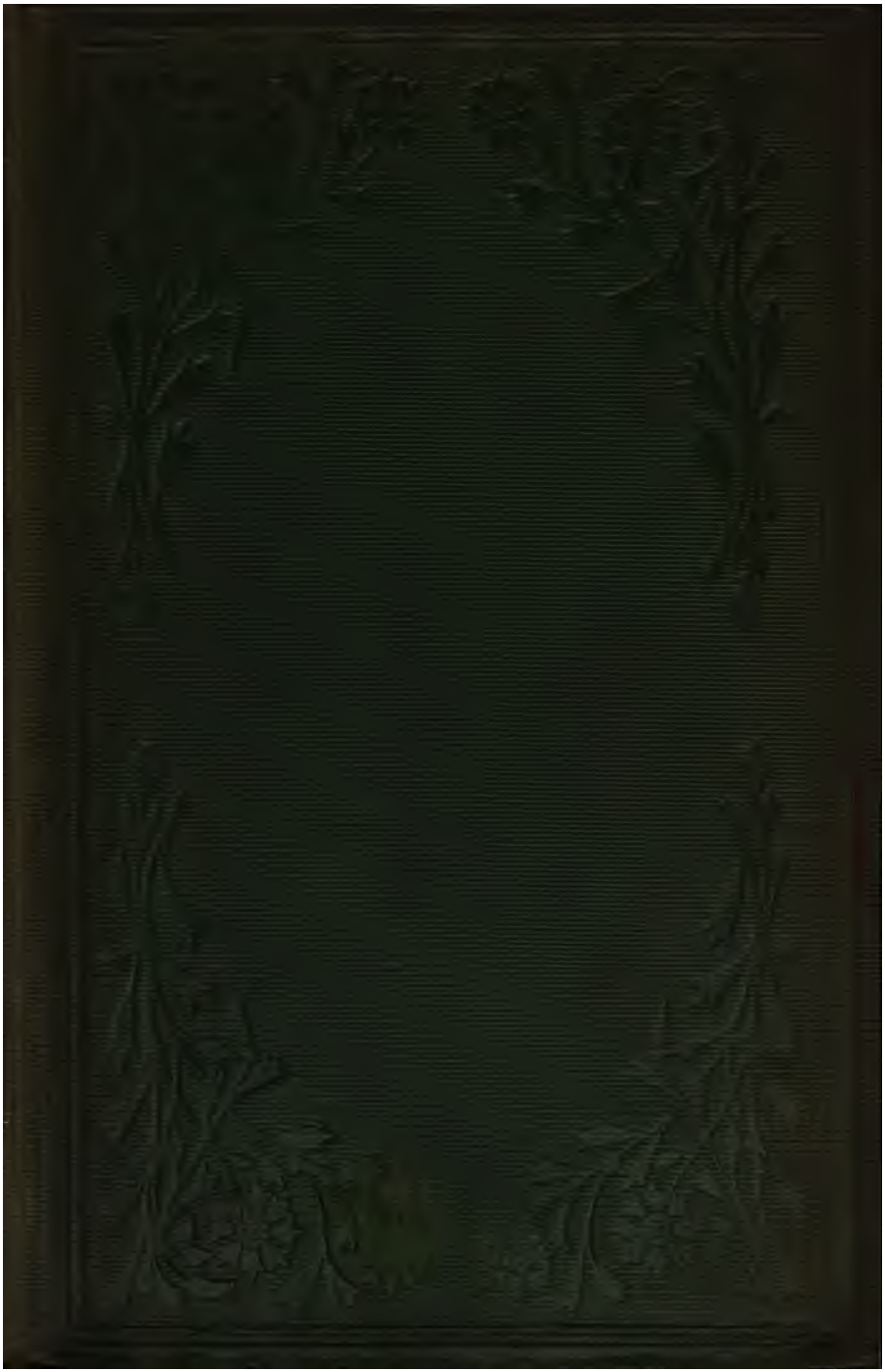
+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`



600094086X

MATERIALS FOR TRANSLATING

FROM

ENGLISH

INTO

GERMAN.

BY

A. HEIMANN, PH.D.,
PROFESSOR OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE
IN UNIVERSITY COLLEGE, LONDON.

SECOND EDITION,
CORRECTED AND AUGMENTED.

LONDON:
DAVID NUTT, 270 STRAND.

1859.

303. c. 76.

BIBLIOTHECA BODLEIANA

PREFACE.

A PROFICIENT scholar in German ought to be able to do four things well: to explain the structure of the language; to read a German book; to speak with some fluency; and to write a letter, or to translate a part of an English book into German without the assistance of Dictionary and Grammar. The greatest number of pupils master the three first points, but very few succeed in the last. It is acknowledged to be the most difficult of all. Now in order to smooth the way towards acquiring it, I have undertaken this volume. It contains a course of carefully selected and not very easy Exercises on the chief parts of Grammar, and a variety of fragments taken from good prose-writers, with notes, which both explain grammatical difficulties, and give a complete vocabulary, since it has been found that small Dictionaries afford but insufficient aid, and the large ones, on account of the great number of meanings mentioned under one word, often impede and puzzle the student instead of guiding him.

I am convinced that those who have gone through a good part of this book, will gain a facility in expression, which must ultimately not only make the task of writing a composition or rendering an English piece into German very easy, but also contribute to a greater proficiency in speaking, and to a better understanding of the classical writers of Germany.

A. H.

UNIVERSITY COLLEGE, LONDON.
April 1851.

PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION.

THIS Edition contains some points which will prove of great service to the student. It was found by my own experience, and corroborated by that of other intelligent teachers, that the beginning of the Exercises was too difficult. I, therefore, added three introductory chapters (p. 1-10) which will materially facilitate the theory of the arrangement of words. In the chapter on Punctuation one Period was added (the 15th, p. 117) to show how to divide the clauses in a complex of chief and subordinate sentences; and in the Second Part I inserted twelve pieces *without* notes, (p. 233-244) to give the student an opportunity of proving his acquirements if no help is offered to him.

Besides these additions, I revised the notes, and introduced many corrections, of which some were suggested by two excellent scholars of German, Mr. A. Sonnenschein, and Mr. J. S. Stallybrass. To the latter gentleman I am especially indebted, and I publicly express to him my best thanks for his kindness in going through the whole book, and correcting all terms and phrases which were not in accordance with the spirit of the English language.

A. H.

UNIVERSITY COLLEGE, LONDON.
October, 1858.

CONTENTS.

PART I.

		PAGE
EXERCISES ON THE CHIEF RULES OF GRAMMAR		1—117
CHAP. I.	On the arrangement of Words in a Sentence	1—16
II.	On the Articles	16—19
III.	On the Declension of Substantives	19—26
IV.	On the Declension of Nouns Proper	26—28
V.	On the Declension of Adjectives	28—36
VI.	On the Declension of Adjectives in the Comparative and Superlative	36—38
VII.	On Numbers	39—44
VIII.	On Pronouns	45—51
IX.	On Verbs Auxiliary, Active, Passive, Neuter, and Reflective	51—58
X.	On Compounded Verbs	58—62
XI.	On Verbs of Mood	62—67
XII.	On the Indicative and Subjunctive	67—75
XIII.	On the Imperative	76—79
XIV.	On the Infinitive	79—83
XV.	On the Participles	83—89
XVI.	On Verbs construed with a Genitive or Dative Case	89—93
XVII.	On Adverbs	93—99
XVIII.	On Prepositions	99—107
XIX.	On Conjunctions	107—114
XX.	On Punctuation	115—117

PART II.

TRANSLATION OF CONNECTED PIECES		119—250
I.	The Desolation of Tyranny (*Lane, Notes to Arabian Nights*)	119—120
II.	Perfection (*Colton's, Lacon*)	120—121
III.	Vicar of Wakefield (*Washington Irving*)	121—123
IV.	A Tale of Terror (*Half Hours*)	123—129
V.	Desire of Knowledge (*Boswell*)	129—130
VI.	The Sack of Magdeburg (*Half Hours*)	130—141
VII.	Letter to a Friend	141—142
VIII.	Letter to a Friend	142—143
IX.	Griseldis (*Letters from the Baltic*)	143—149

		PAGE
X.	Character of Oliver Goldsmith (*Washington Irving*)	149—151
XI.	Goldsmith's Parentage and Birthplace (*Washington Irving*)	151—154
XII.	Goldsmith's Father (*Washington Irving*)	154—156
XIII.	Goldsmith Rejected by the Bishop (*Washington Irving*)	156—157
XIV.	Goldsmith's Letter to his Mother	157—164
XV.	Letter to a Friend	165
XVI.	Wolves in Courland (*Letters from the Baltic*)	165—170
XVII.	The Spectator's Introduction (*Addison*)	170—176
XVIII.	The Vanity of a Great Man (*Half Hours*)	176—178
XIX.	On Popular Superstition (*Addison*)	178—183
XX.	On Stories of Ghosts (*Addison*)	183—188
XXI.	Letter to a Friend	189—190
XXII.	Paoli and Napoleon (*Lockhart*)	190—193
XXIII.	Napoleon at Toulon (*Lockhart*)	193—203
XXIV.	Josephine de Beauharnois (*Lockhart*)	203—205
XXV.	The Battles of the Pyramids and of Aboukir (*Lockhart*)	206—212
XXVI.	The Voyage (*Washington Irving*)	212—215
XXVII.	Character of Lorenzo de' Medici (*Roscoe*)	215—219
XXVIII.	Influence of Liberty on the Florentines (*Roscoe*)	219—220
XXIX.	On Dr. Johnson's Lives of the Poets (*Roscoe*)	220—221
XXX.	Study of Ancient Literature in Italy (*Roscoe*)	221—222
XXXI.	Character of the Earl of Strafford (*Macaulay*)	223—224
XXXII.	Christian, King of Denmark and Sweden, in Italy (*Roscoe*)	224—225
XXXIII.	William, Prince of Orange (*Macaulay*)	226—228
XXXIV.	Generosity of Louis the Fourteenth (*Macaulay*)	228—233
XXXV.	Letter to a Friend	233
XXXVI.	" " " "	234
XXXVII.	" " " "	234—235
XXXVIII.	A Mother's Revenge (*Clark*)	236
XXXIX.	On History of Manners (*Boswell*)	236—237
XL.	A Brother Philosopher (*Brougham*)	237
XLI.	The Queen's Thanks to the Army (*Panmure*)	237—238
XLII.	The Occupation of Alexander Severus (*Gibbon*)	238—239
XLIII.	On Howard (*Burke*)	239—240
XLIV.	Atahuallpa, the Last of the Incas (*Prescott*)	240—241
XLV.	Richard Duke of Gloucester (*Mackintosh*)	241—243
XLVI.	On Examinations (*Whewell*)	243—244
XLVII.	Sir Robert Walpole's Reply to Sir John St. Aubin's Speech for Repealing the Septennial Act	245—248
XLVIII.	On Sincerity (*Tillotson*)	248—250

MATERIALS

FOR

TRANSLATING FROM ENGLISH INTO GERMAN.

PART I.

EXERCISES ON THE CHIEF RULES OF GRAMMAR.

I. On the Arrangement of Words.

A. In Chief Sentences beginning with the Nominative.

1. I describe[a] to you my whole[b] fate.[c]

2. He laid himself upon the grass[a], and his friend watched[b] beside[c] him.

3. I frankly[a] ask[b] your assistance.[c]

4. This gives[a] me more uneasiness[b] than all the[c] care[d] for[e] my future[f] fate.

5. He came into the town[a] at the break of day.[b]

6. They sate by the side of their mother during the whole evening.

---

1. [a] beſchreiben. [b] ganz. [c] Schickſal, *n.*

2. [a] Gras, *n.* [b] wachen. [c] neben, with Dat.

3. [a] freimüthig; and mark, when the Nominative begins, the Verb must follow immediately. [b] bitten um. [c] Beiſtand, *m.*

4. [a] verurſachen. [b] Unruhe. [c] The article is not translated after *all.* [d] Sorge, *f.* [e] wegen, with Gen. [f] künftig.

5. [a] The Adverb of Time precedes that of Place. [b] beim Anbruch des Tages.

7. One of the riders playfully[a] concealed[b] his face[c] under[d] his mantle.

8. Charlotte came to Weimar that very[a] winter.

9. Schiller, for the first time[a], met[b] Göthe here on[c] his return[d] from Italy.

10. He never entirely[a] recovered[b] his health.[c]

11. Nothing ever[a] produced[b] a more durable[c] influence[d] upon an author's genius[e], than the deliberate[f] and systematic[g] recurrence[h] to[i] Hellenic[j] literature.[k]

12. The society of the Scholars[a] in Jena was more congenial[b] to Schiller.

13. I shall have[d] no rest[a] until[b] then.[c]

14. The sister was highly[a] prepossessing[b] both[c] in form[d] and[c] face.[e]

15. Schiller, then, was[a] appointed[b] with a fixed[c], though[d] very limited[e] salary[f], Poet[g] to[h] the Theatre[i] at[j] Mannheim, at that time[k] the first[l] in Germany.[m]

---

7. [a] ſcherzend. [b] verbergen. [c] Geſicht, *n.* [d] unter, with Acc.

8. [a] *say* just in the same, gerade in demſelben.

9. [a] zum erſten Male. [b] treffen. [c] bei, with Dat. [d] Rückkehr, *f.*

10. [a] völlig. [b] wieder gewinnen (and put wieder last). [c] Geſundheit.

11. [a] je. [b] haben. [c] dauernd. [d] Einfluß, *m.* [e] Geiſt, *m.* (*say* upon the genius of an author.) [f] beſonnen. [g] geregelt. [h] Rückkehr *f.* [i] *say* to the zur. [j] griechiſch. [k] Literatur, *f.*

12. [a] der Gelehrte. [b] zuträglich, and mark, the last place in the sentence is taken by the Predicate, when no Participle or Infinitive follows.

13. [a] Ruhe, *f.* [b] bis. [c] dahin. [d] The Infinitive stands always last.

14. [a] höchſt. [b] einnehmend. [c] ſowohl — als auch. [d] Geſtalt, *f.* [e] Antlitz, *n.*

15. [a] Mark, this is the Imperfect Passive. [b] angeſtellt. [c] feſt. [d] obgleich. [e] beſchränkt. [f] Gehalt, *n.* [g] Dichter (*and say* as a zum). [h] *say* of. [i] Theater, *n.* [j] in. [k] damals. [l] mark, this is an Apposition to Theatre. [m] Deutſchland.

16. Captain[a] Nicholson had been engaged[b] in civil[c] employments[d] in the Punjaub for[e] some years.[f]

17. He, therefore[a], resolved[b] to end the war[c], and advanced[d] slowly[e] to support[f] his negotiations[g] by[h] the show[i] of force.[j]

18. It would have been impossible[a] for the small Roman ships[b] to encounter[c] te heavier[d] vessels[e] of the Carthaginians.[f]

19. It is no light[a] matter[b] for landsmen[c] to become seamen.[d]

20. Illyria[a] would then have been occupied[b] as[c] a Province.[d]

21. You can bring it hither[b] to me.[a]

22. They never[a] grudged[b] it to me.

23. I dedicate[a] this work[b] to you with the[c] more pleasure.[d]

---

16. [a] der Hauptmann. [b] beſchäftigt. [c] bürgerlich. [d] Amt, *n.* (*pl.* Aemter). [e] während, with Gen. *f.* Jahr, *n.* (*pl.* — e).

17. [a] daher. [b] beſchließen. [c] Krieg, *m.* [d] vorrücken, to step onward, (*and say* stepped slowly onward). [e] langſam. [f] unterſtützen, which must stand last. [g] Unterhandlung, *f.* [h] durch, with Acc. [i] Glanz, *m.* [j] Macht, *f.*

18. [a] unmöglich. [b] Schiff, *n.* (*pl.* — e). [c] begegnen, with Dat. [d] ſchwer. [e] Fahrzeug, *n.* (*Pl.* — e). [f] Karthager.

19. [a] leicht. [b] Sache, *f.* [c] Landleute. [d] Seeleute.

20. [a] Illyrien. [b] beſetzen. [c] als (*and say* as Province). [d] Provinz, *f.*

21. [a] Mark, the Dative of the Person precedes the Accusative of the Thing; however, when the Accusative is a Personal Pronoun it precedes the other cases, exactly as in English. [b] to bring hither, herbringen.

22. [a] The Personal Pronouns precede the Negative. [b] mißgönnen.

23. [a] widmen. [b] Werk, *n.* [c] um ſo. [d] Vergnügen, *n.*

24. Trust[a] that[b], trust all[c] to me.[d]

25. Circumstances[a] are necessary[b] to the virtues[c] themselves.[d]

26. He had advanced[a] the money to the prosecutor.[b]

27. I will not explain[a] it to her.

28. You do not owe[a] it to me.

29. Your son will be a comfort[a] to you both.[b]

30. They have related[a] the facts[b] to my father.

B. In Chief Sentences beginning with an Adverb.

1. Here[a] Scipio received[b] the ambassadors[c] from Brundusium.

2. Then he retired[a] into the city.

3. Thus the enemy was conquered.[a]

4. In the morning[a] a thick[b] mist[c] hung[d] over the lake.[e]

5. In this great battle[a] the Persians[b] had been entirely[c] defeated.[d]

---

24. [a] vertrauen. [b] dieſes. [c] alles. [d] This Dative, as it precedes the Accus., must be repeated before *that*.

25. [a] Umſtand, *m*. (Pl.—ſtände). [b] nothwendig. [c] Tugend, *f*. [d] ſelbſt, indecl.

26. [a] vorſchießen. [b] Kläger, *m*. (cf. 21[a]).

27. [a] erklären. [b] cf. 22[a].

28. [a] verdanken.

29. [a] Troſt, *m*. [b] beide.

30. [a] erzählen. [b] Thatſache, *f*.

1. [a] When the Adverb leads the sentence, the Verb follows immediately, and then the Nominative. [b] empfangen. [c] der Geſandte.

2. [a] ſich zurückziehen.

3. [a] beſiegen.

4. [a] am Morgen, and mark, a Preposition with its Case is an Adverb. [b] dick. [c] Nebel, *m*. [d] *say* lay. [e] See, *m*.

5. [a] Schlacht, *f*. [b] Perſer. [c] völlig. [d] ſchlagen.

6. Amid[a] the terror[b] the Senate[c] alone maintained[d] their[e] calmness.[f]

7. Within[a] three[b] years[c] the Romans had lost two great fleets.[d]

8. To me[a] this scene[b] was particularly[c] interesting.[d]

9. That oath[a] Hannibal had taken[b] in his ninth year.

10. Of this negligence[a] you would never[b] have accused[c] us.

11. Every[a] hour the enemy was expected[b] at[c] the gates.[d]

12. Thus[a], no doubt[b], these officers[c] became real[d] protectors[e] of their fellow citizens.[f]

13. Thus with four legions[a] he prepared[b] to attack[c] the enemy.

14. Here, during[a] the heat[b] of[c] summer, he lay with his army.[d]

15. Then suddenly[a] he sallied forth.[b]

---

6. [a] während, with Gen. [b] Schrecken, *m.* [c] Senat. [d] behaupten. [e] take the Singular, [f] Ruhe, *f.*

7. [a] innerhalb, with Gen. [b] drei, and take the strong form of the Gen. [c] Jahr, *n.* (*pl.*—e). [d] Flotte, *f.*

8. [a] The oblique cases explain the Verb, and are, therefore, considered as Adverbs. [b] Auftritt, *m.* [c] besonders. [d] von Bedeutung.

9. [a] Schwur, *m.* [b] leisten.

10. [a] Nachlässigkeit. [b] cf. A 22 [a]; [d] anklagen.

11. [a] Jeder, e, es. [b] erwarten. [c] vor. [d] Thor, *n.* (*pl.* — e).

12. [a] Two Adverbs cannot head the sentence; therefore place *no doubt* after *officers*. [b] ohne Zweifel. [c] Offizier, (*pl.*—e). [d] wirklich. [e] Beschützer. [f] Mitbürger, fellow citizen.

13. [a] Legion, *f.* [b] sich rüsten. [c] angreifen.

14. [a] während. [b] Hitze, *f.* [c] *say* of the. [d] Heer, *n.*

15. [a] plötzlich. [b] hervorbrechen.

16. Then, early[a] in the morning, he sent his Numidian[b] riders[c] across[d] the river.[e]

17. From[a] this point[b] eastward[c] he had to march[d] through the valley.

18. From this time to[a] the time of his death Hiero remained[b] a useful[c] ally[d] of the Roman people.

19. Even[a] his opponents[b] speak well[c] of[d] him.

20. You too[a] will abandon[b] me?

21. Socrates especially[a] had recommended[b] this moderation[c] to his pupils.[d]

22. He[a] probably[b] will be blamed[c], not we.

23. Not his misfortune[a], no[b], his laziness[c] has ruined[d] him.

24. You perhaps[a] may be elected[b], not I.

25. At night[a] the hazard-tables[b] were thronged[c], and the theatre[d] was filled[e] to[f] the roof.[g]

---

16. [a] früh. [b] numidiſch. [c] Reiter. [d] über, with Acc. [e] Fluß, *m.*

17. [a] von, Dat. [b] Punkt, *m.* [c] oſtwärts, and mark, when two Adverbs belong together, one explaining or narrowing the meaning of the other, they form one Adverbial expression, and must not be separated. [d] marſchiren.

18. [a] bis zu. [b] bleiben. [c] nützlich. [d] Bundesgenoß.

19. [a] ſelbſt, and mark, when the Adverb especially refers to the Nominative, it must not be separated from it. [b] Gegner. [c] gut. [d] von.

20. [a] auch (cf. 19[a]). [b] verlaſſen.

21. [a] beſonders. [b] empfehlen. [c] Mäßigung. [d] Schüler.

22. [a] der. [b] vermuthlich. [c] tadeln.

23. [a] Unglück, *n.* [b] nein. [c] Faulheit. [d] zu Grunde richten, to ruin.

24. [a] vielleicht. [b] erwählen.

25. [a] des Nachts. [b] Spieltiſch, *m.* (*pl.*—e). [c] belagern. [d] Theater, *n.*, and mark, in a sentence joined by und to a preceding sentence headed by an Adverb, the inverted construction does not take place. [e] anfüllen. [f] bis an, with Acc. [g] Dach, *n.*

C. In Subordinate Sentences.

1. The philosophy[a] which[b] affects[c] to teach[d] us a contempt[e] of society[f] does not run[g] very deep.

2. He[a] who gives only what he would as[b] readily[c] throw away[d], gives without[e] generosity[f]; for[g] the essence[h] of generosity is self-sacrifice.[i]

3. What a thing[a] costs[b] a man[c] is no[d] true[e] measure[f] of[g] what it is worth[h] to him.

4. He acknowledged[a] that[b] the plot[c] seemed[d] even[e] to many loyal[f] subjects[g] highly[h] criminal.[i]

5. He plainly[a] said that he would not tell[b] the whole truth in the paper[c], which he had delivered[d] to the Sheriffs.

6. Thence[a] it[b] is that so many men[c] speak wisely[d] and yet[e] act[f] foolishly.[g]

---

1. [a] Weisheit. [b] Subordinate Sentences begin with a Relative, either Pronoun, Conjunction or Adverb, and they require the Verb to stand in the last place. [c] ſich beſtreben. [d] lehren. [e] Verachtung. [f] Geſellſchaft. [g] *say* has no great depth.

2. [a] derjenige. [b] ebenſo. [c] leicht. [d] wegwerfen. [e] ohne, with Acc. [f] Großmuth, *f.* [g] denn, which — not being a Relative — has no influence over the construction. [h] Weſen, *n.* [i] Selbſtaufopferung.

3. [a] Sache, *f.* [b] koſten, Dat. [c] einer. [d] kein. [e] wahr. [f] Maaß, *n.* [g] *say* of that deſſen. [h] werth.

4. [a] geſtehen. [b] daß, a Relative Conjunction. [c] Anſchlag, *m.* [d] ſcheinen. [e] ſelbſt. [f] treu. [g] Unterthan, (Gen.—en). [h] höchſt. [i] verbrecheriſch.

5. [a] unverhohlen. [b] geſtehen. [c] Schrift, *f.*, and mark, this being the end of the sentence, the Verb must stand here. [d] überreichen.

6. [a] daher. [b] *say* comes. [c] Menſch. [d] weiſe. [e] dennoch. [f] handeln. [g] thöricht.

7. William[a] had lived during many years among[b] a people[c] who did not love him, who did not understand[d] him, and who could never forget[e] that he was a foreigner.[f]

8. You must feel[a] a want[b] before[c] you provide[d] against it[e]; you are more assured[f] that it is a real[g] want.

9. It is a false[a] notion[b] that, because[c] pleasure[d] can be purchased[e] with[f] money, therefore[g] money cannot be spent[h] without enjoyment.[i]

10. That wisdom, this hidden[a] treasure[b], is not something[c] visible[d] or measurable[e], all[f] have confessed.[g]

11. As soon as[a] he was set[b] at[c] liberty[d], he[e] gave new cause[f] of[g] suspicion.[h]

12. As[a] nothing rankles[b] and festers[c] more than wounded[d] pride[e], the proud man[f] has much[g] cause for fear.

---

7. [a] Wilhelm. [b] unter, Dat. [c] Volk, *n.* [d] verſtehen. [e] vergeſſen. [f] Ausländer.

8. [a] empfinden. [b] Mangel, *m.* [c] ehe, a Relat. Conj. [d] ſich verwahren. [e] dagegen. [f] überzeugt. [g] wirklich.

9. [a] falſch. [b] Meinung. [c] weil, a Rel. Conj. [d] Vergnügen, *n.* [e] kaufen. [f] für, Acc. [g] deßhalb, and mark, this sentence depends upon the Rel. Conj. *that* daß. [h] ausgeben. [i] Genuß, *m.*

10. [a] verborgen. [b] Schatz, *m.* [c] Etwas. [d] Sichtbares. [e] Meßbares. [f] when the subordinate sentence having the force of an Accusative precedes, the chief sentence following is headed by the Verb. (cf. B 8[a].) [g] zugeſtehen.

11. [a] Sobald als, or ſobald, a Rel. Conj. [b] ſetzen. [c] in. [d] Freiheit. [e] when the subordinate sentence preceding has the force of an Adverb, the chief sentence following is headed by the Verb. (cf. B. 1[a].) [f] Grund, *m.* [g] zum. [h] Verdacht, *m.*

12. [a] da, Rel. Conj. [b] ſchwären. [c] eitern. [d] verwunden. [e] Stolz, *m.* [f] der Stolze. [g] vielfach.

13. Though[a] the result[b] proved[c] that his decision[d] was erroneous[e], he never repented[f] it.

14. If[a] that man had been called upon[b] to get up[c] an hour earlier[d] in the[e] morning to[f] serve[g] his friend, I do not believe that he would have done it.

15. When[a] I was carefully[b] reading[c] the Gorgias of Plato, I admired[d] Plato most[e] in this[f], that he seemed to me to be himself[g] a first-rate[h] orator[i], while[j] he was ridiculing[k] the orators.

16. While Alexander was fighting[a] valiantly[b], he was struck[c] by[d] an arrow.[e]

17. When[a] Gyges had turned[b] the stone[c] of the ring[d] towards[e] his palm[f], he was[g] not[h] seen by any one, but he himself saw all things.[i]

18. Since[a] there[b] is in us design[c], reason[d], foresight[e], God must needs[f] have these very things[g] in[h] greater measure.[i]

---

13. [a] obgleich (quamquam). [b] Erfolg, *m.* [c] beweiſen. [d] Entſcheidung. [e] falſch. [f] bereuen, and insert *still*, doch, in the chief sentence.

14. [a] wenn, a Rel. Conj. [b] erſuchen. [c] aufſtehen. [d] früher. [e] take the Genitive. [f] *say* in order to um . . zu. [g] dienen, Dat.

15. [a] Als (quand). [b] ſorgfältig. [c] leſen. [d] bewundern. [e] am meiſten. [f] darin. [g] ſelbſt. [h] ausgezeichnet. [i] Redner. [j] während (pendant que). [k] lächerlich machen.

16. [a] kämpfen. [b] tapfer. [c] treffen. [d] von. [e] Pfeil, *m.*

17. [a] wenn. [b] kehren. [c] Stein, *m.* [d] Ring, *m.* [e] gegen, Acc. die flache Hand. [g] Imperf. Passive. [h] *say* by no one von keinem. [i] all things alles.

18. [a] da (depuis que). [b] not to be translated. [c] Plan, *m.* [d] Vernunft, *f.* [e] Vorſicht, *f.* [f] nothwendiger Weiſe. [g] Eigenſchaften, *and say* just these things; just gerade. [h] *say* in a. [i] Maaß, *n.*

19. The storm of obloquy[a] which, for[b] the time he[c] had to face[d], was too much for him.

20. After several[a] respites[b] the government, convinced[c] that, though much had been revealed[d], he[e] could reveal still[f] more, fixed[g] a day for his examination.[h]

21. Sir John Fenwick found that of[a] all the Jacobites[b], the most desperate[c] assassins[d] not excepted[e], he was the only one[f] for[g] whom William felt an intense[h] personal[i] aversion.[j]

22. They made up[a] a story[b] that the queen had felt bitter remorse[c], and that in her agony[d] she had applied[e] to[f] Tillotson.

23. After his death a bundle[a] of those savage[b] letters which his enemies had written to him[c], was found among[d] his papers.[e]

24. The enthusiasm[a] with which the people had saluted[b] her[c], was still[d] fresh[e] in her recollection.[f]

---

19. [a] Vorwurf, *m.* (*pl.*—würfe), take the pl. [b] zu, Dat. [c] mark, if the Subject of a Relat. Sentence be a Personal Pron. it stands immediately after the Relative. [d] begegnen, Dat.

20. [a] verſchieden. [b] Friſt, *f.* [c] überzeugt. [d] offenbaren. [e] cf. 19[a]. [f] noch. [g] beſtimmen. [h] Verhör, *n.*

21. [a] von. [b] Jakobit, (G.—en). [c] verzweifelt. [d] Meuchelmörder. [e] ausgenommen. [f] der einzige. [g] gegen, Acc. [h] tief. [i] perſönlich. [j] Abneigung.

22. [a] erlügen. [b] Geſchichte, *f.* [c] Reue, *f.* [d] Seelenangſt, *f.* [e] ſich wenden. [f] an, Acc.

23. [a] Packet, *n.* [b] grauſam. [c] mark, the smaller forms of the Person. Pron. as es, ihm, ihn, ihr, ſie, often stand after the Relative, even before the Subject of the sentence. [d] unter, Dat. [e] Schrift. *f.*

24. [a] Begeiſterung. [b] begrüßen [c] cf. 23[c]. [d] noch. [e] friſch. [f] Andenken, *n.*

D. In promiscuous Sentences.

1. The sons[a] of Junius Brutus had conspired[b] against[c] the republic[d] of Rome[e]; their father, therefore[f], punished[g] them very severely[h], for[i] he ordered[j] them to be beheaded[k] in spite[l] of the intercession[m] of the Romans[n] in their favour.[o]

2. There are[a] few writers[b], for[c] whom the reader feels[d] such personal[e] kindness[f] as for Oliver Goldsmith.

3. He had no[a] intention[b] of leaving[c] his children money, for that was dross[d]; he resolved[e] they should[f] have learning[g]; for learning, he used[h] to observe[i], was better than silver or gold.

4. The same ambition[a] that actuates[b] a monarch[c] at[d] the head[e] of his army[f] influenced[g] my father at the head[h] of his table.

---

1. [a] Sohn (*pl.* Söhne). [b] ſich verſchwören, and the Participle stands at the end of the sentence. [c] gegen with Acc. [d] Freiſtaat, *m.* [e] Rom. [f] daher; and mark, the Adverb can never stand between the Subject and the Verb. [g] beſtrafen. [h] ſtrenge. [i] denn, a conjunction which has no influence on the construction of the sentence. [j] laſſen, which is always followed by an Infinitive Act. [k] *say*, the head to be cut off to them ihnen den Kopf abſchlagen. [l] ungeachtet with Gen. [m] Fürbitte, *f.* [n] Römer. [o] *say*, to their favour zu ihren Gunſten.

2. [a] es giebt. [b] Schriftſteller. [c] für with Acc. [d] mark, in a relative sentence the Verb stands last. [e] perſönlich. [f] Wohlwollen, *n.*

3. [a] kein, keine, kein. [b] Abſicht, *f.* [c] *say*, to leave zu hinterlaſſen, and mark, the Infin. stands at the end of the sentence. [d] Schlacke, *f.* and take Subj. Pres. [e] beſchließen. [f] ſollen. [g] Kenntniß, *f.*, and take the plural —e. [h] pflegen, and observe, in small inserted sentences the Verb precedes the Nom. [i] bemerken.

4. [a] Ehrgeiz, *m.* [b] antreiben. [c] König. [d] an with Dat. [e] Spitze, *f.* [f] Heer, *n.* (Gen.—es). [g] leiten. [h] Ehrenplatz, *m.* (Gen.—es).

5. For this purpose[a] he undertook[b] to instruct[c] us himself, and took[d] as much[e] care[f] to improve[g] our morals[h] as[i] to form[j] our understanding.[k]

6. We were perfectly[a] instructed in the art[b] of giving away[c] thousands before[d] we were taught[e] the necessary[f] qualification[g] of getting[h] a farthing.[i]

7. It was the pride[a] and boast[b] of Elizabeth Delap, when[c] nearly[d] ninety years of age[e], that she was the first that had put[f] a book into Goldsmith's hands.

8. At[a] the return[b] of peace[c] he resumed[d] the ferule[e] and gave up[f] the sword.[g]

9. Whilst[a] Scipio destroyed[b] Carthage[c], Mummius conquered[d] Corinth.

---

5. [a] deßhalb. [b] unternehmen; and take care to insert *it* es after *undertook*. [c] unterrichten. [d] ſich geben. [e] eben ſo viel. [f] Mühe, *f.* [g] verbeſſern. [h] Sitte, *f.* [i] als. [j] bilden. [k] Verſtand, *m.*

6. [a] vollkommen. [b] Kunſt, *f.* [c] fortgeben. [d] *before* is either a Preposition, and then it is in German vor, or an Adverb, and then it is vorher, or, as here, a Conjunction, the French *avant que*, and then it is ehe daß. This daß after ehe, however, is generally omitted; but ehe, implying still a relative Conjunction, requires the Verb to stand at the end of the sentence. [e] *say*, we learned. [f] nöthig. [g] Tüchtigkeit. [h] erwerben. [i] Heller, *m.*

7. [a] Stolz, *m.* [b] Ruhm, *m.* [c] als, and *say*, when she was. [d] faſt. [e] *say*, old alt. [f] geben.

8. [a] bei with Dat. [b] Rückkehr, *f.* [c] Friede, *m.* (G. —ns), and mark, when an adverbial expression begins, the Verb precedes the Nominative. [d] wiederergreifen. [e] Ruthe, *f.* [f] aufgeben. [g] Schwert, *n.*

9. [a] während, and mark, here are two sentences: the first beginning with *whilst* is relative, and requires the Verb to stand last; in reference to the second which begins with Mummius, it is an adverbial expression, and therefore the Verb in the second must precede the Nominative. Or in other words, when the subordinate sentence precedes, the chief sentence is headed by the Verb. [b] zerſtören. [c] Carthago. [d] erobern.

10. Although[a] the Carthaginians[b] were practised[c] sailors[d], they were conquered[e] by the Romans at[f] sea.[g]

11. If we come into a more contracted[a] assembly[b] of[c] men[d] and women, the talk[e] generally[f] runs[g] upon[h] the weather[i], the fashions[j], news[k], and the like[l] public[m] topics.[n]

12. He[a] only knows[b] how[c] to conquer[d], said Lorenzo de Medici, who knows how to forgive.[e]

13. Crœsus said to[a] Solon: I have a great desire[b] to ask[c] thee, whom[d] of[e] all men that thou knowest[f] thou thinkest[g] to be the happiest.[h]

14. Though the faculties[a] of the human[b] race[c] may[d] remain[e] torpid[f] for generations[g], when[h] once roused[i] into

---

10. [a] obgleich, in Latin *quamquam*, in French *quoique*, therefore a relative conjunction. [b] Karthager. [c] geübt. [d] Matrose, *m.* (pl.—n). [e] beſiegen, and mark, when the subordinate sentence, introduced by obgleich, precedes, the chief sentence must contain the adverb doch *yet*. [f] zu with Dat. [g] See, *f.*, and add the Defin. Article, making it coalesce with zu.

11. [a] abgeſchloſſen. [b] Geſellſchaft. [c] von with Dat., and observe, the English Genitive is expressed by von generally in Substantives of the plural number, when used without Adjective or Article. [d] Mann (*pl.* Männer). [e] Geſpräch, *n.* [f] gewöhnlich. [g] ſich verbreiten. [h] über with Acc. [i] Wetter, *n.* [j] Mode, *f.* [k] Neuigkeit. [l] the like dergleichen. [m] allgemein. [n] Ding, *n.* (*pl.*—e).

12. [a] derjenige. [b] verſtehen. [c] *how* is not translated. [d] ſiegen. [e] vergeben.

13. [a] zu. [b] Wunſch, *m.* [c] fragen. [d] wer. [e] von. [f] kennen. [g] to think to be halten für. [h] glücklich.

14. [a] Fähigkeit. [b] menſchlich. [c] Geſchlecht, *n.* (G.—es). [d] mögen. [e] bleiben. [f] erſtarrt. [g] Zeitalter hindurch. [h] ſobald, and mark, the sentence beginning with *when* is an adverbial expression like the first which begins with *though;* now, two adverbs cannot head a sentence, therefore the second, beginning with *when*, must stand after the Nominative of the chief sentence, which is introduced by *they cannot*. [i] erwecken.

24. After a few[a] questions[b] he found I was[c] fit[d] for any thing[e] in the world.[f]

25. It is remarkable[a] that nature[b] has given to those[c] insects[d], which produce[e] wax[f] and honey[g] out of flowers and live in a wonderful[h] confederacy[i], several[j] particular[k] sounds[l] that indicate[m] the special[n] occurrences[o] of their state.[p]

26. It is known that bees[a], when they are about[b] to swarm[c], or when a war[d] commences, announce[e] this by peculiar[f] sounds.[g]

II. On the Articles.

1. Helvetius is right[a] in saying[b], that the hand has been to man[c] a great auxiliary[d] of[e] his understanding.[f]

2. Avarice[a] is the root[b] of many evils[c]; lavishness[d] is a tree full of bitter fruit.[e]

---

24. [a] einige. [b] Frage, *f.* [c] take Subjunctive Present. [d] tauglich, which, as the predicate, must stand at the end. [e] zu allem. [f] Welt, *f.*

25. [a] merkwürdig. [b] die Natur. [c] der, die, das. [d] Insect, *n.* (*pl.*—en). [e] bilden. [f] Wachs, *n.* [g] Honig, *m.* [h] wunderſam. [i] Staaten-verein, *m.* [j] mehrere. [k] beſondere. [l] Laut, *m.* (*pl.*—e). [m] andeuten. [n] beſonder. [o] Ereigniß, *n.* (*pl.*—e). [p] Staat, *m.* (G.—es).

26. [a] Biene, *f.* [b] wollen. [c] ſchwärmen. [d] Krieg, *m.* [e] ankündigen. [f] eigenthümlich. [g] Ton, *m.* (*pl.* Töne).

1. [a] *say*, has right. [b] *say*, when he says. [c] *man* is Menſch, when referring to the whole species of mankind, and requires in German the definite article, because all substantives implying the whole species are preceded by such an article. [d] Hülfsmittel, *n.* [e] *say*, of. [f] Verſtand, *m.*

2. [a] Geiz, *m.*, and observe, that the definite article stands before names of abstract things, if their whole essence is expressed. [d] Wurzel, *f.* [c] Uebel, *n.* [d] Verſchwendung. [e] *say*, fruits Frucht, *f.* (*pl.* Früchte).

3. Arnold's original[a] sketches[b] on[c] history[d] and theology[e] were at first remarkable[f] rather[g] as proofs[h] of industry[i] than (denn) of power.[j]

4. He was admitted[a] upon[b] the footing[a] of half[d] friend, half underling.[e]

5. Luther[a], by his translation[b] of the Bible[c], has given the sacred scriptures[d] into the hands of the people[e] for[f] investigation[g] and examination.[h]

6. The swiftness[a] of the wind[b] which has even[c] become a proverb[d], is far[e] less[f] than people[g] generally[h] imagine.[i]

7. Man is mortal.[a]

8. Dogs[a] are faithful[b] animals.[c]

9. Virtue[a] rewards[b] itself.

10. Innocence[a] and virtue are always related[b] to each other.[c]

11. Hope[a] does not allow[b] us to be confounded.[c]

---

3. [a] urſprünglich. [b] Auffatz, *m.* (*pl.*—ſätze). [c] über with Acc. [d] Geſchichte, *f.*, and mark, the definite article stands before the names of sciences. [e] Theologie, *f.* [f] merkwürdig. [g] vielmehr. [h] Beweis, *m.* (*pl.*—e). [i] Fleiß, *m.* [j] Kraft, *f.*

4. [a] to admit zulaſſen. [b] auf with Acc. [c] Fuß, *m.* [d] *say*, half a. [e] Untergebener.

5. [a] Put in the translation the verb *has* immediately after *Luther*. [b] Ueberſetzung. [c] Bibel, *f.* [d] Schrift, *f.* (*pl.*—en). [e] Volk, *n.* [f] zu with Dat. [g] Forſchen, *n.*, to be preceded by the definite article so as to make it coalesce with zu into one word. [h] Prüfen, *n.*

6. [a] Geſchwindigkeit. [b] Wind, *m.* [c] ſogar. [d] zum Sprichwort werden. [e] weit. [f] geringer. [g] man. [h] gewöhnlich. [i] glauben.

7. [a] ſterblich.

8. [a] Hund, *m.* (*pl.*—e). [b] treu. [c] Thier, *n.* (*pl.*—e).

9. [a] Tugend, *f.* [b] belohnen.

10. [a] Unſchuld, *f.* [b] verwandt. [c] mit einander.

11. [a] Hoffnung. [b] laſſen. [c] zu Schanden werden.

12. The lion[a], tiger[b], lynx[c], and wolf[d] are ravenous[e] beasts.[f]

13. Riches[a] and honour[b] alone do not make happy.

14. I have bought the house[a], garden[b] and meadows[c] of my neighbour.[d]

15. He was dazzled[a] by the glitter[b] of gold.[c]

16. He spoke[a] to[b] her words[c] of consolation[d] and faith.[e]

17. He did not succeed[a] from[b] want[c] of earnestness[d] and application.[e]

18. A feeling[a] of anger[b] seized[c] me at[d] this moment.[e]

19. The Greeks[a] represented[b] Death[c] almost[d] like[e] Sleep.[f]

20. The best merchant[a] is war[b]; it makes gold out of iron.[d]

---

12. [a] Löwe; mark, when the subject or object of a sentence contains more than one Substantive of the same gender and number, the article need only stand before the first; if they have different genders and numbers, then the article must be repeated before each separately. [b] Tiger. [c] Luchs. [d] Wolf. [e] reißend. [f] Thier.

13. [a] Reichthum, *m.* (*pl.*—thümer). [b] Ehre, *f.*

14. [a] Haus, *n.* [b] Garten, *m.* [c] Wiese, *f.* [d] Nachbar (G.—n).

15. [a] blenden. [b] Glanz, *m.* [c] Gold, *n.*, and observe, the definite article stands before names of materials, if the whole matter is implied.

16. [a] sprechen. [b] zu. [c] Wort, *n.* (*pl.*—e). [d] Trost, *m.* [e] Glauben, *m.*

17. [a] *say*, it did not succeed to him; to succeed gelingen. [b] aus. [c] Mangel, *m.* [d] Ernst, *m.* [e] Fleiß, *m.*

18. [a] Gefühl, *n.* [b] Zorn, *m.* [c] überkommen, insep. [d] in with Dative. [e] Augenblick, *m.* (G.—es).

19. [a] Grieche, *m.* [b] darstellen. [c] Tod, *m.*, and mark, the definite article stands before the names of abstract things, if they are represented as personal beings. [d] fast. [e] ähnlich with the Dative, by which it is preceded. [f] Schlaf, *m.* (G.—es).

20. [a] Kaufmann. [b] Krieg, *m.* [c] aus. [d] Eisen, *n.*

21. Childhood[a] and old age[b] appear[c] to me equally[d] venerable[e]; the first[f], because[g] it seems[h] just[i] to have come[j] from[k] the hands of God; the latter[l], because it is returning[m] thither.[n]

III. On the Declension of Substantives.

1. Any[a] means[b] are just[c] to malice.[d]
2. Every day lasts[a] long to laziness.[b]
3. Patients[a] want[b] rest.[c]
4. Docile[a] dogs[b] give pleasure to children.[c]
5. Glass[a] was invented[b] by the Phœnicians.[c]
6. The diet[a] in Sweden[b] consists[c] of[d] four classes[e], the nobility[f], the clergy[g], the citizens[h], and peasants.[i]

---

21. [a] Kindheit. [b] old age Alter, *n.* [c] vorkommen. [d] gleich. [e] ehrwürdig. [f] *say*, that one jener, jene, jenes. [g] weil. [h] ſcheinen. [i] eben erſt. [j] kommen. [k] von. [l] *say*, this one dieſer, dieſe, dieſes. [m] zurückkehren. [n] dahin.

1. [a] alle. [b] Mittel, *n.*, and mark, Substantives masculine and neuter in el, en, er, have no termination in Nominative plural. [c] recht. [d] Bosheit.

2. [a] dauern. [b] Faulheit.

3. [a] Kranke, and observe, Substantives which originally are Adjectives, are declined like the definite article, if no article precedes. [b] bedürfen with Gen. [c] Ruhe, *f.*

4. [a] gelehrige. [b] Hund, *m.*, and mark, all Substantives masculine of one syllable have in Plural Nominative an e, and the vowel generally is modified; but in Hund the vowel does not change. [c] Kind, *n.*, and observe, 1) Substantives neuter of one syllable have in Nominative Plural an er, and a modification of the vowel; and 2) the Dative Plural ALWAYS has an n added to the Nominative Plural.

5. [a] Glas, *n*, [b] erfinden. [c] Phönizier (cf. Note 1[b]).

6. [a] Reichstag, *m.* [b] Schweden. [c] beſtehen. [d] aus with Dative. [e] Stand, *m.* (cf. Note 4[b] and [c] 2.) [f] Adel, *m.* [g] Geiſtlichkeit. [h] Bürgerſchaft. [i] Bauerſchaft.

7. The nobleness[a] of the mind[b] shows itself[c] in words[d] and deeds.[e]

8. Admiral Horn died[a] on[b] the scaffold.[c]

9. The merchants[a] in the city[b] assemble[c] on[d] the exchange.[e]

10. The height[a] of the Brocken[b] in the Harz mountains[c] amounts to[d] 3,500 feet.[e]

11. In the ocean[a] too are found[b] mountains[c] and valleys.[d]

12. The nature of things[a] is changeable.[b]

13. The laws[a] of religion and of morals[b] are the conditions[c] of our spiritual[d] existence.[e]

14. The desire of knowledge[a] strives[b] not so much

---

7. [a] Adel, *m.* [b] Seele, *f.* [c] ſich ausſprechen. [d] Wort, *n.*, and mark, it has two forms in Plural, Worte and Wörter; the first means *words connected*, the second signifies *words detached*. [e] That, *f.*

8. [a] ſterben. [b] auf with Dat. [c] Blutgerüſt, *n.*, and mark, Substantives masculine or neuter, not terminating in el, en, er, or e, have in Singular Genitive an es, and in the Dative an e.

9. [a] der Kaufmann (*pl.* Kaufleute); Substantives compounded with Mann, change this in plural in Leute. [b] Stadt, *f.* [c] ſich verſammeln. [d] auf with Dat. [e] Börſe, *f.*

10. [a] Höhe, *f.* [b] Brocken, *m.* [c] *mountains* as a coherent chain or mass of mountains is Gebirge, *n.* [d] to amount to betragen. [e] Fuß, *m.*, and mark, Substantives implying measure and at the same time the things measured, have no plural.

11. [a] Weltmeer, *n.* [b] to be found ſich finden. [c] Berg, *m.* [d] Thal, *n*

12. [a] Ding, *n.*, and mark, if Ding means *thing*, the Plural has e; but if it implies small, indifferent or ridiculous things, it has er. [b] veränderlich.

13. [a] Geſetz, *n.* [b] *morals*, when meaning those good habits which are innate in human beings, is Sitten, but when implying the *science of ethics*, is Sittenlehre, *f.* [c] Bedingung. [d] geiſtig. [e] Daſein, *n.*

14. [a] desire of knowledge Wißbegierde, *f.* [b] ſtreben.

after a mass[c] of acquirements[d] as rather[e] to know thoroughly[f] what is investigated.[g]

15. Crows[a], jackdaws[b], magpies[c], and their like[d], distinguish themselves[e] from other birds[f] by their croaking[g] and chattering.[h]

16. Simplicity[a] and stupidity[b] sometimes[c] get on[d] better than cunning[e], just as cowardice[f] sometimes gains[g] the victory[h] over[i] audacity.[j]

17. Newspapers[a] give food[b] to curiosity[c], learned reviews[d] to polymathy[e], and life and a few[f] books to the desire of knowledge.

18. The roaring[a] of the lion[b] announces[c] the king of beasts.[d]

19. What a gradation[a] from the croaking[b] of the raven[c] up to[d] the song[e] of the nightingale[f]!

20. The spots[a] well suit[b] the tiger[c] and panther[d], and the long sneaking[e] form[f] suits the marten[g] well.

---

[c] Menge, *f.* [d] Kenntniß, *f.*, and mark, feminine Substantives in niß have in Nominative Plural an e against the rule. [e] vielmehr. [f] gründlich. [g] erforſchen.

15. [a] Krähe, *f.* [b] Dohle, *f.* [c] Elſter, *f.* [d] *say*, of their like (ihr Gleiches, Gen. ihres Gleichen); in the same way *my like* meines Gleichen. [e] ſich unterſcheiden. [f] Vogel, *m.*, wich is one of those Substantives in el, that modify the vowel in plural, Vögel. [g] Gekrächz, *n.* [h] Geſchwätz, *n.*

16. [a] Einfalt, *f.* [b] Dummheit. [c] zuweilen. [d] fortkommen. [e] Schlauheit. [f] Feigheit. [g] erhalten. [h] Sieg, *m.* [i] über with Acc. [j] Kühnheit.

17. [a] Zeitung. [b] Nahrung. [c] Neugier, *f.* [d] die gelehrten Jahrbücher. [e] Vielwiſſerei. [f] wenige.

18. [a] Gebrüll, *n.* [b] Löwe, *m.* [c] ankündigen. [d] Thier, *n.*, which, belongs to 30 monosyllabic Neut. Substantives forming the Plur. in e.

19. [a] Abſtufung. [b] Krächzen, *n.* [c] Rabe, *m.* [d] bis zu with Dat. [e] Geſang, *m.* [f] Nachtigall, *f.*

20. [a] Flecken, *m.* [b] wohl ſtehen with Dat. [c] Tiger, *m.* [d] Panther, *m.* [e] ſchleichend. [f] Geſtalt, *f.* [g] Marder, *m.*

21. What a difference[a] between[b] the cooing[c] of the turtle-dove[d], the chirping[e] of the sparrow[f], and the stupid[g] cackling[h] of the duck[i]!

22. The faculties[a] of the mind[b] have many points of contact[c] with one another.[d]

23. The senate[a] and the people loaded[b] Julius Cæsar with honours[c] without measure[d] and limit.[e]

24. How wonderful[a] is the instinct[b] of birds with respect[c] to[d] the structure[e] of their nests[f]!

25. In some nests hair[a], wool[b], and rushes[c], are dexterously[d] interwoven[e]; in some all the parts[f] are firmly[g] fastened[h] by a thread[i] which the bird makes of hemp[j], wool, hair, or more commonly[k] of spiders' webs.[l]

26. Many birds, as[a] for instance[b] the blackbird[c] and the lapwing[d], after they have constructed[e] their nest, plaster[f] the inside[g] with mortar[h] which cements[i] and binds the whole[j] together; they then stick[k] upon it[l] while[m] quite wet, some wool or moss, to give it the necessary[n] degree[o] of warmth.[p]

---

21. [a]Verſchiedenheit. [b]zwiſchen with Dat. [c]Girren, *n.* [d]Turteltaube, *f.* [e]Gezwitſcher, *n.* [f]Sperling, *m.* [g]dumm. [h]Geſchnatter, *n.* [i]Ente, *f.*

22. [a]Fähigkeit. [b]Seele, *f.* [c]Berührungspunkt, *m.* [d]mit einander.

23. [a]Senat, *m.* [b]überhäufen. [c]Ehrenbezeugung. [d]Maaß, *n.* [e]Ziel, *n.*

24. [a]Wunderbar. [b]Trieb, *m.* [c]in Bezug. [d]auf with Acc. [e]Bau, *m.* [f]Neſt, *n.*

25. [a]Haar, *n.* (*pl.* Haare, which is here to be used. cf. 18[d]). [b]Wolle, *f.* [c]Binſe, *f.* [d]geſchickt. [e]in einander verflechten. [f]Theil, *m.* [g]dicht. [h]befeſtigen. [i]Faden, *m.* [j]Hanf, *m.* [k]gewöhnlich. [l]Spinngewebe, *n.*

26. [a]wie. [b]zum Beiſpiel (which is generally abbreviated in z. B.). [c]Amſel, *f.* [d]Kibitz, *m.* [e]bauen. [f]übertünchen. [g]Innere, *n.* [h]Mörtel, *m.* [i]verkitten. [j]Ganze, *n.* [k]heften. [l]darauf. [m]während (*say*, while it is). [n]gehörig. [o]Grad, *m.* [p]Wärme, *f.*

27. The nests of swallows[a] are[b] of a very different[c] construction[d] from those[e] of other birds.

28. They require[a] neither wool, nor hay, nor cords[b]; they make a kind[c] of mortar, with which they form[d] a nest and a secure[e] habitation[f] for[g] themselves and their family.

29. To moisten[a] the dust[b] of which they build their nest, they dip[c] their breasts[d] in water, and shake[e] the drops[f] from their wet feathers upon it.[g]

30. But the nests most worthy of admiration[a] are those[b] of certain[c] Indian[d] birds, which suspend[e] them with great art from[f] the branches[g] of trees, to secure them from[h] the depredations[i] of various[j] animals and insects.[k]

31. What is it that teaches[a] the bird to place[b] her nest in[c] a situation[d] sheltered[e] from[f] the rain[g], and secure[h] against[i] the attacks[j] of other animals?

32. Who has taught her to calculate[a] the time with such[b] accuracy[c], that she never commits[d] a mistake[e] in producing[f] her eggs[g], before[h] the nest is ready[i] to receive[j] them?

---

27. [a] Schwalbe, *f.* [b] *say*, have a very. [c] verſchieden. [d] Bildung. [e] take the demonstrative pronoun der, die, das.

28. [a] erfordern. [b] Schnur, *f.* (*pl.* Schnüre). [c] Art, *f.* [d] bauen. [e] ſicher. [f] Wohnung. [g] to be expressed by the Dative.

29. [a] befeuchten. [b] Staub, *m.* [c] tauchen. [d] take the Singular. [e] ſchütteln. [f] Tropfen, *m.* [g] *say*, there upon.

30. [a] merkwürdigſt. [b] cf. Note 27[e]. [c] gewiß. [d] Indiſch. [e] hängen. [f] an with Acc. [g] Zweig, *m.* [h] vor with Dat. [i] Plünderung. [j] verſchieden. [k] Inſect, *n.* (*pl.*—en).

31. [a] lehren which is construed with an infinitive *without* zu. [b] ſetzen, which must stand at the end of the sentence. [c] an, Acc. [d] Ort, *m.* [e] ſchützen (*say*, which is sheltered). [f] gegen, Acc. [g] Regen, *m.* [h] ſicher. [i] vor, Dat. [j] Angriff, *m.*

32. [a] berechnen. [b] ſolch. [c] Genauigkeit. [d] begehen. [e] Fehler, *m.* [f] Legen, *n.* (*say*, in the laying of). [g] Ei, *n.* [h] ehe. [i] bereit. [j] aufnehmen.

33. Admire[a] in all these things the power, the wisdom, and the goodness of the Creator[b]!

34. The bushmen[a] appear to be the remains[b] of Hottentot[c] hordes[d] who have been driven[e], by the gradual[f] encroachments[g] of the European[h] colonists[i], to seek for[j] refuge[k] among[l] the inaccessible[m] rocks[n] and sterile[o] deserts[p] of the interior[q] of Africa.[r]

35. Most[a] of the hordes known[b] in the colony[c] by[d] the name[e] of bushmen are now entirely[f] destitute[g] of flocks[h] or herds[i], and subsist[j] partly[k] by[l] the chase[m], partly on[l] the wild roots[n] of the wilderness, and in[o] times of scarcity[p] on reptiles[q], grasshoppers[r], and the larvae[s] of ants[t], or by plundering[u] their hereditary[v] foes[w] and oppressors[x], the frontier[y] boers.

36. In seasons[a] when[b] every green herb[c] is devoured[d] by swarms[e] of locusts[f], and when the wild game[g] in con-

---

33. [a] bewundern. [b] Schöpfer.

34. [a] Buſchmann (*pl.*—männer, against the rule). [b] Ueberbleibſel, *n.* [c] Hottentotten. [d] Horde, *f.* [e] treiben. [f] allmählig. [g] Eingriff, *m.* [h] Europäiſch. [i] Coloniſt, *m.*, and mark, all foreign nouns masculine, with the accent on the last, have en in the cases. [j] ſuchen. [k] Zuflucht, *f.* [l] zwiſchen, Dat. [m] unzugänglich. [n] Felſen, *m.* [o] unfruchtbar. [p] Wüſte, *f.* [q] Innere, *n.* (G.—n). [r] Africa (G.—s).

35. [a] die meiſten. [b] bekannt (*say*, which are known). [c] Colonie, *f.* [d] unter, Dat. [e] Name, *m.* [f] gänzlich. [g] to be destitute ermangeln with Gen. [h] Schaafheerde, *f.* [i] Rinderheerde, *f.* (*say*, Schaaf- und Rinderheerde). [j] leben. [k] theils. [l] von, Dat. [m] Jagd, *f.* [n] Wurzel, *f.* [o] zu, Dat. [p] Mangel, *m.* [q] Wurm, *m.* (*pl.* Würmer, against the rule). [r] Grille, *f.* [s] Puppe, *f.* [t] Ameiſe, *f.* [u] Plünderung, *f.* (*say*, by the plundering of). [v] Erb. [w] hereditary foe Erbfeind. [x] Unterdrücker, *m.* [y] frontier Boer Gränzbauer, *m.* (*pl.*—n, against the rule).

36. [a] Jahr, *n.* (*pl.*—e, against the rule). [b] da. [c] Pflanze, *f.* [d] verſchlingen. [e] Schwarm, *m.* [f] Heuſchrecke, *f.* [g] Wild, *n.*, wild game.

sequence[h] desert[i] the pastures[j] of the wilderness, the bushman finds a resource[k] in the very[l] calamity[m] which would overwhelm[n] an agricultural[o] or civilized[p] community.[q]

37. He lives by[a] devouring[b] the devourers[c]; he subsists[d] for weeks[e] and months[f] on[g] locusts alone[h], and also preserves[i] a stock[j] of this food[k] dried[l], as we do[m] herrings[n] or pilchards[o] for[p] future[q] consumption.[r]

38. The city of[a] Jalappa in Mexico is very beautifully[b] situated[c] at[d] the foot of Macaltephec, at[e] an elevation[f] of 4335 feet[g] above[h] the level[i] of the sea.[j]

39. Mountains bound[a] the horizon[b], except[c] on[d] one side[e], where a distant[f] view[g] of the sea adds to[h] the beauty[i] of the scene.[j]

40. Evergreen[a] forests[b] clothe[c] the surrounding[d] hills[e]; in the foreground[f] are delightful[g] gardens[h] with fruits[i] of every clime[j], — the banana[k] and fig[l], the orange[m], cherry and apple.

---

[h] demzufolge. [i] verlaſſen, and mark, the Verb must agree in number with the Subject. [j] Weideplatz, *m.* [k] Hülfsquelle, *f.* [l] ſelbſt, indeclinable; and place it after Elend. [m] Elend, *n.* [n] überwältigen. [o] ackerbautreibend. [p] geſittet. [q] Gemeinde, *f.*

37. [a] durch, Acc. [b] *say*, the devouring of Verſchlingen, *n.* [c] Verſchlinger. [d] ſich ernähren. [e] Woche, *f.* (*say*, weeks long). [f] Monat, *m.* [g] von with Dat. [h] allein. [i] aufſpeichern. [j] Vorrath, *m.* [k] Speiſe, *f.* [l] gedörrt. [m] thun (*say*, as we do it with). [n] Häring, *m.* [o] Strömling, *m.* [p] zu, Dat. [q] künftig. [r] Verbrauch, *m.*

38. [a] *of* after the common name and before the proper name is not expressed. [b] ſchön. [c] to be situated liegen. [d] an, Dat. [e] in, Dat. [f] Erhebung. [g] Fuß, *m.* cf. 10[e]. [h] über, Dat. [i] Fläche, *f.* [j] Meer, *n*

39. [a] begränzen. [b] Geſichtskreis, *m.* [c] ausgenommen. [d] an, Dat. [e] Seite, *f.* [f] fern. [g] Anblick, *m.* [h] to add to erhöhen. [i] Schönheit. [j] Landſchaft, *f.*

40. [a] Immergrün. [b] Wald, *m.* (*pl.* Wälder, against the rule). [c] bekleiden. [d] unliegend. [e] Hügel, *m.* [f] Vordergrund, *m.* [g] reizend. [h] Garten, *m.* (*pl.* Gärten). [i] Frucht, *f.* (*pl.* Früchte). [j] Himmelſtrich, *m.* [k] Banana, *f.* [l] Feige, *f.* [m] Apfelſine, *f.*

41. The town is irregularly[a] built[b], but very picturesque[c]; the houses[d] are in the style[e] of the old houses of Spain with windows[f] down[g] to the[h] ground.[i]

IV. On the Declension of Nouns Proper.

1. I always read with pleasure Virgil's[a] books on[b] agriculture[c], and the celebrated[d] ode[e] of Horace[f] on[g] the beauty of country life.[h]

2. Homer compares[a] the lovely[b] voice[c] of[d] Nestor to[e] the sound[f] of a cicada.[g]

3. We visited[a] the grave[b] of that excellent[c] Günther, who was respected[d] by friend and foe.

4. She moved[a] the succession[b] of her cousin[c], the Count Palatine[d], Charles[e] Gustavus.[f]

5. You were then going to appear in the character[a] of Robber Moor[b] in Schiller's first tragedy.[c]

---

41. [a] unregelmäßig. [b] bauen. [c] malerisch. [d] Haus, *n.* [e] Bauart, *f.* [f] Fenster, *n.* [g] hinunter. [h] bis zu, Dat. [i] Erdboden, *m.*

1. [a] Nouns proper, without preceding article, have in Genitive an **s**; the other cases are unchanged. [b] von. [c] Landbau, and do not forget the article. [d] berühmt. [e] Ode. [f] Horaz, and mark, Nouns proper, ending in a hissing sound, are avoided in the Genitive, unless the Article is put before them, as, des Horaz; or the Genitive is expressed by vom, von dem. [g] über. [h] Landleben, *n.*

2. [a] vergleichen. [b] lieblich. [c] Stimme, *f.* [d] this can be expressed by des Nestor, or by Nestors, which, however, is to be placed after *compares*. [e] mit. [f] Ton, *m* [g] Cicade, *f.*

3. [a] besuchen. [b] Grab, *n.* [c] brav. [d] achten.

4. [a] in Vorschlag bringen. [b] Nachfolge, *f.* [c] Vetter. [d] Pfalzgraf. [e] Karl. [f] Gustav.

5. [a] Rolle, *f.* [b] although *robber* is in itself only a common name, still having as a character in a great play received an uncommon celebrity, it is treated like a Noun proper; in the same way are regarded Kaiser Friedrich, Herzog Karl, and some other. [c] Trauerspiel, *n.*

6. Raumer has written the history of the Emperor[a] Frederic[b] the second.

7. That occurred[a] in[b] the reign[c] of Duke[d] Charles.

8. Hiero had the good sense[a] to attach[b] Simonides and Pindar to[c] his court.

9. Name[a] to me that poet who dares[b] to compare himself to Homer and Virgil.

10. The victory on the white mountain placed[a] Ferdinand in possession[b] of all his states.[c]

11. Nothing looked less like[a] Elizabeth than to make a promise, when[b] she was still uncertain, whether[c] she could keep[d] it.

12. I found Julia quite the same, as I had seen her five years before at Mannheim.

13. The heirs[a] of Margaret were her best friends, after[b] she had lost her only child, Clara.

14. A considerable[a] part of Brabant resisted[b] the arms of Duke Alexander of Parma.

15. The death of Socrates has been described[a] by his two pupils[b] and admirers[c], Plato and Xenophon.

16. The Iroquois[a] blacken[b] the face of him[c] who gets the better of[h] his neighbour by telling a falsehood.[e]

---

6. [a] Kaiſer. [b] Friedrich. (cf. Note 5[b]).

7. [a] ſich ereignen. [b] unter. [c] Regierung. [d] say either Herzog Karls, or des Herzogs Karl (cf. Note 5[b]).

8. [a] Klugheit. [b] feſſeln. [c] an with Acc.

9. [a] aufſtellen. [b] dürfen.

10. [a] ſetzen. [b] Beſitz, *m.* [c] Staat, *m.* (*pl.* —en).

11. [a] ähnlich. [b] wo. [c] ob. [d] halten.

13. [a] Erbe, *m.* [b] nachdem.

14. [a] bedeutend. [b] widerſtehen, which is inseparable, with Dat.

15. [a] beſchreiben. [b] Schüler. [c] Bewunderer.

16. [a] Irokeſe, *m.* [b] ſchwärzen. [c] derjenige. [d] beſiegen. [e] *by telling a falsehood* express by the Participle Present of lügen adverbially used.

17. The Earls[a] of Shrewsbury and Kent received from Burleigh the commission[b] to assist[c] at[d] the execution[e] of the death-warrant.[f]

18. They appeared at Fotheringay on the seventh of February, announced[a] their intention[b], and named[c] the next[d] day as the last in Mary's life.

V. On the Declension of Adjectives.

1. In those[a] countries[b] which are most[c] blessed[d] by nature, men are generally lazy[e], ignorant[f] and rude.[g]

2. The ancients[a] are by no means[b] dead[c], as people[d] are accustomed[e] to say; only their languages[f] are dead; the spirit[g], which breathes[h] in the latter[i], is eternally[j] alive.[k]

3. The noble[a] mind[b] raises[c] the cripple[d] above[e] others who merely[f] possess a beautiful person.[g]

---

17. [a] Graf (G.—en). [b] Auftrag, *m.* [c] beiwohnen, and mark, the Particle zu stands between the two compounds. [d] *at the* express by the Dative. [e] Vollziehung. [f] Todesurtheil, *n.*

18. [a] verkündigen. [b] Absicht, *f.* [c] bezeichnen. [d] folgend.

1. [a] express by the Pronoun Dem. der, die, das. [b] Land, *n.* [c] am meisten. [d] gesegnet, and mark, Adjectives are not declined, when they are the Predicates in sentences. [e] faul. [f] unwissend. [g] roh.

2. [a] alt, and observe, 1) Substantives, which originally are Adjectives, are declined like the latter; 2) Adjectives, preceded by the Def. Article, or Pronouns Dem. and Relat., have in Nom. Sing. an e, and en in the other cases, except the Acc. Sing., Neut., and Fem., which must be like their Nom., and therefore have e. [b] keineswegs. [c] todt. [d] wie man. [e] to be accustomed pflegen. [f] Sprache, *f.* [g] Geist, *m.* [h] wehen. [i] *say*, in these in diesen; observe, *the first* and *the latter* are often expressed by the Pronouns Demonstr. jener and dieser. [j] ewig. [k] lebendig.

3. [a] edel. [b] Seele, *f.* [c] erheben. [d] Krüppel, *m.* [e] über, Acc. [f] bloß. [g] Körper, *m.*

4. Is it just[a] or unjust[b] to allow[c] among[d] brothers and sisters a distinction[e] which destroys[f] all[g] mutual[h] confidence[i]?

5. A simple[a] and inarticulate[b] sound[c] excites[d] already a dim[e] idea[f] of[g] the being[h] from[i] which it issues.[j]

6. Sight[a] and hearing[b] are the noblest senses.[c]

7. Even[a] among Negroes[b] one[c] finds beautiful[d] faces.[e]

8. The grateful[a] citizens[b] erected[c] monuments[d] to the fallen warriors.

9. For proper[a] dogs of draught[b] they choose[c] in Siberia[d] those especially[e] which have[f] long legs[g], long ears[h], a pointed[i] muzzle[j], a broad back[k], and a big[l] head.[m]

---

4. [a] recht. [b] unrecht. [c] dulden. [d] unter, Dat. [e] Rangordnung, *f.* [f] aufheben. [g] aller, alle, alles, which has the same power before the Adjective as the Def. Article. [h] wechſelſeitig. [i] Vertrauen, *n.*

5. [a] einfach, and observe, if an Indef. Article precedes the Adjective, the latter has in the Nom. Sing. the terminations of the Def. Article er, e, es, as, ein guter Knabe, eine gute Mutter, ein gutes Buch. The other cases have en, except Acc. Fem. and Neut. Sing., which must be like their Nom.; therefore eine gute Mutter, ein gutes Buch are both the Nom. and the Acc. [b] unartikulirt. [c] Laut, *m.* [d] erregen. [e] dunkel. [f] Vorſtellung. [g] *of*, when it means as much as *about*, is von, Dat. [h] Weſen, *n.* [i] aus, Dat. [j] kommen.

6. [a] das Geſicht. [b] das Gehör. [c] Sinn, *m.*

7. [a] ſelbſt. [b] Neger, *m.* [c] man. [d] ſchön, and mark, if an Adjective is preceded neither by an Article nor Pronoun, it is declined like the Def. Article, as, guter Mann, gute Frau, gutes Kind, gutes Mannes, etc. [e] Geſicht, *n.* (this word has in Plural Geſichter, when meaning *face*, but Geſichte, when meaning *vision*).

8. [a] dankbar. [b] Bürger. [c] errichten. [d] Denkmal, *n.*

9. [a] eigentlich. [b] Zughund, *m.* [c] wählen. [d] Sibirien. [e] vorzüglich. [f] hoch, and mark, hoch and nach lose the c, when prolonged by a syllable beginning with e. [g] Bein, *n.* (*pl.* —e, against the rule). [h] Ohr, *n.* (*pl.*— en). [i] ſpitz. [j] Schnauze, *f.* [k] Kreuz, *n.* [l] dick. [m] Kopf, *m.*

10. Between wisdom and virtue there is a great difference.[a]

11. The wise man is always prudent[a], but the prudent man is not always wise.

12. We often say, he is a sensible[a] man, of a person[b], who only transacts[c] his affairs[d] with much acuteness[e], and who sometimes does not feel[f] any great scruple[g] about[h] a bad trick.[i]

13. This is a malicious[a] policy.[b]

14. Appearance[a] goes far[b] in the world[c]; we, therefore, ought[d] also to value[e] good appearance.

15. He had the strange[a] fashion[b] of making a number[c] of deep[d] bows[e], when leaving[f] the room.

16. The prison[a] was seized[b] by the fire[c]; the flames[d] raged[e] in[f] a terrible[g] way[h], and with them a swarm of criminals[i], who else[j] were hidden[k], but now set at liberty[l] in consequence[m] of this occurrence.[n]

17. He gave them bad food[a] to eat, and bad garments[b] to cover themselves[c] with.[d]

---

10. [a] Unterſchied, *m.*

11. [a] klug.

12. [a] klug. [b] Menſch, *m.* declined in cases like an Adjective, which it originally was, viz. männiſch, from Mann. [c] betreiben. [d] Geſchäft, *n.* (*pl.* —e). [e] Feinheit. [f] *say*, makes to himself no great. [g] Gewiſſen, *n.* [h] über, Acc. [i] Streich, *m.*

13. [a] boshaft. [b] Klugheit.

14. [a] der Schein. [b] *say*, does much. [c] Welt, *f.* [d] ſollten, [e] halten auf, Acc.

15. [a] ſonderbar. [b] Mode, *f.* [c] Menge, *f.* [d] tief. [e] Verbeugung. [f] *say*, when (wenn) he left.

16. [a] Gefängniß. [b] ergreifen. [c] Feuer, *m.* [d] Flamme, *f.* [e] wüthen. [f] auf, Acc. [g] ſchrecklich. [h] Weiſe, *f.* [i] Verbrecher. [j] ſonſt. [k] verbergen; *say*, of else hidden, but now at liberty set criminals. [l] in Freiheit ſetzen. [m] durch, Acc. [n] Ereigniß, *n.* (*pl.* —e).

17. [a] Nahrung. [b] Kleid, *n.* [c] ſich bedecken. [d] damit.

18. Agriculture[a] often is a faithful[b] guardian[c] of patriotic[d] virtues, and an excellent[e] school of a simple, pious disposition.[f]

19. The feeling[a] of one's[b] own[c] sufferings[d] as well as the sight[e] of foreign ones[f] makes most[g] men dissatisfied.[h]

20. All sufferings of living beings[a] are, according[b] to their first origin[c], an effect[d] of the necessary[e] nature of things.

21. By the art[a] of the physician[b] and surgeon[c] the most dangerous[d] diseases[e] as well as the worst[f] wounds[g] and bruises[h] of the body are often easily cured.[i]

22. Often even[a] hereditary[b] defects[c] and infirmities[d] can be removed[e] by this wonderful[f] art.

23. Be it want[a] of necessary[b] food[c], be it real[d] or imaginary[e] oppression which[f] impels[g] nomadic tribes[h], they never hesitate[i] long to leave[j] their native country[k], and to seek in a foreign land[l] new pastures and new habitations.

24. Imagination[a] paints[b] to us the pictures[c] of foreign countries and distant oceans as wonderful scenes[d] of great actions.[e]

---

18. [a] der Ackerbau. [b] treu. [c] Hut, *f.* [d] vaterländiſch. [e] vorzüglich. [f] Geſinnung.

19. [a] Gefühl, *n.* [b] *say*, the. [c] eigen. [d] Leiden, *n.* [e] Anblick, *m.* [f] *say*, sufferings. [g] *say*, the most. [h] unzufrieden.

20. [a] Weſen, *n.* [b] gemäß, Dat., and generally stands after its case. [c] Urſprung, *m.* [d] Folge, *f.* [e] nothwendig.

21. [a] Kunſt, *f.* [b] Arzt. [c] Wundarzt. [d] gefährlich. [e] Krankheit. [f] ſchlimm. [g] Wunde, *f.* [h] Beſchädigung. [i] heilen.

22. [a] ſogar. [b] angeboren. [c] Fehler, *m.* [d] Gebrechen, *n.* [e] heben. [f] wunderbar.

23. [a] Mangel, *m.* [b] erforderlich. [c] Nahrung. [d] wirklich. [e] vermeint. [f] this refers to *it*, and must be translated by was, which is used, when relating to some indefinite or general word. [g] antreiben. [h] *say*, the nomade, sing., Nomade, *m.* [i] anſtehen. [j] verlaſſen. [k] Heimath, *f.* [l] Fremde, *f.*

24. [a] die Einbildung. [b] malen. [c] Bild, *n.* [d] Schauplatz, *m.* [e] That, *f.*

25. Different[a] causes[b] often produce[c] similar[d] effects.[e]

26. The youthful[a] spendthrift[b] not rarely[c] turns into[d] an avaricious[e] old man.[f]

27. The fortune[a] of avaricious hoarders[b] often falls into the hands of squandering[c] and, in the proper[d] sense[e] of the word, of laughing heirs.[f]

28. The divine[a] gift[b] of speech[c] puts[d] all the organs[e] of the brain[f], all the senses[g] and faculties[h] in motion.[i]

29. Useless[a] words often spoil[b] the best cause.[c] We often offend[d] by a hasty[e] word, and create[f] unnecessary[g] enmities[h], which we can hardly[i] reconcile[j] by great[k] exertions.[l]

30. Much talking[a] is seldom a sign[b] of good speaking.[c]

31. Docile[a] dogs give[b] pleasure[c] both[d] to little children and to wise men.

32. An anxious[a] physician makes the parents[b] uneasy[c] on account[d] of their sick child.

33. The poor family is the object[a] of general[b] sym-

---

25. [a] verſchieden. [b] Urſache, *f.* [c] erzeugen. [d] ähnlich. [e] Wirkung.

26. [a] jugendlich. [b] Verſchwender. [c] ſelten. [d] *say*, becomes. [e] geizig. [f] Greis.

27. [a] Vermögen, *n.* [b] Sammler. [c] verſchwenderiſch. [d] eigentlich. [e] Sinn, *m.* [f] Erbe, *m.*

28. [a] göttlich. [b] Geſchenk, *n.* [c] Rede, *f.* [d] ſetzen. [e] Werkzeug, *n.* (*pl.* —e). [f] Gehirn, *n.* [g] Sinn, *m.* [h] Fähigkeit. [i] Bewegung.

29. [a] unnütz. [b] verderben. [c] Sache, *f.* [d] verletzen. [e] übereilt. [f] to create ſich zuziehen. [g] unnöthig. [h] Feindſchaft. [i] kaum. [j] ausſöhnen. [k] viel. [l] Mühe, *f.*

30. [a] *say*, the much talking; to talk reden. [b] Zeichen, *n.* [c] *say*, of the good speech.

31. [a] gelehrig. [b] gewähren. [c] Vergnügen, *n.* [d] both—and ſowohl—als auch.

32. [a] ängſtlich. [b] Eltern. [c] unruhig. [d] wegen, Gen.

33. [a] Gegenſtand, *m.* [b] *say*, of the general allgemein.

pathy[c]; soon, however, its miserable[d] condition[e] will be alleviated[f] by some[g] generous[h] philanthropists.[i]

34. By all solid[a] grammarians[b] Luther's translation[c] of the Bible[d] is considered[e] as rule[f] and basis[g] of a classical[h] diction[i] in German.[j]

35. Not only Klopstock, but[a] many other authors[b] of[c] the first rank[d] have drawn[e] from this rich source[f], and have formed[g] their style[h] principally[i] according[j] to this rule.

36. It is remarkable[a], that into no modern[b] language have so many biblical[c] phrases[d] and expressions[e] been adopted[f], and formally[g] passed over[h] into[i] life as in the German.

37. Birds of prey[a] have a repulsive[b] and often terrible[c] cry[d]; it is the voice[e] of passion.[f]

38. A great natural philosopher[a] possessed among[b] his domestic animals[c] a monkey[d], who was once missing[e], and whom he, after a long search[f], at last[g] found in his library.

39. There the animal sat on[a] the ground[b], and had

---

[c] Mitleid, *n.* [d] elend. [e] Lage, *f.* [f] mildern. [g] einige. [h] edelmüthig. [i] *say*, men's friend Menſchenfreund, *m.*

34. [a] gründlich. [b] Grammatiker. [c] Ueberſetzung. [d] Bibel, *f.* [e] anſehen. [f] Norm, *f.* [g] Grundtext, *m.* [h] claſſiſch. [i] Ausdruck. [j] *say*, the German das Deutſche.

35. [a] ſondern, when denying a negative expression. [b] Schriftſteller. [c] von expresses *of* referring to a quality. [d] Rang, *m.* [e] ſchöpfen (aus). [f] Quelle, *f.* [g] bilden. [h] Stil, *m.* [i] vorzüglich. [j] nach, Dat.

36. [a] merkwürdig. [b] neuer. [c] bibliſch. [d] Wendung. [e] Ausdruck, *m.* [f] aufnehmen. [g] gänzlich. [h] übergehen. [i] *say*, into the.

37. [a] bird of prey Raubvogel, *m.* [b] widerlich. [c] furchtbar. [d] Ruf, *m.* [e] Stimme, *f.* [f] Leidenſchaft.

38. [a] Naturforſcher. [b] unter, Dat. [c] Hausthier, *n.* (*pl.*—e). [d] Affe, *m.* [e] to miss vermißt werden. [f] *say*, after long searching; searching das Suchen. [g] endlich.

39. [a] an, Dat. [b] Erde, *f.*

the plates[c] of an unbound[d] natural-historical[e] work[f] spread[g] around him.[h]

40. Astonished[a] at this intent[b] study[c] of his inmate[d], the master approached[e], and saw with[f] wonder and to his great annoyance[g], that the sweet-toothed[h] monkey had eaten out[i] all the[j] chafers[k], which he had found depicted[l] here and there.[m]

41. The story[a] is merry enough!

42. A well-digested[a] plan[b], when[c] completely carried out, makes[d] us forget all the trouble[e], which we[f] may have taken[g], in order to arrive[h] at[i] that end.[k]

43. You, beloved[a] brothers and sisters, fare[b] well!

44. Then, you, mighty lords[a] of the earth, I was learning to know the littleness[b] of human grandeur.[c]

45. We cannot call the sound[a] even[b] of a single[c] land-animal[d] beautiful.

46. Words and adorned[a] speeches are no sure[b] proof[c] of true[d] gratitude.[e]

---

[c] Kupfer, *n.* [d] ungebunden. [e] naturhiſtoriſch. [f] Werk, *n.* [g] zerſtreuen. [h] um ſich her.

40. [a] erſtaunen (über, Acc.) [b] eifrig. [c] Studium, *n.* [d] Hausfreund, *m.* [e] ſich nahen. [f] *say*, to his zu — Verwunderung. [g] Verdruß, *m.* [h] genäſchig. [i] herausſpeiſen. [j] *say*, the all der geſammte. [k] Käfer, *m.* [l] abmalen. [m] hier und da.

41. [a] Geſchichte, *f.*

42. [a] wohlausgedacht. [b] Plan, *m.* [c] *say*, when it stands there, — carried out ausführen. [d] laſſen. [e] *say*, all that the means may have had troublesome unbequem. [f] means Mittel, *n.* [g] *say*, had. [h] gelangen. [i] zu. [j] Zweck, *m.*

43. [a] geliebt, and mark, the Adjective after the Pronoun personel is so declined, af if the Indef. Article preceded. [b] leben.

44. [a] mighty lord, mächtig. [b] Kleinheit. [c] Größe, *f.*

45. [a] Ton, *m.* [b] ſelbſt. [c] einzig. [d] Landthier, *n.*

46. [a] ſchmücken. [b] ſicher. [c] Beweis, *m.* [d] wahrhaft. [e] Dankbarkeit.

47. The whole property[a] of this savage[b] consisted[c] in a miserable hut of clay[d], a bow[e], and some arrows[f].

48. The miser collects[a] money and valuables[b] without[c] any[d] purpose[e].

49. The spendthrift has a useless[a], but the miser no[b] enjoyment[c] of[d] his property[e].

50. His cheerful[a] song[b] is a faithful[c] companion[d] to the traveller.[e]

51. Nature gave to some birds only one single[a] melodious[b] sound[c], or a simple[d] musical[e] set[f] of tones[g], which they incessantly[h] repeat[i]; for instance[j] to the titmouse[k] who, by means of them[l], announces[m] his own[n] lively[o] disposition.[p]

52. If one part[a] is missing[b] in a whole[c], the latter[d] is incomplete[e] and faulty[f], the missing part, however, must not be the most important[g] of the whole, else[h] the latter[d] is entirely[i] destroyed[j], and not merely[k] incomplete.[l]

53. The neighing[a] of the horse, the noblest[b] of all animals, is among[c] the most expressive[d] and most powerful[e] sounds of the animal[f] chest.[g]

---

47. [a] Eigenthum, *n.* [b] Wild. [c] beſtehen. [d] Erdhütte, *f.* [e] Bogen, *m.* [f] Pfeil, *m.*

48. [a] *the miser* is to be expressed by the Adjective geizig. [a] zuſammenraffen. [b] Gut, *n.* (*pl.* Güter). [c] ohne, Acc. [d] irgend ein. [e] Zweck, *m.*

49. [a] unnütz. [b] kein. [c] Genuß, *m.* [d] von. [e] das Seinige.

50. [a] fröhlich. [b] Geſang, *m.* [c] treu. [d] Begleiter. [e] der Reiſende.

51. [a] einzig. [b] melodiſch. [c] Laut, *m.* [d] einfach. [e] muſikaliſch. [f] Satz, *m.* [g] Ton, *m.* [h] unaufhörlich. [i] wiederholen. [j] zum Beiſpiel. [k] Meiſe, *f.* [l] damit. [m] ankündigen. [n] eigen. [o] lebhaft. [p] Weſen, *n.*

52. [a] Theil, *m.* [b] fehlen. [c] das Ganze. [d] dieſer, dieſe, dieſes. [e] unvollſtändig. [f] fehlerhaft. [g] wichtigſt. [h] ſonſt. [i] ganz. [j] zerſtören. [k] bloß. [l] unvollkommen.

53. [a] Wiehern. [b] edelſt, which must agree with *horse*. [c] gehören (zu). [d] ausdrucksvoll. [e] mächtigſt. [f] thieriſch. [g] Bruſt, *f.*

54. He wished so to live, that his first grey[a] hair[b] might not come from[c] repentance[d] of a bad action.

55. A really[a] good servant[b] must have open[c] eyes[d], closed[d] lips[f], clean[g] hands and nimble[h] feet.[i]

56. You will see me again in a few[a] hours.

57. Have you so little curiosity[a], as[b] not to ask me for[c] my secret[d]?

VI. On the Declension of Adjectives in the Comparative and Superlative.

1. The lofty[a] vault[b] of God's house[c] resounds[d] with (von) the chaunt[e] of the assembled[f] congregation[g]; and this chaunt accompanied[h] by the tones of the organ[i], rises[j] to the loftier vault[k] of heaven.

2. The transplanting[a] of the sugar-cane[b] from the Levant[c] to the West[d] became of far[e] greater importance[f] to the commerce of the world[g] and to the fates[h] of countries and nations than silk-weaving.[i]

---

54. [a] grau. [b] Haar, *n.* [c] durch, Acc. [d] Reue, *f.* (über, Acc.).

55. [a] wirklich. [b] der Bediente. [c] offen. [d] Auge, *n.* (*pl.*—n). [e] ſchließen. [f] *say*, a closed mouth Mund, *m.* [g] rein. [h] ſchnell. [i] Fuß, *m.*

56. [a] wenig and viel are not declined, when referring to intensity or quantity; but when referring to number, they are declinable.

57. [a] Neugier, *f.* [b] *say* that you do not, etc. [c] um, Acc. [d] Geheimniß, *n.*

1. [a] hoch. [b] Gewölbe, *n.* [c] Gotteshaus, *n.*, *neuter* (because the compounded Substantive takes the gender of the second part, as this is the chief of the whole). [d] wiederhallen. [e] Geſang, *m.* verſammeln. [g] Gemeinde. [h] begleiten. [i] Orgel, *f.* [j] ſich erheben. [k] Wölbung.

2. [a] Verpflanzung. [b] Zuckerrohr, *n.* [c] Levante, *f.* [d] Abendland, *n.* [e] weit. [f] Wichtigkeit. [g] Welthandel, *m.* [h] Schickſal, *n.* (*pl.*—e). [i] Seidenweberei.

3. Gustavus Adolphus was the first general of his century, and the bravest soldier of his army.

4. Acquainted[a] with the tactics[b] of the Greeks[c] and Romans[d], he had invented[e] a better strategy[f], which served as model[g] to the greatest generals of the following times.

5. Deeper meaning[a] lies in the fabulous story[b] of my childhood than in that truth which life is teaching.

6. The human mind requires[a] a frequent[b] contemplation[c] of that[d] which[e] is[f] to raise[g] the spirit above the earth.

7. The philosopher[a] must dig[b] for[b] the most excellent[c] thoughts[d], just as[e] the miner[f] for the noblest[g] metals.[h]

8. The most solid[a] gold lies the deepest[b]; but who would penetrate[c] so far[d], if he were[e] to disdain[f] the—at first[g] small[h]—yieldings[i] of the undertaken[j] working of the mine[k]?

---

4. [a] Vertraut. [b] Taktik, *f.* [c] Grieche. [d] Römer. [e] erfinden. [f] Kriegskunſt, *f.* [g] zum Muſter dienen.

5. [a] Bedeutung. [b] Mährchen, *n.*

6. [a] bedürfen, which is construed with the Genitive or Accusative, as *I do not want him* ich bedarf ſeiner nicht, or ich bedarf ihn nicht. [b] oft, and take the comparative. [c] Anſchauung, pl. [d] *this* is dieſer, and *that* jener, when two things or persons are contrasted, but else it is expressed by the longer forms of the Article, der, die, das, Gen. deſſen, deren, deſſen, Gen. pl. deren, when no relative follows, and derer when one follows; Dat. pl. denen. [e] *which* is was or das when referring to something general, and welches when relative to something definite. [f] *is to* express by ſoll. [g] erheben.

7. [a] Denker. [b] graben, forſchen nach. [c] vorzüglich. [d] Gedanke, *m.* (which, like Name, Friede, Glaube, originally had an n in Nom. sing.). [e] wie. [f] Bergmann. [g] edel. [h] Metall, *n.*

8. [a] gediegen. [b] am tiefſten (an dem tiefſt-en; this is the way to form the superlative of the Adverb, and an dem are contracted into am). [c] gelangen. [d] bis dahin. [e] *to be to*, express by wollen. [f] verſchmähen. [g] zuerſt or anfänglich. [h] gering. [i] Ausbeute, *f.*, only used in the singular. [j] unternehmen. [k] Bergbau.

9. The lion, in the divinations[a] of the prophets[b], was the symbol[c] of the highest strength[d] and generosity.[e]

10. In agriculture[a] we recognise[b] the foundation[c] of all civil[d] order[e], and the safest[f] and richest source[g] of prosperity.[h]

11. Nature has granted[a] to the tiniest[b] German bird, the wren[c], a very clear[d] set of sounds[e], which it recites[f] during[g] rain and wind, yea[h] in the severest[i] frost[j] and snow-storm[k], all the time[m] merrily[n] turning[o] around[p] on the highest[q] points of houses and trees.

12. From the beginning[a] of the religious war[b] in Germany till[c] the peace[d] of Munster[e], hardly[f] any thing[g] grand and remarkable occurred[h] in the political world of Europe, in which[i] the reformation[j] had[k] not the most prominent[l] share.[m]

---

9. [a] Weiſſagung. [b] Prophet, (which like most foreign words of the masculine gender with the accent on the ultimate has en in the cases). [c] Bild, *n.* [d] Stärke, *f.* [e] Großmuth, *f.* (against the rule, since Muth is masculine; thus also, Demuth, *f.*, humility, Wehmuth, *f.*, melancholy).

10. [a] Landbau, *m.* [b] erkennen. [c] Grundlage, *f.* [d] bürgerlich. [e] Ordnung. [f] ſicher. [g] Quelle, *f.* [h] Wohlſtand, *m.*

11. [a] verleihen. [b] klein. [c] Zaunkönig or Winterkönig. [d] hell. [e] set of sounds Geſang, *m.* [f] abſingen. [g] während. [h] ja. [i] ſcharf. [j] Froſt, *m.* [k] Schneegeſtöber, *n.* [m] *whilst it*, etc., wobei er. [n] luſtig. [o] ſich drehen. [p] umher. [q] ober high.

12. [a] Anfang, *m.* [b] Religionskrieg, *m.* [c] bis zu. [d] Friede, *m.* [e] Münſter. [f] kaum. [g] Etwas. [h] geſchehen. [i] woran. [j] Religionsverbeſſerung. [k] take the subjunctive Pluperf. [l] vorzüglich. [m] Antheil, *m.*

VII. On Numbers.

1. Clement[a] the twelfth[b] died[c] in the eighty-eighth[d] year of his age[e], and the[f] tenth of his pontificate[g], on the sixth of February[h] seventeen hundred and forty.

2. The cardinals[a] being[b] uncertain whom to choose[c], Prosper Lambertini, the learned[d] and tolerant[e] archbishop[f] of Ancona, said with his accustomed[g] good-humour[h]:

3. "If you want[a] a saint[b], choose Gotti; if a politician[c], Aldrosandi; but if a good man, take me."

4. His advice[a] was followed[b], and he ascended[c] the papal[d] throne[e] as[f] Benedict the fourteenth.

5. Napoleon's chief army[a] of[b] about[c] three hundred and fifty thousand men[d] was, in the autumn of[e] 1813, concentrated[f] in the neighbourhood[g] of Dresden.

6. He divided it in[a] three parts. With the strongest[b] he advanced[c] himself[d] into Silesia[e]; the second Oudinot

---

1. [a] Clemens. [b] the ordinal numbers are *to nineteen* formed by adding t to the cardinal ones, as der Zwölfte, and from twenty by adding ſt, as der zwanzigſte. [c] ſterben (a in imperf., o in past). [d] The *units* stand always before the *tens*, therefore *eighty-eight* is acht und achtzig, consequently the ordinal must be acht und achtzigſt. [e] Alter, *n.* [f] *the* must refer to in. [g] Prieſterthum, *n.* [h] The names of the months stand without termination after ordinal numbers, as der erſte Auguſt the first of August.

2. [a] Cardinal (*pl.* —äle). [b] *say*, when the Cardinals were. [c] wählen, and *say*, whom they were to (ſollen) choose. [d] gelehrt. [e] duldſam. [f] Erzbiſchof. [g] gewöhnlich. [h] Scherzhaftigkeit.

3. [a] brauchen. [b] Heilig. [c] Staatsmann.

4. [a] Rath, *m.* [b] befolgen. [c] beſteigen. [d] päpſtlich. [e] Thron, *m.* [f] als.

5. [a] Hauptmacht, *f.* [b] von. [c] ungefähr. [d] Mann, and remark, when the Substantive expresses the mere form of number, and, at the same time, the things numbered, it stands after numeral words in the singular. [e] *of* is either omitted or expressed by *of the year*. [f] zuſammenziehen. [g] Umgegend, *f.*

6. [a] in with Acc. [b] ſtark. [c] vordringen. [d] ſelbſt. [e] Schleſien.

led towards[f] Berlin, and the third[g] remained[h] in Dresden, in order to guard[i] the Austrian[j] frontier.[k]

7. It[a] has been calculated[b], that the entire[c] force[d] of the allied[e] princes amounted to[f] about half[g] a million of warriors.[h]

8. Napoleon had half[a] less, but his force was more concentrated, and his superior[b] military[c] talent[d] seemed to counterbalance[e] the superior power[f] of his numerous[g], but less skilful[h] adversaries.[i]

9. In the month of August the tempest of war[a] broke forth[b] on all points, and the two[c] halves[d] of Europe once more measured[e] themselves in a fearful[f] decisive struggle.[g]

10. The first glorious fight[a] Wallmoden encountered[b] on the twenty-first of August against Davoust near Vellahn.

11. The emperor[a] Conrad the second of Germany was solemnly[b] received[c], on the twenty-second of March, one thousand and twenty-seven, by[d] pope John the nineteenth, and made[e] a victorious[f] entry[g] into Rome.

12. When during three consecutive years[a], from one

---

[f]gegen. [g]der dritte, contracted from dreite. [h]zurückbleiben. [i]bewachen. [j]östreichisch. [k]Grenze, *f.*

7. [a]*say*, man, etc. [b]ausrechnen. [c]gesammt. [d]Macht, *f.* [e]verbündet. [f]betragen. [g]halb, and mark, the Article always stands in German before the word halb. [h]Krieger.

8. [a]Hälfte, *f.*, *say*, the half less. [b]überlegen. [c d]Feldherrntalent, *n.* [e]überwiegen. [f]Uebermacht, *f.* [g]zahlreich. [h]geschickt. [i]Gegner.

9. [a]Kriegesungewitter, *n.* [b]losbrechen. [c]*the two*, when both parties are known, is die beiden. [d]Hälfte, *f.* [e]messen. [f]furchtbar. [g]Entscheidungskampf, *m.*

10. [a]Gefecht, *n.* [b]bestehen.

11. [a]Kaiser. [b]feierlich. [c]empfangen. [d]*say*, by the. [e]halten. [f]siegreich. [g]Einzug, *m.*

12. [a]*say*, three years through hindurch.

thousand and twenty eight to[b] one thousand and thirty, all the harvests[c] in Italy, Germany and France were destroyed[d] by the violent[e] struggle[f] of the elements[g], by immense[h] rains[i] and fearful[j] inundations[k], there arose[l] the most terrible[m] famine[n], of which[o] history knows to such an extent.[p]

13. It was not until[a] three centuries[b] after the loss[c] of the Holy Land that the poet arose[d], who worthily[e] celebrated[f] the heroic[g] renown[h] of Godfrey[i] de Bouillon, and still longer perhaps had Achilles and Hector fallen, before[j] Homer made them immortal.[k]

14. Points, where the Ecliptic[a] crosses,[b] the Equator[c], are called equinoctial points.[d] One[e] is called the vernal equinox.[f]

15. This position[a] the sun occupies[b] between the twentieth and twenty-second of March[c], and this is for us the commencement[d] of[e] spring.

16. The earth accomplishes[a] its orbit[b] round the sun, a journey of a hundred and thirty one millions[c] of German miles[d], in three hundred and sixty-five days, five hours, forty-eight minutes[e] and forty-five seconds[f], which we call a solar year.[g]

---

[b] bis. [c] Ernte, *f.* [d] verderben, *v. n.* [e] gewaltig. [f] Kampf, m. [g] Element, *n.* (*pl.*,—e). [h] ungeheuer. [i] Regen, *m.* (take singular). [j] übergroß. [k] Ueberschwemmung. [l] entstehen. [m] gräßlich. [n] Hungersnoth, *f.* [o] say, *which* instead of *of which*. [p] Ausdehnung.

13. [a] erst. [b] Jahrhundert, *n.* [c] Verlust, *m.* [d] auftreten. [e] würdig. [f] feiern. [g h] Heldenruhm, *m.* [i] Gottfried. [j] als. [k] der Unsterblichkeit übergeben.

14. [a] Ekliptik, *f.* [b] durchschneiden. [c] Aequator, *m.* [d] Aequinoctialpunkt, *m.* [e] ein, which is declined as numeral, like an Adjective, when no Substantive follows. [f] Frühlingspunkt, *m.*

15. [a] Stellung. [b] haben. [c] März. [d] Anfang, *m.* [e] *say*, of the.

16. [a] vollenden. [b] Bahn, *f.* Million, *f* [d] Meile, *f.* [e] Minute, *f.* [f] Secunde, *f.* [g] Sonnenjahr, *n.*

17. The surface[a] of the earth consists[b] of land and water. The sea, which occupies[c] the greatest part of it[d], surrounds[e] the land, the extent[f] of which[g] amounts to[h] somewhat[i] beyond one-fourth[j] of the whole earth, whilst[k] three-fourths are covered[l] by the sea.

18. The circumference[a] of the circle, be it large or small, is divided into three hundred and sixty equal parts, which are called degrees.[b]

19. A quadrant[a] is the fourth part of the circumference of the circle[b], therefore[c] it contains $\frac{1}{4}$ of $360^0 = 90^0$.[d]

20. Every right[a] angle[b] has the size[c] of a quadrant[d], namely[e] 90^0. Half[f] a right angle, therefore, has $\frac{1}{2}$ of $90^0 = 45^0$.[g]

21. The sun rose[a] on[b] the first of December at[c] a quarter[d] to eight, and set at a quarter to four.

22. On the first of November it rose at half-past six[a], and set at half-past four.

23. On the eleventh of October it rose at a quarter-past six, and set at a quarter-past five.

---

17. [a] Oberfläche, *f.* [b] beſtehen (aus). [c] einnehmen. [d] *say*, of the same. [e] umgeben. [f] Ausdehnung. [g] *say*, whose (deſſen). [h] betragen. [i] etwas. [j] fractional numbers are formed from the ordinals by the addition of Theil, *n.*, shortened into tel, thus Drittel, *n.*, Viertel, *n.*, etc. [k] während. [l] bedecken.

18. [a] Umfang, *m.* [b] Grad, *m.*

19. [a] Quadrant, *m.* [b] Kreisumfang, *m.* [c] daher. [d] write this in words: three hundred and sixty fourth-parts, equal (to) ninety degrees; and mark, Grad, which is a measure, and, at the same time, the thing measured, has after numerals no plural.

20. [a] recht. [b] Winkel, *m.* [c] Größe, *f.* [d] mark, foreign Substantives in ant have en in the cases. [e] nämlich. [f] *say*, a half. [g] write this in words.

21. [a] aufgehen. [b] an, Dat. [c] um. [d] mark, *quarter-past eight* is ein Viertel auf (i. e. towards) neun; *half-past eight* is halb (understand *towards*) neun, and *quarter to nine* is drei Viertel auf neun.

22. [a] i. e. *half* (*towards*) *seven*.

24. On the twenty-first of September it rose sixteen minutes to[a] six, and set one minute past[b] six.

25. Solon left his country[a] lest[b] he might be compelled[c] to abolish[d] one[e] or another[f] of his laws.[g]

26. A country does not produce[a] everything[b], but[c] possesses[d] one thing[e], and lacks[f] an other[g]; thus also man alone does not suffice[h] himself,—he possesses one thing, and lacks an other.

27. The fifteenth century, with Philip de Comines as his text book[a], seems to have been the chief sphere[b] of Arnold's studies[c] in modern[d] history.

28. Indeed[a] the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries[b] produced[c] but few[d] great authors[e] in German[f]; but these few are the[g] more remarkable.

29. The short[a] abstract[b] of all[c] religion and rule of conduct[d] is: fear God, and love thy neighbour[e] as thyself.

30. This great man was by his affability[a], without any exterior[b] pride[c], accessible[d] to[e] anybody.[f]

---

24. [a] auf. [b] nach.

25. [a] *say*, went out of the country außer Landes gehen. [b] damit —nicht. [c] nöthigen. [d] aufheben. [e] remember, no Substantive follows in the same case. [f] *say*, the other. [g] Geſetz, *n.* (*pl.*—e).

26. [a] hervorbringen. [b] take neuter of aller, e, es. [c] as a *denial* of *not*, it is ſondern. [d] beſitzen. [e] *say*, the one. [f] bedürfen. [g] take the neuter. [h] genügen.

27. [a] Leitfaden, *say*, for the zu dem, contracted zum. [b] Hauptſchauplatz, *m.* [c] Studium, *n.*, and Latin Substantives in *ium* have in German ien in plural. [d] *say*, in the modern neuer.

28. [a] zwar. [b] take the singular. [c] take Perf. Sing. [d] wenig. [e] Schriftſteller. [f] *say*, in German language. [g] deſto.

29. [a] kurz. [b] Inbegriff, *m.* [c] all. [d] Sittenlehre, *f.* [e] der Nächſte.

30. [a] Freundlichkeit. [b] äußer. [c] Stolz, *m.* [d] zugänglich. [e] für. [f] jedermann, of which only the Genitive has an s, as sign of declension.

31. The whole of[a] Germany[b] admired the discipline[c] by which the Swedish[d] armies distinguished[e] themselves in so creditable a manner.[f]

32. Every[a] extravagance[b] was very severely[c] punished[d]; most severely[e], blasphemy[f], robbery[g], gambling[h], and duels.[i]

33. All the[a] hardships[b] of war the king bore[c] like[d] the commonest soldier[e] of[f] the army.

34. Scent[a] is for[b] many a[c] flower, what singing[d] is to birds.

35. During the long course[a] of our life, one[b] must experience[c] much, and suffer[d] much, that[e] one would gladly[f] not experience.

36. The students, who were dissatisfied with the behaviour[a] of the citizens[b], were accustomed, in order to annoy[c] them, to leave the town in great numbers[d], and on[e] such occasions, they first promenaded[f] four and four[g] in a line through all the chief streets[h] of the place.

---

31. [a] ganz. [b] Deutſchland, *n.* [c] Mannszucht, *f.* [d] Schwediſch. [e] unterſcheiden. [f] in so creditable a manner ſo rühmlich.

32. [a] all. [b] Ausſchweifung (use the plural). [c] severe ſtreng, and mark, the superlative of an Adverb like ſtreng is aufs ſtrengſte, when it means *absolutely* it was *the most severe*; [d] ahnden. [e] but when it implies that it was *comparatively the most severe*, it is am ſtrengſten. [f] Gotteslaſterung. [g] Räuberei, *f.* [h] Spiel, *n.* [i] Zweikampf, *m.*

33. [a] not expressed. [b] Ungemach, *n.* Sing. [c] erdulden. [d] gleich with Dat. [e] der Gemeinſte. [f] aus.

34. [a] Geruch, *m.* [b] expressed by the Dat. [c] mancher, e, es. [d] Geſang *m.*

35. [a] Zeit, *f.* [b] man. [c] erleben. [d] erdulden. [e] *that* when referring to something indefinite is was. [f] gern.

36. [a] Benehmen, *n.* [b] Bürger. [c] ärgern. [d] Maſſe, *f.* [e] bei. [f] ziehen. [g] *distributive* numbers are formed by putting je (which is as much as immer *always*) before the cardinal numbers. [h] Hauptſtraße, *f.*

VIII. On Pronouns.

1. Every[a] animal has its distinct[b] character[c], or some[d] characteristic[e] feature[f] which[g] we exclusively[h] and especially[i] attribute[j] to it.

2. Give every man[a] his own.[b]

3. Germany did not possess a second man like[a] Luther, and no other[b] nation of modern[c] times[d] has his like to show.[e]

4. He[a] is mischievous[b] who rejoices[c] at the loss[d] which another has sustained.[e]

5. All the countries inhabited[a] by Germans on the left[b] of the Rhine had been incorporated[c] into the Roman[d] Empire[e], and the same[f] fate[g] threatened[h] also those[i] between the Elbe[j] and Rhine.

---

1. [a] jeder, e, es. [b] beſtimmt. [c] Character, *m.* [d] irgend ein. [e f] characteristic feature Characterzug, *m.* [g] welcher or der. [h] ausſchließlich. [i] vorzugsweiſe. [j] beilegen.

2. [a] jeder. [b] *my own* is das Meine or das Meinige.

3. [a] wie. [b] no other kein andrer, keine andre, kein andres. [c] *say*, of the *modern* neuer. [d] take the singul. [e] *my like* is in German a Genitive, meines Gleichen, which means *of my like*, from the Nominative mein Gleiches my like, my equal.

4. [a] *he who* is *a)* derjenige welcher when it refers to a certain individual, but *b)* when it refers to *mankind* in general, *he* is not translated, and *who* is expressed by wer. [b] ſchadenfroh. [c] ſich freuen über, Acc. [d] Schaden, *m.* [e] leiden.

5. [a] *say*, which were inhabited bewohnen. [b] das linke Ufer. [c] einſchließen. [d] römiſch. [e] Herrſchaft. [f] derſelbe, dieſelbe, dasſelbe. [g] Schickſal, *n.* [h] drohen with Dat. [i] der, die, das, Pron. Demonstr., which is used to avoid the repetition of a Substantive before mentioned. [j] die Elbe.

6. The hair[a] of[b] queen Christina of Sweden was her greatest ornament[c], but she bestowed[d] no care[e] upon it.[f]

7. We are all creatures[a] of the same God.

8. Humble[a] is he who[b] regards[c] all his gifts[d] as voluntary[e] and undeserved[f] presents[g] from[h] the hand of Providence.[i]

9. Only those[a] animals speak by[b] signs[c], to wich[d] living[e] sound[f] has been denied.[g]

10. The tongue[a] even[b] of some birds is formed[c] to be able to repeat[d] human words, the sense[e] of which[f] they however[g] do not comprehend.[h]

11. Do you know the name of that[a] man, whose heroism[b] consisted in the bold[c] confession[d] of truth[e], whose sword[f] was the word, whose armour[g] his confidence[h] in God[i], whose pride[j] his poverty[k]?

12. There are[a] great countries on the earth, in which the weather[b] is, the whole year through[c], so mild, or

---

6. [a] Haar, *n.* [b] *say*, of the. [c] Schmuck, *m.* [d] verwenden. [e] Sorgfalt, *f.* [f] mark, when the pronouns der, die, das, or er, ſie, es, are joined in their neuters to prepositions, they are changed into the Adv. da, and placed before the proposit., and when the latter begins with a vowel an r is inserted, as durch das, dadurch; auf das, darauf.

7. [a] Geſchöpf, *n.* (*pl.* —e).

8. [a] beſcheiden. [b] cf. note 4 [a]. [c] betrachten. [d] Gabe *f.* [e] freiwillig. [f] unverdient. [g] Geſchenk, *n.* (*pl.* —e). [h] aus. [i] Vorſehung.

9. [a] derjenige or der. [b] durch. [c] Zeichen, *n.* [d] welcher or der; the latter, a relative Pronoun, has deſſen, deren, deſſen in Gen. Sing.; deren in Gen. Pl., and denen in Dat. Pl. [e] lebendig. [f] Laut, *m.* [g] verſagen.

10. [a] Zunge, *f.* [b] ſchon. [c] machen. [d] herſagen. [e] Sinn, *m.* [f] *of which* is to be put before *the sense*, and the article, of course, omitted. [g] doch. [h] begreifen.

11. [a] jener. [b] Heldenthum, *n.* [c] kühn. [d] Bekenntniß, *n.* [e] Wahrheit. [f] Schwert, *n.* [g] Rüſtung. [h] [i] Gottvertrauen, *n.* [j] Stolz, *m.* [k] Armuth, *f.*

12. [a] es giebt with Acc. [b] Witterung. [c] hindurch.

perhaps even[d] hot[e], that their inhabitants[f] need[g] neither fuel[h], nor buildings[i], nor clothing[j] as[k] protection[l] against the frost.[m]

13. In the lives[a] of most[b] men there are[c] far more healthy days[d], than days, in which they are ill.

14. There are[a] far more years, in which the harvests[b] thrive well[c], than of those in which we have to complain[d] of[e] real[f] failure.[g]

15. Who[a] often associates[b] with bad men, him[c] we[d] shall soon take[e] for their companion.[f]

16. He who knows from[a] experience[b] what[c] illness[d] is, knows and feels the bliss[e] of health[f] far more vividly[g] than he who never was indisposed.[h]

17. Who in former times[a] suffered from[b] want[c] of[d] the necessities of life[e], him the enjoyment[f] of his present[g] prosperity[h] renders far more happy than a man[i] who from his youth up[j] has lived in abundance.[k]

---

[d] auch wohl. [e] heiß. [f] Bewohner. [g] bedürfen. [h] Feuerung. [i] Gebäude, *n.* [j] Kleidung. [k] zu with the Def. article. [l] Schutz, *m.* [m] Frost, *m.*

13. [a] Take the Singular. [b] die allermeisten. [c] To be expressed with sein. [d] Take the Genitive.

14. [a] Cf. Note 12 [a]. [b] Frucht. [c] gerathen. [d] klagen. [e] über, A. [f] eigentlich. [g] Mißwachs, *m.*

15. [a] Cf. Note 4 [a]. [b] umgehen. [c] der, and mark, this Pronoun demonstrative, when standing after wer, can be omitted; but only, when both occur in the Nominative case. [d] express by *one* man. [e] halten. [f] Gesell, *m.* (Gen.—en).

16. [a] aus. [b] Erfahrung. [c] *what* as the Pronoun of the *direct* or *indirect* question is always was. [d] Krankſein. [e] Glück, *n.* [f] Gesundheit. [g] lebhaft. [h] unpaß.

17. [a] ehemals. [b] leiden to suffer from, Perfect. [c] Mangel. [d] an, Dat. [e] Lebensbedürfniß, *n.* (*pl.*—e). [f] Genuß, *m.* [g] jetzig. [h] Wohlstand, *m.* (Gen.—es). [i] derjenige. [j] von Jugend auf. [k] Ueberfluß, *m.* (Gen.—es).

18. Among[a] millions of human beings[b] there is perhaps only a single person[c] who is able so to exert[d] his mind that it yields[e] all[f] that[g] it can yield.

19. The idea[a] of[b] that which the world requires[c] was early formed[d] in the mind of[e] Göthe.

20. "Thou art", said Solon to Crœsus, "mightily[a] rich; but that which[b] thou askest[c] of me I cannot tell thee till I have first[d] learned[e] that thou hast happily reached the end[f] of thy life."

21. King Conrad the Second established[a] a peace[b] in Germany, such as[c] was[d] unknown[e] to[f] that extent[g] since immemorable[h] times.

22. That[a] is the most open[b], instructive[c], and unreserved[d] discourse[e] which passes[f] between two persons who are familiar[g] and intimate friends.

23. The best[a] father is he[b] who teaches his children what is good and just.

---

18. [a] unter. [b] Menſch, *m.* (Gen.—en.) [c] einzig, in masculine. [d] anſtrengen. [e] hergeben. [f] aller, e, es. [g] the relative *that*, when referring to something general, is either das or was.

19. [a] Vorſtellung. [b] von. [c] bedürfen. [d] take the reflective form, ſich bilden. [e] *in the mind of* express through bei.

20. [a] gewaltig. [b] *which* is, according to note 18[g], das or was; now, to ask is fragen um, and it is to be observed, that when a relative neuter is combined with a Preposition, the Pronoun is changed into the relative Adverbs da or wo, and put before the Preposition, as durch was, wodurch, dadurch. When the Preposition begins with a vowel, an r is inserted, as aus was, woraus; however, before um it is not wo, but wa, and um was is warum or darum. [c] fragen, with Accusative of the person. [d] *say*; not. [e] erfahren, *n.* [f] Ende, *n.*

21. [a] befeſtigen. [b] Friede, *m.* [c] wie er, wie ſie, wie es. [d] take the Perfect. [e] unbekannt. [f] in. [g] Ausdehnung. [h] undenklich.

22. [a] *that* when an indefinite subject is das. [b] offenherzig. [c] lehrreich. [d] zutraulich. [e] Unterhaltung. [f] Statt finden. [g] *say*, hearty bosom friends.

23. [a] beſt. [b] turn it so, *that is the best father*, and cf. Note 22[a].

24. The lark, in the corn-fields, raises[a] her song[b], and with it[c] she rises[d] high in the air[e] up to[f] the clouds.

25. The cultivation[a] of one's[b] own ground[c] creates[d] and strengthens[e] the attachment[f] towards it.[g]

26. People[a] can lessen[b] many an[c] evil, when a number[d] of them[e], with united[f] energy[g], struggle[h] against it.[i]

27. Every untractable[a] man, at variance[b] with fortune[c], wreaks[d] her[e] injuries[f] on[g] his own heart.

28. I am more afraid[a] of[b] my virtues than of my errors[c]; the first[d] easily mislead[e] me to pride[f], the latter teach me humility.[g]

29. The object[a] of an idyllic[b] poem[c] is always the situation[d], that[e] of an epic[f], the action[g] of a man; the first is always descriptive[h], the latter thoroughly[i] narrative.

---

24. [a] erheben. [b] Lied, *n.* [c] derſelbe, for it is to be remarked, that the cases of es *it* are not used when a Preposition precedes, and the compound Pronoun demonstrative derſelbe is used instead. [d] ſich ſelbſt erheben. [e] take the plural. [f] bis an, Acc.

25. [a] Anbau, *m.* [b] *say*, the. [c] Boden, *m.* [d] erzeugen. [e] verſtärken. [f] Liebe, *f.* [g] *say*, towards the same.

26. [a] plural of der Menſch. [b] vermindern. [c] mancher, e, es, many a. [d, e] *say*, many of them, and put *of them* before *many*. [f] vereinigt. [g] Kraft, *f.*, and take the plural. [h] arbeiten. [i] cf. Note 6[f].

27. [a] ſtörriſch. [b] zerfallen. [c] Glück, *n.* [d] rächen. [e] *her* would be in German ſein, because Glück is neuter; this would be equivocal, since it might be referred to *man*. In such cases, the Pronouns Possessive *his, her, its, their*, are changed for the genitive of the Domonstrative Pronoun der, die, das. [f] Unbilde, *f.* [g] an, Dat.

28. [a] ſich fürchten. [b] vor, Dat. [c] Fehler, *m.* [d] the Pronouns dieſer and jener are used to express *the latter* and *the first*. [e] verleiten. [f] Stolz, *m.* [g] Demuth, *f.*

29. [a] Gegenſtand, *m.* [b] idylliſch. [c] Gedicht, *n.* [d] Zuſtand, *m.* [e] cf. Note 5[i]. [f] epiſch. [g] Handlung. [h] beſchreibend. [i] durchaus. [j] erzählend.

30. St.[a] Odilo, abbot[b] of Clugny, contributed[c] during[d] the great famine[e], which raged[f] through Italy, France, and Germany, from the year 1028 to 1030, everything[g] his church possessed in[h] gold and silver, even[i] the imperial[j] crown of Henry[k] II., which the latter[l] had presented as a gift[m] to the convent.[n]

31. With the art[a] of weaving[b] that of dying[c] is in indissoluble[d] connection.

32. The manufactures[a] of Italy, Germany, and the Netherlands[b] soon found their way just as well[c] to[d] the East[e], as those of the East to the former countries.

33. They were reading Göthe's epic poem that I had seen proceeding from its origin[a], and which[b] stirred up[c], in our discourse[d], all ideas[e] on[f] epic and dramatic art.

34. The portraits[a] of Guttenberg and Faust are still to be seen on a cannon, which the Swedes took with them[b] to Magdeburg during the thirty years' war, but which was returned[c] to the people of Mayence[d] by Napoleon after the battle of Jena.

35. He who loves money more than mankind[a] is not able[b] to gain a true friend.

---

30. [a] *say*, the saint heilig. [b] Abt. [c] hergeben. [d] während, Gen. [e] Hungersnoth, *f.* [f] wüthen. [g] *say*, all, *n.*; and add *which*. [h] an. [i] ja. [j] kaiſerlich. [k] Heinrich. [l] cf. Note 28[d]. [m] ſchenken. [n] Kloſter, *n.*

31. [a] Kunſt, *f.* [b] Weberei. [c] Färberei. [d] unauflöslich.

32. [a] Kunſterzeugniß, *n.* [b] Niederlande. [c] eben ſo gut. [d] nach. [e] Orient, *m.*

33. [a] entſtehen. [b] when a Substantive is explained by two adjective sentences, the first of these is introduced by der, die, das, and the second by welcher, e, es. [c] in Bewegung bringen. [d] Geſpräch, *n.*, and take the plural. [e] Idee, *f.* [f] über, Acc.

34. [a] Bildniß, *n.* [b] to take with (one) mitnehmen. [c] wiederſchenken. [d] die Mainzer.

35. [a] take the plural of Menſch. [b] im Stande.

36. He mentioned first[a] some passages[b] drawn[c] from[d] ancient authors, by means[e] of wich the reader might the easier[f] enter[g] into the spirit[h] of this history.

37. In common[a] with all other foxes[b], those of Africa are great enemies to[c] birds which lay their eggs upon the ground.[d]

IX. On Verbs Auxiliary, Active, Passive, Neuter, and Reflective.

1. Be prudent[a], it is written, (*say* stands) in the Scriptures[b], but be without guile.[c]

2. Let nothing be more sacred[a] to thee than the fulfilling[b] of a given promise.[c]

3. Commerce[a] and the prosperity[b] effected[c] thereby[d] became the pillars[e] of civil[f] liberty[g]; for one had the means[h], by which[i] she could be defended[j], when necessity[k] required it.[l]

4. What will become of[a] me? A good for nothing[b], if you are lazy.[c]

5. The blossom[a] of the vine[b] is lost[c] among[d] the larger leaves[e], and is only betrayed[f] by the delicate[g] lovely[h] scent.[i]

---

36. [a] vorausſchicken. [b] Stelle, *f.* [c] ziehen. [d] aus. [e] vermittelſt. [f] um ſo leichter. [g] ſich hineindenken. [h] Geiſt, *m.*

37. [a] Gemeinſchaft. [b] Fuchs, *m.* (*pl.* Füchſe). [c] *say*, of the. [d] Erde, *f.*

1. [a] klug. [b] Schrift, *f.*, take the singular. [c] Falſch.

2. [a] heilig. [b] Erfüllung. [c] Verſprechen, *n.*

3. [a] Handel, *m.* [b] Wohlſtand, *m.* [c] ſchaffen. [d] dadurch. [e] Stütze, *f.* [f] bürgerlich. [g] Freiheit. [h] Mittel, *n.* [i] wodurch. [j] vertheidigen. [k] Noth, *f.* [l] *say*, forced to it dazu zwingen.

4. [a] aus. [b] Taugenichts, *m.* [c] faul.

5. [a] Blüthe, *f.* [b] Weinſtock, *m.* [c] *say*, loses itself ſich verlieren. [d] unter, *acc.* [e] Blatt, *n.* (*pl.* Blätter). [f] *say*, betrays itself ſich verrathen. [g] zart. [h] lieblich. [i] Duft, *m.*

6. The lion roars[a], wolves howl[b], and bears growl.[c]

7. Art[a] delights[b] the mind.[c]

8. The spring[a] enlivens[b] nature, and gladdens[c] mankind.

9. Tyranny[a] reaps[b] a bad reward.[c]

10. There are several[a] examples[b] known[c] of the swift[d] and unremitting[e] flight[f] of falcons.[g]

11. A falcon of Henry II., which had been lost[a] during[b] the chase[c] near[d] Fontainebleau, was caught[e] the next day in Malta, at[f] a distance[g] of a thousand miles, and recognised[h] by[i] its collar.[j]

12. In the year 1307, the Swiss[a] formed[b] their first league.[c]

13. There was a king of Greece; he was called[a] Athamas, and his wife[b] was called Nephele. They had two children, a son and a daughter; the first was called Phrixus, and the latter Helle.

14. The characteristic feature[a] of an animal is often so decided[b], that all nations from the oldest times have thought[c] they could not express[d] their opinion of[e] a

---

6. [a] brüllen. [b] heulen. [c] brummen.

7. [a] Kunſt, *f.* [b] ergötzen. [c] Geiſt, *m.*

8. [a] Frühling, *m.* [b] beleben. [c] erheitern.

9. [a] Tyrannei. [b] ernten. [c] Lohn, *m.*

10. [a] verſchieden. [b] Beiſpiel, *n.* (*pl.* e). [c] bekannt. [d] ſchnell. [e] aus-dauernd. [f] Flug, *m.*, [g] Falke, *m.*

11. [a] take the reflective form. [b] auf, Dat. [c] Jagd, *f.* [d] bei. [e] fangen. [f] in. [g] Entfernung. [h] erkennen. [i] an, Dat. [j] Halsband, *n.*

12. [a] Schweizer. [b] bilden. [c] Bund, *m.*

13. [a] heißen, to be called. [b] Gattin.

14. [a] Characterzug, *m.* [b] beſtimmt. [c] glauben. [d] ausdrücken. [e] über, Acc.

man more briefly[f], than by[g] designating[h] him by[i] the name of an animal.[j] Thus Nero was called a tiger, Herod a fox.

15. In their forests[a], their sandy deserts[b], and on[c] their heaths[d], the Teutonic[e], the Arab[f], and Mongol[g] nations[h] would always[i] have remained[j] what they were.

16. The hand of industry[a] has imperceptibly[b] extinguished[c] all the destructive[d] vestiges[e] of the great war; but the salutary[f] effects[g] by which it was accompanied[h] have remained.

17. What a weakness[a] in reasonable[b] creatures[c], that they should love[d] to astonish and terrify[e] one another.

18. The conspirators[a] against the life of Cæsar did not bind[b] themselves by an oath[c]; but even[d] without that they kept firmly together[e], persevered[f], and preserved silence.[g]

19. The kaliph was sitting, on[a] a fine afternoon, comfortably[b] on his sofa; he had been sleeping a little, for it was a hot day, and he now looked[c] very cheerful[d] after his nap.[e]

20. He was smoking[a] a long pipe[b] of rosewood[c],

---

[f] kurz. [g] *say*, if they, etc. [h] bezeichnen to point out. [i] mit. [j] Thiername, *m.*

15. [a] Wald, *m.* (*pl.* Wälder). [b] Sandwüſte, *f.* [c] auf, *d.* [d] Heide, *f.* [e] deutſch. [f] arabiſch. [g] mongoliſch. [h] Völkerſchaft. [i] ewig. [j] bleiben.

16. [a] Fleiß, *m.* (Gen. —es). [b] unvermerkt. [c] auslöſchen. [d] verderblich. [e] Spur, *f.* [f] wohlthätig. [g] Folge, *f.* [h] begleiten.

17. [a] Schwachheit. [b] vernünftig. [c] Geſchöpf, *n.* (*pl.* —e). [d] *say*, that they should love it; *should* express by ſollen. [e] to astonish and terrify in Staunen und Furcht ſetzen.

18. [a] Verſchworen, part. of verſchwören. [b] verbinden. [c] Eid, *m.* [d] auch. [e] to keep together, zuſammen halten. [f] ausharren. [g] to preserve silence, ſchweigen.

19. [a] an, Dat. [b] behaglich. [c] ausſehen. [d] heiter. [e] Schläfchen, *n.*

20. [a] rauchen aus. [b] Pfeife, *f.* [c] Roſenholz, *n.*

drank a little coffee now and then[d], wich a slave[e] poured out[f] for him, and always stroked[g] his beard[h] contentedly[i] when he had relished it.[j]

21. In short[a], one could perceive from the look of the kaliph[b], that he felt quite happy.[c]

22. About this hour one could very well speak to him, because he then was always very gentle[a] and affable.[b]

23. For this reason, his grand vizier, Mansor, called upon[a] him every day about this time.

24. Now, that afternoon he came too, but looked[a] very toughtful[b], quite contrary to[c] his usual custom.[d]

25. The kaliph took[a] the pipe out of his mouth[b], and said, "Why do you exhibit[c] such a thoughtful countenance[d], grand vizier?"

26. The grand vizier crossed[a] his arms[b] over his bosom[c], bowed[d] before his master, and replied.[e]

27. "Sire! Wether[a] I exhibit a thoughtful countenance, I do not know; but down there[b], at[c] the palace[d], stands a pedlar[e]; he has such beautiful things, that it vexes[f] me not to have much superfluous[g] money."

---

[d] hie und da. [e] Sklave, *m.* [f] einſchenken. [g] ſtreichen. [h] *say*, to himself the beard. [i] zufrieden. [j] I relish it es ſchmeckt mir.

21. [a] kurz. [b] to perceive from the look of one es einem anſehen. [c] I am quite happy, es iſt mir ganz wohl.

22. [a] mild. [b] leutſelig.

23. [a] beſuchen.

24. [a] ausſehen. [b] gedankenvoll. [c] gegen. [d] usual custom, Gewohnheit.

25. [a] thun. [b] Mund, *m.* [c] machen. [d] Geſicht, *n.*

26. [a] kreuzweis ſchlagen. [b] Arm, *m.* (*pl.*—e). [c] Bruſt, *f.* [d] ſich verneigen. [e] erwiedern.

27. [a] ob. [b] *say*, there down unten. [c] bei. [d] Palaſt, *m.* [e] Krämer. [f] ärgern. [g] überflüſſig.

28. The kaliph, who for some time[a] had wished to give some pleasure[b] to his grand vizier, sent down his black slave, in order to fetch up[c] the pedlar.

29. Soon the slave came back with the pedlar. This was a little clumsy[a] man, dark brown[b] in the[c] face, and in ragged[d] attire.[e]

30. He carried a chest[a], in which he had all sorts of[b] merchandise, pearls and rings, richly inlaid[c] pistols[d], goblets[e] and combs.[f]

31. The kaliph and his vizier looked at[a] everything, and the former at length bought some beautiful pistols for himself and Mansor, but for the wife of the vizier a comb.

32. When the pedlar was already going to shut[a] his chest again, the kaliph perceived[b] a little drawer[c], and asked, if there were any more[d] merchandize.

33. The pedlar pulled out[a] this drawer, and showed in it a box[b] with a blackish[c] powder[d], and a paper with singular[e] writing[f], which neither the kaliph nor Mansor could read.

34. "I once got[a] these two articles[b] from a merchant who found them in Mecca in the street," said the pedlar, "I do not know what they contain[c]; they are at[d] your service[e] for a small[f] price[g]; I can surely[h] do[i] nothing with them[j]."

---

28. [a] lange ſchon. [b] to give pleasure, Freude machen. [c] heraufholen.

29. [a] dick. [b] ſchwarzbraun. [c] im. [d] zerlumpt. [e] Anzug, *m.*

30. [a] Kaſten, *m.* [b] allerhand, which is indeclinable. [c] beſchlagen. [d] Piſtole, *f.* [e] Becher, *m.* [f] Kamm, *m.* (*pl.* Kämme).

31. [a] durchmuſtern.

32. [a] zumachen. [b] ſehen. [c] Schublade, *f.* [d] noch.

33. [a] herausziehen. [b] Doſe, *f.* [c] ſchwärzlich. [d] Pulver, *n.* [e] ſonderbar. [f] Schrift, *f.*

34. [a] bekommen. [b] Stück, *n.* (*pl.*—e). [c] enthalten. [d] it stands at my service es ſteht mir zu Dienſten. [f] gering. [g] Preis, *m.* [h] doch. [i] unternehmen. [j] damit.

35. The kaliph, who liked to have[a] old manuscripts[b] in his library[c], even if he[d] could not read them, bought the writing and the box, and dismissed[e] the pedlar.

36. The kaliph, however[a], thought he would like to know what the writing contained, and asked the vizier if he did not know somebody[b] who could decipher[c] it.

37. "Most gracious[a] lord and master," answered the latter, "near[b] the great mosque[c] there lives a man: he is called Selim the Learned[b]: he understands[c] all languages: let him come: he perhaps knows these mysterious[f] characters[g]."

38. The learned Selim was soon fetched. "Selim," said the kaliph to him, "Selim, it is said[a] you are very learned; look now[b] a little into this writing whether you can read it.

39. "If you can read it, then you get a new holiday dress[a] from me: if you cannot[b], then you get twelve boxes on your ear[c], and twenty-five stripes[d] on[e] the soles of your feet[f], since[g] people[h] call you then without reason[i] Selim the learned."

40. Selim bowed and said: "Thy will be done[a], Sire."

---

35. [a] gern haben. [b] Handſchrift, *f.* [c] Bibliothek, *f.* [d] wenn er auch. [e] entlaſſen.

36. [a] aber. [b] jemand. [c] entziffern.

37. [a] gnädig. [b] bei. [c] Moſchee, *f.* [d] gelehrt. [e] verſtehen. [f] geheimnißvoll. [g] Zug, *m.* (*pl.* Züge).

38. [a] *say*, one says. [b] einmal.

39. [a] Feſtkleid, *n.* [b] *add*, it. [c] Ohrfeige, *f.* box on the ear. [d] Streich, *m.* (*pl.*—e) [e] auf, Acc. [f] Fußſohle, *f.* sole of the foot. [g] weil. [h] man. [i] umſonſt.

40. [a] geſchehen to be done.

For a long time he looked at[b] the writing, but suddenly[c] he exclaimed[d]: "This is Latin, Sire, or I will be hanged[e]!"

41. "Say, what is[a] in it," commanded[b] the kaliph, "if it be[c] Latin." Selim began to translate[d]: —

42. "Man[a], who[b] findest this, praise Allah for his grace.[c] Whoever takes a pinch[d] of[e] the powder in this box, and says '*Mutabor*,' he can transform[f] himself into any[g] animal, and understands besides[h] the language of animals.

43. "If he wants[a] to return[b] again[c] to his humain form, let him bow[d] three times towards[e] the East and pronounce[f] that word."

44. "But take care[a], whe you are transformed, that you do not laugh; else the magic word disappears[b] entirely from[c] your memory[d], and you remain an animal."

45. When Selim the learned had thus read, the kaliph was pleased[a] beyond[b] measure.[c]

46. He made[a] the learned man take an oath[b] not to say anything[c] about the secret[d] to any one[e], gave him a beautiful garment[f], and dismissed him.

---

[b] betrachten to look at. [c] plötzlich. [d] ausrufen. [e] *say*, I will let myself be hanged.

41. [a] *say*, stands. [b] befehlen. [c] *say*, is. [d] überſetzen.

42. [a] Menſch. [b] *say*, who thou ber du. [c] Gnade, *f.* [d] ſchnupfen to take a pinch. [e] von. [f] verwandeln. [g] jeder. [h] auch.

43. [a] will. [b] zurückkehren. [c] wieder. [d] take Subjunctive Present. [e] gegen. [f] ausſprechen.

44. [a] to take care ſich in Acht nehmen. [b] ſchwinden. [c] aus. [d] Gedächtniß, *n.*

45. [a] vergnügt. [b] über. [c] Maß, *n.* (*pl.*—e), but *beyond measure* is a standing phrase, über die Maßen, from an old Nom. die Maße.

46. [a] laſſen. [b] to take an oath ſchwören. [c] etwas. [d] Geheimniß, *n.* [e] irgend einer. [f] Kleid, *n.*

47. To the grand vizier, however, he said: "That I call[a] making a bargain[b], Mansor! How rejoiced[c] I am to be once an animal! To-morrow morning come to me.

48. "We shall then go into[a] the field, take a little pinch[b] of my box, and listen[c] to what is spoken in the air and in the water, in the forest and in the field."

49. From the beginning[a] of the religious wars[b] in Germany, down to[c] the peace[d] of Munster[e], there has, in the political[f] world[g] of Europe, scarcely[h] any[i] great and remarkable fact[i] occurred[j] in[k] which the Reformation[l] had[m] not the principal share.[n]

50. All[a] the evil[b] which Philip II. devised[c] against Queen Elizabeth was revenge[d] which he took[e], because[f] she had sheltered[g] his Protestant[h] subjects[i] against him, and had placed[j] herself at[k] the head[l] of a religious sect[m] which he was endeavouring[n] to destroy.[o]

X. On Compounded Verbs.

1. The tongue[a] is a small member[b], but it does[c] much mischief.[d]

---

47. [a] heißen. [b] to make a bargain einkaufen. [c] to be rejoiced ſich freuen.

48. [a] auf. [b] ein wenig ſchnupfen. [c] lauſchen.

49. [a] Anfang, *m.* [b] Religionskrieg, *m.* [c] bis zu. [d] Friede, *m.* [e] Münſter. [f] politiſch. [g] Welt, *f.* [h] kaum. [i] *any fact* express by etwas, and *great* groß, and *remarkable* merkwürdig, as Adjectives neuter. [j] to occur ſich ereignen. [k] woran. [l] Kirchenverbeſſerung. [m] take Subjunctive. [n] Hauptantheil.

50. [a b] Alles Böſe. [c] beſchließen. [d] Rache, *f.* [e] *say*, which he took for that dafür. [f] daß. [g] in Schutz nehmen. [h] proteſtantiſch. [i] Unterthan, *m.* (G.—en). [j] ſtellen. [k] an. [l] Spitze, *f.* [m] Sekte, *f.* [n] ſtreben. [o] vertilgen.

1. [a] Zunge, *f.* [b] Glied, *n.* [c] anſtiften, which is separable because an is not a prefix, so that the particle an stands at the end of the sentence. [d] Unheil, *n.*

2. After this prayer[a] of the priestess[b], the two youths[c] fell asleep[d] in the temple, and never arose[e] again.

3. The imperial[a] dignity[b] had formerly[c] descended[d] only to[e] the sons of princes.

4. The Danube[a], which rises[b] in Germany[c], breaks loose[d] in the south-eastern[e] mountains[f], and runs away[g] from the Germans through distant[h] boundaries[i], and through foreign nations.

5. She has, in spite[a] of all resistance[b], prevailed[c] with her opinion, because she was penetrated[d] by its truth.

6. The events[a] which have, from the remotest times[b], exercised[c] a great influence[d] on the fate[e] of the human[f] race[g], were ever the migrations[h] of tribes.[i]

7. The time of adventure[a], of romantic[b] enterprises[c], is gone by[d], and never will return.[e]

---

2. [a] Gebet, *n.* [b] Prieſterin, *f.* [c] Jüngling. [d] einſchlafen. [e] aufſtehen.

3. [a] kaiſerlich. [b] Würde, *f.* [c] ehemals. [d] ſich forterben, which is reparable, and the ge in the Part. Past must be placed between the two compounding parts. [e] auf.

4. [a] Donau, *f.* [b] entſpringen. [c] Deutſchland. [d] durchbrechen, and mark, verbs compounded with durch, über, unter, um, hinter, voll, are separable when the chief stress lies on these particles, and when they give the Verbs their peculiar character. [e] ſüdöſtlich. [f] Gebirg, *n.* (*pl.*—e). [g] fortlaufen. [h] fern. [i] Grenze, *f.*

5. [a] trotz with Gen. [b] Widerſtand, *m.* [c] durchdringen, lit. *urged through;* it is therefore separable, and as a Verb neuter implying a change of condition is conjugated with ſein. [d] durchdringen, this is inseparable, because the meaning is changed from the literal sense, *to urge through*, and is now synonymous with *to be perfectly convinced;* therefore durch appears like a prefix, and the ge in the Past Part. is omitted.

6. [a] Ereigniß, *n.* (*pl.*—e). [b] von jeher. [c] ausüben. [d] Einfluß, *m.* [e] Schickſal, *n.* [f] menſchlich. [g] Geſchlecht, *n.* [h] Wanderung. [i] Völkerſchaft.

7. [a] Abenteuer, *n.*, take the plural with the Def. Art. [b] romantiſch. [c] Unternehmung. [d] vorbei ſein, and mark, the compounded particle vorbei follows the rule of the simple. [e] zurückkehren.

8. Everybody likes to deal[a] with punctual[b] people.

9. Even glorious[a] truth is abused[b] by many.

10. The language of many savage[a] tribes[b] is so poor, that notions[c] which are familiar[d] to us, must be paraphrased[e] for them.

11. The sky in spring is often overclouded[a], and the earth covered[b] with fogs.[c]

12. Oak trees[a] often grow[b] so large, that they can only be spanned[c] by three persons.

13. The first circumnavigation[a] was undertaken[b] by Magellan; but the most famous[c] of all who have sailed round[d] the earth remains Cook.

14. He crossed[a] the ocean[b] in[c] all directions[d], and

---

8. [a] *say*, deals gladly umgehen, lit. to walk about. [b] pünktlich.

9. [a] herrlich. [b] mißbrauchen, and mark, verbs *active* compounded with miß, are like the *neuter inseparable*, but they differ from the latter in one point, the ge is in these always omitted; in the first it can be omitted, or placed before the two component parts, as gemißbraucht or mißbraucht, but mißglückt and not gemißglückt.

10. [a] wild. [b] Volk, *n.* (*pl.* Völker). [c] Begriff, *m.* (*pl.*—e). [d] gewöhnlich. [e] umschreiben, which must be inseparable.

11. [a] umwölken, therefore inseparable, and [b] umziehen, likewise, cf. Note 5[d]. [c] Nebel, *m.*

12. [a] Eiche, *f.* [b] werden. [c] umspa'nnen is *to span*, but u'mspannen in *to put other horses to*; the first is inseparable, the latter separable.

13. [a] Umschiffung. [b] unterne'hmen, inseparable. [c] berühmt. [d] umsegeln is separable as a Verb neuter, and inseparable as a Verb active, because the first refers more to the direction u'm, and the latter to the action se'geln.

14. [a] durchschiffen, separable as neuter, inseparable as active, meaning, *to visit the ocean everywhere*. [b] Ocean, *m.* [c] nach. [d] Richtung.

surpassed[e] all his predecessors[f] in[g] courage and perseverance[h]: he perished[i] during[j] his last voyage.[k]

15. The length[a] of America obliges[b] seamen to sail[d] far[c] round[d] when they intend[e] to pass[f] from the eastern coast[g] of America to the East Indies.[h]

16. Among the sloths[a], which are peculiar[b] to South America, the slowest[c] is that which is called Ai from[d] the sound[e] that it utters.[f]

17. Its progressive[a] motion is so slow, that it has tired out[b] the patience[c] of all natural historians[d] who wished to know it exactly.[e]

18. It would, with[a] an uninterrupted[b] motion, take (*say* make) at the utmost[c] fifty steps[d] in twenty-four hours, or a mile[e] in five months.

19. But it interrupts[a] this motion so often, and rests[b] so long, that it perhaps moves forward[c] only one mile in six or seven years.

20. Its food[a] consists[b] of leaves[c], and it is certainly[d] obliged to climb up[e] the trees, or rather[f] to crawl up[g], but what a[h] struggle[i] does this require[j]!

---

[e] übertre'ffen. [f] Vorgänger. [g] an. [h] Ausdauer, *f.* [i] umkommen, separable, because it means lit. *to come round*, i. e. to the end, from which the motion began. [j] auf. [k] Reiſe, *f.*

15. [a] Länge, *f.* [b] zwingen. [c] weit. [d] um'ſegeln. [e] vorhaben. [f] ü'berſegeln. [g] Küſte, *f.* [h] Oſtindien, *n.*, sing.

16. [a] Faulthier, *n.* (*pl.*—e). [b] eigen. [c] langſam. [d] nach. [e] Laut, *m.* [f] von ſich geben.

17. [a] fortſchreitend. [b] ermüden. [c] Geduld, *f.* [d] Naturforſcher. [e] genau.

18. [a] bei. [b] ununterbrochen. [c] höchſtens. [d] Schritt, *m.* [e] Meile, *f.*

19. [a] unterbrechen, which has a figurative meaning, and is therefore inseparable. [b] ſich ausruhen. [c] ſich fortbewegen.

20. [a] Nahrung. [b] beſtehen. [c] Blatt, *n.* (*pl.* Blätter). [d] zwar. [e] hinaufklettern, with Acc. [f] vielmehr. [g] hinaufkriechen. [h] welch ein. [i] Ueberwindung. [j] koſten.

21. It takes[a] two days to ascend[b] the tree, which it does not abandon[c], until the last leaf is nipped off.[d]

22. It then fasts[a] for several[b] days before[c] it resolves[d] to tumble down[e]; and only[f] after some weeks is it forced[g] by all-powerful[h] hunger to form[i] a new resolution[j] to move on.

23. What a[a] contrast[b] between this motion which requires[c] two minutes in order to advance[d] a finger's breadth[e], and the swiftness[f] of the swallow[g] which flies[h] seventy-five feet in a second[i], consequently[j] twelve miles an hour, and with all this[k] but rarely[l] takes any rest.[m]

XI. On Verbs of Mood.

1. Saffron[a] is said[b] to have come to Europe by the Crusades.[c]

2. We need[a] only be good in reality[b], then the appearance[c] will not be difficult for us.

---

21. [a] brauchen. [b] hinaufſteigen. [c] verlaſſen. [d] abnagen.

22. [a] hungern. [b] mehrere. [c] ehe. [d] ſich entſchließen. [e] herabfallen. [f] erſt. [g] zwingen. [h] allmächtig. [i] faſſen. [j] Entſchluß, *m.*

23. [a] welcher. [b] Abſtand, *m.* [c] erfordern. [d] fortrücken. [e] Breite, *f.* [f] Schnelligkeit. [g] Schwalbe, *f.* [h] durchfliegen. [i] Secunde, *f.* [j] alſo. [k] dabei. [l] ſelten. [m] to take rest ruhen.

1. [a] Safran, *m.* [b] ſollen, means *to do what another* (a person or a law) *wills, maintains,* or *reports;* therefore, *I am said* ich ſoll, the Latin *dicor.* [c] Kreuzzug, *m.*, and mark, compounded Nouns take the gender of the second or last component part, and Zug is of the masc. gender, because all Substantives derived from Verbs *without termination* are *masculine.*

2. [a] dürfen means *to be allowed, not to be prevented by a moral law,* then *to need, to dare.* [b] wirklich. [c] Schein (in reference to gender, cf. Note 1 [c]).

3. We ought[a] to combine[b] prudence[c] with virtue, but not hide[d] the complete[e] absence[f] of virtue under the appearance of prudence.

4. We ought not only to do no evil, but also to omit[a] indifferent things[b], if they can by force of[c] circumstances, cast[d] upon us the suspicion[e] of evil.[f]

5. A thing, which is really good[a], we must[b] not omit even[c] on account of suspicion.

6. One[a] may often lose one's good name without having done[b] anything wrong[c]: then conscience[d] must quiet[e] us.

7. The world cannot examine[a] the heart, and is often obliged[b] to judge[c] by outward[d] appearance.

8. We are not only permitted[a], but it is our duty[b] to speak against oppression[c] and injustice.[d]

9. We must[a] not timidly[b] keep silent[c] where justice[d] and order[e] require[f] that we should speak.

10. Every bird must[a] build[b] its particular[c] nest.

---

3. [a] ſollen, subj. imperf. [b] verbinden. [c] Klugheit. [d] verbergen. [e] völlig. [f] Mangel, *m.*

4. [a] unterlaſſen. [b] *say*, something indifferent gleichgültig. [c] durch. [d] werfen. [e] Verdacht, *m.* [f] *say*, of the evil Schlimme, *n.*

5. [a] *say*, something really good. [b] dürfen. [c] auch.

6. [a] man. [b] *say*, without to have done. [c] Böſe. [d] Gewiſſen, and mark, all Substantives which originally were infinitives are *neuter*. [e] beruhigen.

7. [a] prüfen. [b] müſſen. [c] urtheilen. [d] äußer.

8. [a] dürfen. [b] to be the duty of one ſollen. [c] Unterdrückung. [d] Ungerechtigkeit.

9. [a] müſſen, which implies a *natural force* and *moral obligation*. [b] furchtſam. [c] ſchweigen. [d] Recht, *n.* [e] Ordnung. [f] wollen, which means *to have a will, to require, to pretend*.

10. [a] cf. Note 9[a]. [b] bauen. [c] eigenthümlich.

11. She may[a] die[b], and then no one remains[c] to provide for[d] our abandoned[e] family.

12. Among the lasting[a] infirmities[b] of the human body[c], deafness[d] may[e] possibly[f] be the worst.[g]

13. So unjust you men are, when you do not like[a] amusements[b] any longer[c], because you have enjoyed[d] them, you also do not wish[e] that a being[f] besides[g] yourselves should delight[h] in them.

14. Natural[a] courage[b] too often made[c] him forget[d] what he owed[e] to the king; and thus, the death of a common soldier[f] terminated[g] this royal[h] life.[i]

15. He whispers[a] of letters which he pretends[b] to have received.[c]

16. The house in Mayence[a], in which the inventors[b] of the art of printing[c] are said[d] to have first[e] practised[f] that art[g], stands to this day[h] under the name of Färberhof behind the convent[i] of barefooted friars[j] of former[k] times.

---

11. [a] können, which means *to be able*, and implies also a *logical possibility*. [b] ſterben. [c] übrig bleiben. [d] *no one to provide for*, translate by *no provideress* of Verſorgerin. [e] verlaſſen.

12. [a] dauernd. [b] Gebrechen. [c] Körper, *m.* [d] Taubheit. [e] Subj. Imperf. of mögen or dürfen. [f] leicht. [g] ſchlimm.

13. [a] *to like* is mögen. [b] Vergnügen, which has no plural, since all Substantives originally infinitives have no plural form; this is made here from a derivative, Vergnügung. [c] not any longer nicht mehr. [d] genießen. [e] wollen. [f] Weſen, originally an infinitive. [g] außer, Dat. [h] Gefallen finden an, Dat.

14. [a] Natürlich. [b] Muth, *m.* [c] laſſen, and mark, when the Part. Past of a Verb of mood stands after the infinitive, it is changed into an infinitive too. [d] vergeſſen. [e] ſchuldig. [f] Gemeiner (originally an Adj.). [g] enden. [h] königlich. [i] Leben.

15. [a] munkeln. [b] wollen. [c] empfangen.

16. [a] Mainz. [b] Erfinder. [c] Buchdruckerkunſt, *f.* [d] ſollen. [e] zuerſt. [f] üben. [g] Kunſt, *f.* [h] noch heute. [i] Kloſter, *n.* [j] Barfüßler. [k] ehemalig.

17. You ought[a] not to have trusted[b] him[c] so rashly.[d]

18. If you were[a] to see my provisions[b] you would admire[c] them.

19. I should not let[a] myself be governed[b] by a boy.

20. There (es) was at that time great want[a] everywhere,[b] except[c] in Liege[d], where the cautious[e] bishop[f] had before[g] ordered[h] corn[i] to be purchased[j], and to be stored up.[k]

21. When[a] Tacitus mentions[b] the Danube[c] and the Rhine[d] as boundaries[e] of the Roman Empire[f], the Germans themselves[g] may[h] not have been quite satisfied with it, and a secret[i] wish[j] more than truth may[h] have led[k] Tacitus to this saying.[l]

22. The fox[a] would have liked[b] much[c] to steal[d] into the poultry yard.[e]

---

17. [a] mark, this *ought to have trusted* is in Latin *debuisses confidere*, and should have been in English *had ought to trust*, but *ought* is a defective Verb, and therefore it is circumscribed; in German ſollen is not defective, and it can be used in the *Subjunctive* of the *Pluperf.* [b] trauen. [c] Dat. [d] blindlings.

18. [a] *I am to*, is ich ſoll; and mark, you can say in English, *were you to see*, and the same construction can be used in German. [b] Vorrath. [c] bewundern.

19. [a] laſſen, and observe; the *Subjunctive Imperfect* is used instead of the *Conditional* in *Verbs of Mood especially*, and also in other Verbs. [b] regieren, and remember, after Verbs of commanding and forbidding follows always the Infinitive Active.

20. [a] Mangel, *m.* [b] überall. [c] außer. [d] Lüttich. [e] vorſichtig. [f] Biſchof. [g] vorher. [h] laſſen (cf. Note 14[e]). [i] Getreide, *n.* [j] einkaufen. [k] aufſchütten.

21. [a] Wenn. [b] erwähnen. [c] Donau, *f.* [d] Rhein, *m.* [e] Grenze, *f.* [f] Reich, *n.* [g] ſelbſt. [h] mögen, Imperf. Subj. [i] inner. [j] Wunſch. [k] bewegen, which has bewogen in the Participle when it implies a *moral inducement*, but bewegt when meaning a *motion* or *emotion*. [l] Ausſpruch.

22. [a] Fuchs, *m.* [b] mögen, and mark, instead of the *Conditional Perfect* in *Verbs of Mood particularly*, and also in other Verbs, is used the *Subjunctive Pluperfect* (cf. also, Note 14[c]). [c] gern. [d] hinein ſchleichen. [e] Hühnerhof, *m.*

23. The lion must have devoured[a] the animals, since[b] none[c] of them returned[d] from his den.*

24. The lamb[a] said to the scolding[b] wolf: "The water was troubled[c] before[d] I arrived[e], and therefore[f] I cannot have done it."

25. The learned[a] professors[b] said to[c] Columbus: "Your trick[d] with the egg[e] is not difficult; we could have[f] done it ourselves."

26. The lamb had come so near[a] the[b] wolf, that he could[c] easily have throttled[d] it.

27. Indeed[a], one[b] must never have felt[c] the charm[d] of a human voice[e], — one must never have perceived[f] that language[g] remains a dead[h] letter[i] without[j] the variety[k] of its sweet[l] modulations[m], — one must never have observed[n] how infinitely[o] deeper[p] the uttered[q] word penetrates[r] into the soul, in order to think that the loss[s] of hearing[t] is a lesser[u] evil[v] than the loss of sight.[w]

---

23. [a] verſchlingen. [b] da. [c] keiner, keine, keins is used when standing like a Substantive. [d] zurückkehren. [e] Höhle, and mark, all Substantives of *measure* are *feminine*, when made from Adjectives by adding e.

24. [a] Lamm, *n.* [b] ſchelten. [c] trübe. [d] ehe. [e] ankommen. [f] daher.

25. [a] gelehrt. [b] Profeſſor, which, like all Substantives of foreign origin terminating in an unaccented or, has en in plural. [c] *to* after *say* is zu, when the words said are literally mentioned. [d] Kunſtſtück, *n.* [e] Ei, *n.* [f] *we could have done*, is used here for *we should have been able to do*, translate the latter, and refer to Notes 22[b], and 14[c].

26. [a] nahe. [b] Dat. [c] *translate*, he would have been able to throttle. [d] erwürgen.

27. [a] Fürwahr. [b] man. [c] empfinden. [d] Zauber, *m.* [e] Stimme, *f.* [f] bemerken. [g] Rede, and mark, Substantives are feminine when derived from a Verb by the terminations e, d, or t. [h] todt. [i] Buchſtabe, *m.* [j] ohne, Acc. [k] Mannigfaltigkeit. [l] ſanft. [m] Modulation, *f.* [n] beobachten. [o] unendlich. [p] tief. [q] ausſprechen. [r] dringen. [s] Verluſt, *m.* [t] Gehör, *n.* [u] gering. [v] Uebel, and observe, the Adjective used as Substantive, without termination, is neuter. [w] Geſicht, *n.*

28. If plants[a] which serve[b] as[c] food[d] to cattle[e] are to be propagated[f] everywhere[g] in plenty[h], of their own accord[i], without the assistance[j] of man, they must also, in consequence[k] of this their nature[l], frequently[m] spread[n] in cornfields.[o]

29. And if they are (ſollen), according[a] to their nature, freely[b] to thrive[c] on downs[d], on hills[e], in meadows[f], in short[g], in every uncultivated[h] ground[i], why[k], then[j], they must necessarily[l] grow[m] with a far stronger power[n] in a wellploughed[o] field, where they are called weeds.[p]

XII. On the Indicative and Subjunctive.

1. Tell me with whom you associate[a], and I will tell you who you are.[b]

2. In God's creation[a] there is everywhere the clear[b] purpose[c] that He only desires[d] the happiness[e] of all his creatures.[f]

---

28. [a] Gewächs, *n.* [b] dienen. [c] als. [d] Futter, *n.* [e] Vieh, *n.* [f] ſich fortpflanzen. [g] überall. [h] Fülle, *f.* [i] von ſelbſt. [j] Zuthun. [k] vermöge, G. [l] Natur. [m] häufig. [n] ſich verbreiten. [o] Kornfeld, *n.* (*pl.*—er).

29. [a] nach. [b] von ſelbſt. [c] fortkommen. [d] Anger, *m.* [e] Hügel, *m.* [f] Wieſe, *f.* [g] kurz. [h] unbearbeitet. [i] Boden, *m.* [j] ſo, which is often used to introduce the chief sentence when the adverbial has preceded. [k] ja, which must, however, follow the Verb, as two Adverbs cannot begin a sentence. [l] nothwendiger Weiſe, an adverbial genitive. [m] wachſen. [n] Trieb. [o] gut beſtellt. [p] Unkraut, *n.*, only used in the singular as a collective Noun.

1. [a] umgehen. [b] This latter sentence is an objective sentence to *tell*; and mark, the Verb in the objective sentence stands in the *Indicative* when it utters a *fact* or a *reality*, like here; but in the *Subjunctive* when it pronounces only an *idea* or a *possibility*.

2. [a] Schöpfung. [b] deutlich. [c] Abſicht. [d] wollen, and it is to be observed, that in the word *clear* is contained the hint, that the *desire* is not only *imagined* by us, but *known* as a *fact*. [e] Glück, *n.* [f] Geſchöpf, *n.*

3. Has God not gifted[a] us with reason[b] which teaches[c] us what is[d] good and what is hurtful[e]?

4. On the column[a] of Brutus' ancestor[b], who had subverted[c] the tyranny[d] of the kings, they now read: "Oh that a Brutus were living[e] now!"

5. Suppose[a] the case[b], that our father became[c] bedridden[d], must not then starvation[e] and misery[f] be our inevitable[g] lot[h]?

6. How would the gift[a] of human speech[b] be profaned[c] in the mouth[d] of the base[e] and brutish[f] monkey[g], if he were able[h] to ape[i] human words with half human reason!

7. These questions Crœsus asked[a] of Solon, in the expectation[b] that he was[c] the happiest man.

8. Who raises[a] the sun for the countryman[b] in[c] the serene[d] blue sky, that it may develope[e] the germs[f] of his crops[g]?

9. Who covers[a] the sky with clouds[b] that[c] it may bedew[d] his plants in[e] the night time?

10. Blessed[a] be you, and never may the tone[b] of

---

3. [a] begaben, [b] Vernunft. [c] lehren (which is really a fact). [d] this also is no imaginary thing. [e] ſchädlich.

4. [a] Säule, *f.* [b] vom Ahnherrn des Brutus. [c] ſtürzen. [d] tyranniſche Gewalt. [e] am Leben ſein, and the *Subjunctive* is to be used, because a *wish* only *lies* in our *mind*, and is not a *fact*.

5. [a] ſetzen, *say*, one may suppose. [b] Fall. [c] this is a possibility. [d] bettlägerig. [e] Hunger, *m.* [f] Elend, *n.* [g] unvermeidlich. [h] Loos, *n.*

6. [a] Gabe. [b] Rede. [c] entweihen. [d] Mund, *m.* [e] gemein. [f] thieriſch. [g] Affe, *m.* [h] können. [i] nachäffen.

7. [a] *say*, proposed to vorlegen. [b] Erwartung. [c] remember, this is only his fancy.

8. [a] heraufführen. [b] take the Dat. without Prep. [c] an. [d] heiter. [e] entwickeln. [f] Keim, *m.* [g] Saat, *f.*

9. [a] überziehen. [b] Wolke, *f.* [c] damit. [d] begießen. [e] zu.

10. [a] ſegnen. [b] Ton, *m.*

suffering[c] and complaint[d] resound[e] from your lips[f], which spoke[g] such good tidings.[h]

11. We think[a] something[b] is true, which still[c] perhaps is not true, or only half true: we think something is just[d], which yet[e] is only just under certain circumstances.

12. A boaster[a] never gets[b] credit for the possession of[c] much sense[d] and courage.[e]

13. It was said[a] that a bishop[b] of Mayence[c], who was the son of a coachmaker[d], in order not to lose the virtue of humility[e] in his superior[f] ecclesiastic[g] dignity[h], had[i] carriagewheels[j] painted[k] in[l] different[m] places[n] of his palace[o], which might remind[p] him incessantly[q] of his origin.[r]

---

[c] Leiden, as a Substantive. [d] Klage, take the plural. [e] erſchallen. [f] Lippe, *f.* [g] melden. [h] Botſchaft, take the singular.

11. [a] glauben is to *think* when the latter implies *having an opinion*, but when *to think* means *reflecting*, it is denken. [b] etwas, and mark, in English is here omitted *that*, i. e., the *objective* sentence *something is true* is changed into an *independent* sentence: this can also be done in German,— daß can be omitted; the sentence, must then, of course, be construed like an independent sentence; but the *Verb* in such a sentence, referring to an *imaginary thought*, stands in the *Subjunctive*. [c] doch. [d] gerecht. [e] doch.

12. [a] Großſprecher. [b] *never gets*, etc., explain in German literally, so: is never in the authority that he has much sense and reason; to be in *authority* is in Anſehen ſtehen. [c] *has* expressing only what *opinion* is formed of him, stands in the *Subjunctive*. [d] Verſtand. [e] Muth, *m.*

13. [a] erzählen. [b] Biſchof. [c] Mainz. [d] Wagener. [e] Demuth, *f.* [f] höher. [g] kirchlich. [h] Würde, *f.* [i] laſſen, and as the whole is only *a saying*, the Verb must stand in the Subjunctive: it may be also noted, that the *Subjunctive Present* and Perfect is preferred to the *Indicative* after the historical past tense. [j] Wagenrad, *n.* (*pl.*—räder). [k] malen. [l] an. [m] verſchieden. [n] Stelle, *f.* [o] Palaſt, *m.* [p] erinnern an, Acc. [q] unaufhörlich. [r] Herkunft.

14. A maiden[a] like her certainly deserves[b] to be wooed[c] with the sword: Oh if she could[d] be won[e] by arms[f]!

15. It gave[a] the queen of Sweden[b] pleasure[c] to hear that they had[d] always taken her for a boy, and that she, in her first[e] childhood[f], at[g] the firing[h] of the cannon[i], instead[j] of getting frightened[k], had clapped[l] her[m] hands, and thus proved[n] herself a true[o] child of a soldier.[p]

16. The ancient nations well felt[a] that one[b] must[c] work in order to enjoy himself.[d]

17. "Cleobis and Biton", said Solon, "obtained[a] the best termination of life[b]; and God, thereby[c], intimated[d] that it was[e] better for man to be dead[f] than to live."

18. When Solon was relating so much of[a] Tellus' great happiness[b], Crœsus became more and more[c] curious[d], and asked who then was[e] the second; for he thought he would[f], at least[g], obtain the second place.

---

14. [a] Jungfrau. [b] verdienen. [c] werben um means *to woo*. [d] leave out that, and say, *were she to*. [e] gewinnen. [f] Waffe, *f.*

15. [a] machen. [b] Schweden. [c] Vergnügen. [d] *Subjunctive*, because it refers to the way in which *the fact* worked upon the *feelings* of the queen. [e] früheſt. [f] Kindheit. [g] bei. [h] Abfeuern. [i] Geſchütz, *n.* [j] ſtatt. [k] erſchrecken is *to get frightened*. [l] klatſchen. [m] *say*, into the. [n] bewähren or ausweiſen. [o] recht. [p] Soldatenkind, *n.*

16. [a] *say*, felt it. [b] man, and put *in order to enjoy himself* immediately after *one*. [c] Subj. Present, cf. Note 13[1]. [d] genießen to enjoy one'sself.

17. [a] erlangen. [b] Lebensende, *n.* [c] dadurch. [d] anzeigen. [e] this only refers to the *intimation*. [f] ſterben.

18. [a] von. [b] Glückſeligkeit, and do not forget to put the Def. Art. before Tellus. [c] immer mehr. [d] neugierig. [e] this is a Verb of an *objective* sentence, which contains *no fact:* with other words it may be said, that in the *indirect question* the Verb generally stands in the *Subjunctive*. [f] this is the *Subjunctive* of the *Future*, and by no means a Conditional. [g] wenigſtens.

19. If we were[a] to renounce the obligation[b] of our duties[c], what would[d] ensue[e] therefrom?

20. All order would[a] disappear[b], all bonds[c] would break[d], all security[e] would be lost.[f]

21. Duties[a] are no burdens[b], for without them we should be miserable.

22. This young man at last despaired[a], and regarded[b] himself as one of those vile[c] things[d] that nature designed[e] should be thrown into her lumber-room.[f]

23. There has not been found on[a] the whole earth one single thing that could[b] have been created[c] for the sake[d] of doing harm.[e]

24. They have often compared[a] the French Revolution[b] with the German Reformation[c]; but does the former possess one man who could be compared to Luther?

25. It was said that Brutus hated[a] tyranny[b], but Cassius the tyrant himself.

---

19. [a] This is obviously a *Subjunctive*, but express it only by the *Subjunctive* of *to renounce*, which is ſich losſagen von. [b] Verbindlichkeit. [c] Pflicht, *f.* [d] the Conditional can always be expressed by the *Subjunctive Imperfect*. [e] entſtehen.

20. [a] take Subj. Imperf. [b] verſchwinden. [c] Band, *n.*, which has in plural Bänder when meaning *ribbands*, but Bande, when signifying *bonds*. [d] zerreißen. [e] Sicherheit. [f] verloren ſein.

21. [a] Pflicht, *f.* [b] Laſt, *f.*

22. [a] verzweifeln. [b] betrachten. [c] verächtlich. [d] Ding, *n.* (*pl.*—e). [e] beſtimmen, and in translating construe thus: *has designed for that, that they should*. [f] Rumpelkammer, *f.*

23. [a] auf. [b] express *would have been created* by the Subjunctive of the Pluperf. [c] ſchaffen. [d] *translate*, in order to do. [e] Schaden, *m.*

24. [a] vergleichen. [b] Staatsumwälzung. [c] Kirchenverbeſſerung.

25. [a] haſſen, of course the Subjunctive could be used here, but mark, in objective and subjective sentences, dependent on a past historical tense, the Subjunctive of the *Present* is preferred to that of the *Imperfect*. [b] Tyrannei.

26. The conspirators[a] were of opinion that, through the accession[b] of Brutus, the justice[c] of their cause[d] was, to[e] a certain degree[f], established.[g]

27. Göthe maintained[a], that an artist[b] was degrading[c] himself, who aimed at[d] the effect[e] of making[f] a piece of art[g] appear natural.[h]

28. We read in the Sacred Scriptures[a], that one of the most zealous[b] defenders[c] of the Law[d], having[e] fled into the desert[f] of Sinai, after a struggle of many years[g] against the spread[h] of idolatry[i], had[j] asked[k] of God to give him a sign[l] of his presence[m]: that the earth had[n] trembled[o], but that God was not in the earthquake.[p]

---

26. [a] verſchwören to conspire. [b] Beitritt. [c] Gerechtigkeit. [d] Sache, *f.* [e] bis zu. [f] Grad, *m.* [g] beſtätigen.

27. [a] behaupten. [b] Künſtler. [c] erniedrigen (comp. Note 25[a]). [d] losarbeiten auf, Acc., and observe, when the Adjective sentence explains a part of another sentence in which the Verb stands in the Subjunctive, the Verb in the first must also stand in the Subjunctive if the explanation lies as much in the range of imagination as that which is explained by it. [e] Wirkung. [f] laſſen. [g] Kunſtwerk, *n.* [h] natürlich.

28. [a] Schrift, take the sing. [b] eifrig. [c] Vertheidiger. [d] Geſetz, *n.* [e] *say*, who had. [f] Wüſte. [g] *say*, a-many-year's-struggle vieljährig; Kampf, *m.* [h] *say*, the spreading idolatry; to spread einreißen. [i] Götzendienſt, *m.* [j] observe, if a whole *story* or *speech* is not *directly* reported in *independent* or *chief sentences*, but made to *depend* as a series of *subjective* or *objective sentences* upon such phrases as *it is said*, *we read*, then the *Verbs* in that series of sentences must stand in the Subjunctive of the Present for the Pres. and Imperf. tenses, and in the Subj. of the Perf. for the Perf. and Pluperf. tenses; besides, in reference to the particle *that* daß, it is to be remarked, that it can be prefixed or omitted in the first sentence of the series, and it is omitted in the following sentences, which are thus construed as if they were independent. [k] bitten to ask of. [l] Zeichen, *n.* [m] Gegenwart, *f.* [n] cf. Note[j]. [o] beben. [p] Erdbeben.

29. That a storm[a] arose[b], but the storm did not announce[c] the approach[d] of God.

30. At last a gently[a] breathing[b] zephyr[c] was felt[d]: in the sweet[e] west wind God had come.

31. There are countries in Europe which would have been swallowed up[a] long ago[b] by the sea, if man's art and industry[c] had not opposed[d] firm[e] dikes[f] to the violence[g] of the water.

32. Without the art of printing[a], Luther's great Reformation, as well as in[b] our times the French Revolution, would have been quite impossible.

33. In vain[a] would Luther have censured[b] the faults[c] of the Church, if his theses[d] had not been rapidly[e] propagated[f] by the press.[g]

34. Were I a father of a family[a], I would take particular care[b] to preserve[c] my children from[d] those little horrors[e] of imagination[f] which they are apt[g] to contract[h] when[i] young, and are not able[j] to shake off[k] when they are in[l] years.

35. Towards the first of March[a], Cassius asked Brutus if he intended[b] to come into the Senate that day,

---

29. [a] Sturm, *m.* [b] ſich erheben. [c] bezeichnen. [d] *say*, the aproaching God, ſich nahen.

30. [a] ſanft. [b] ſäuſeln. [c] Zephyr, *m.* [d] bemerken. [e] lieblich.

31. [a] verſchlingen. [b] ſchon längſt. [c] Fleiß. [d] entgegenſetzen. [e] feſt. [f] Damm, *m.* [g] Gewalt.

32. [a] Buchdruckerkunſt. [b] zu.

33. [a] Vergebens. [b] rügen. [c] Mangel, *m.* [d] Streitſatz question of controversy. [e] ſchnell. [f] verbreiten. [g] Druck, *m.*

34. [a] Familie. [b] *say*, particularly care for it beſonders dafür ſorgen. [c] bewahren. [d] vor. [e] Schreckbild, *n.* [f] Fantaſie. [g] geneigt. [h] ſich einprägen, *lit.* to impress on themselves. [i] *say*, when they are. [j] vermögen. [k] *say*, to extinguish auslöſchen. [l] bei.

35. [a] März. [b] geſonnen ſein, and mark, the Subjunctive of the Im-

since[c], as[d] he heard[e], Cæsar's friends would move[f] for his elevation[g] to the royal dignity.[h]

36. Brutus replied, he would[a] not come.

37. His wife, Porcia, knew[a], from his unusual[b] restlessness[c], that he was weighing[d] some difficult[e] project[f] in his heart.

38. We were told[a] that our house stood on a plot of ground[b] which formerly[c] had lain[d] outside[e] the town, and that, where the street now lay[f], there had once been a moat[g] in which a number[h] of stags[i] were kept.[j]

39. My father held (*say* had) the principle[a] that one ought[b] to employ[c] living artists[d], and to spend[e] less upon deceased ones[f], in the valuing[g] of whom there often occurred[h] much prejudice.[i]

40. This put me under some apprehensions[a] that I should be forced[b] to explain myself[c] if I did not retire.[d]

---

perfect stands in dependent sentences when they are Conditional; this not being the case here, the Subjunctive of the Present is preferable. [c]da. [d]wie. [e]the Subjunctive of the Present is preferred also to that of the Imperfect when the latter does not differ from its Indicative. [f]to move for antragen auf, Acc. [g]Erhebung. [h]Würde.

36. [a]this not being Conditional, the Subjunctive of the Future is to be taken.

37. [a]erkennen. [b]ungewöhnlich. [c]Unruhe. [d]erwägen. [e]ſchwierig. [f]Entwurf.

38. [a]*say*, it was related to us. [b]Raum, *m.*, plot of ground. [c]ſonſt. [d]liegen. [e]außerhalb. [f]ſich befinden. [g]Graben, *m.* [h]Anzahl, *f.* [i]Hirſch, *m.* [j]unterhalten.

39. [a]Grundſatz. [b]ſollen. [c]beſchäftigen. [d]Meiſter. [e]wenden auf, Acc. [f]abgeſchieden. [g]Schätzung. [h]mitunterlaufen. [i]Vorurtheil, *n.*

40. [a]befürchten laſſen. [b]zwingen. [c]ſich näher erklären. [d]ſich zurückziehen.

41. The Italians[a] were already complaining[b] that they filled[c] ships with their libraries[d], and that they carried away[e] the means[f] of learning[g] from them to[h] the extreme[i] north[j] of Europe.

42. When I learned[a] that he had arrived[b], I thought I ought[c] to go myself, in order to speak to[d] him.

43. He protested[a] that this was intolerable[b] to him, and begged the stranger[c] to go out[d] again, because his little dwelling[e] could not possibly[f] contain[g] them both.

44. Every player of an instrument[a] knows[b] how docile[c] the left hand is.

45. I should like to know how it would look[a], were (*say* would) I, as a medical man[b], to do[c] such a foolish thing.[d]

46. We wished we had a garden, in which such fine[a] trees were planted[b] as we had seen in the old park near your house.

47. My father used[a] to say to his friends, when[b] showing[c] them the new pictures he had received, that he was not at all in doubt[d] but[e] that they would in time[f] become as dark[g] as those of the old masters.

---

41. [a] Italiener. [b] ſich beklagen. [c] beladen. [d] Bibliothek, *f.* [e] to carry away from entführen, with Dat. [f] Hülfsmittel, *n.* [g] Gelehrſamkeit. [h] nach. [i] äußerſt. [j] Norden, *m.*

42. [a] erfahren. [b] ankommen. [c] müſſen. [d] to speak to ſprechen with the Acc., when it means as much as *to pay a visit to*, *to see*, and *to speak to* a person.

43. [a] ſchwören. [b] unerträglich. [c] Fremde. [d] hinausgehen. [e] Wohnung. [f] unmöglich. [g] faſſen.

44. [a] Inſtrumentenſpieler. [b] erfahren. [c] gelehrig.

45. [a] to look ſich ausnehmen. [b] Arzt. [c] beginnen. [d] Unſinn, *m.*

46. [a] ſchön. [b] pflanzen.

47. [a] pflegen to be accustomed. [b] *say*, when he shewed. [c] zeigen. [d] gar nicht not at all, zweifelhaft in doubt. [e] is not expressed in German after *doubt* Zweifel. [f] künftig in future. [g] dunkel.

XIII. On the Imperative.

1. Let us go[a] home[b] quietly[c] and tell our parents what has occurred.[d]

2. Let us take a seat[a], and rest[b] from our walk.[c]

3. Let us love our country, and, if necessary[a], let us die for its independence.[b]

4. Let us imitate[a] the great examples[b] of our ancestors.[c]

5. Let us devote[a] some observations[b] to this remarkable[c] man.

6. Go[a] or remain, exactly[b] as thou pleasest.[c]

7. Speak[a] thou, and do thou keep silent.[b]

8. Wilt thou know[a] thyself, then see how others[b] act[c]: wilt thou understand[d] the rest of mankind[e], then look into thy own heart.

---

1. [a] the Imperative has no form for the first person of the sing.: the first person plural is either taken from the Subjunctive Present, or it is expressed by the Verb *let* laſſen, as *let us write immediately* ſchreiben wir ſogleich, or laſſet uns ſogleich ſchreiben. [b] nach Hauſe. [c] ruhig. [d] ſich ereignen.

2. [a] ſich ſetzen *to take a seat*, therefore it is to be said literally, *let us seat ourselves*. [b] ſich ausruhen. [c] Spaziergang.

3. [a] nöthig, and *say*, if it is necessary. [b] Unabhängigkeit.

4. [a] nachahmen, and mark, this Verb is construed with an Accusative if it refers to a *thing*, and with a Dative when to a *person*. [b] Beiſpiel, *n.* [c] Verfahr, *m.* (G.—en).

5. [a] widmen. [b] Betrachtung. [c] merkwürdig.

6. [a] the second person singular of the Imperative is used only in poetry, and in addressing intimate friends or relations: and the Pronoun is placed *before* the Imperat. when a great stress is put upon it. [b] gerade. [c] I please es beliebt mir.

7. [a] the Pronoun can be placed either after the Imperative, which is more usual, or also before it. [b] ſchweigen.

8. [a] erkennen. [b] die andern. [c] es treiben. [d] verſtehen. [e] die andern.

9. Be deserving[a] of praise[b], and[c] thou wilt obtain[d] praise.

10. Give him but a finger, and[a] he will take[b] thy whole hand.

11. To-day only, only to-day, do not allow[a] thyself to be ensnared[b], and[c] thou hast escaped[d] a hundred times.

12. Go, obey[a] my will[b], improve[c] thy young days, and learn betimes[d] to be more sensible.[e]

13. Be happy, and farewell.

14. Be[a] satisfied[b], and do not grumble[c] at your lot.[d]

15. Listen[a], see, and keep silent.[b]

16. Now let every one go[a] his way.[b]

17. Let her use[a] force[b], let her kill me, let her offer (*say* bring) this sacrifice[c] to her safety[d], but let her also confess[e] that I have not been judged[f] according[g] to law.[h]

---

9. [a] würdig. [b] Lob, *n.* [c] ſo. [d] erhalten.

10. [a] ſo. [b] take the Present.

11. [a] laſſen. [b] fangen. [c] ſo. [d] entgehen.

12. [a] gehorchen, with Dat. [b] Wille, *m.* [c] nutzen. [d] zeitig. [e] klug.

14. [a] The addressed person in plural is used *a)* as in English when the addressed person in singular would be given by *thou* du, as *child be quiet* Kind ſei ruhig; therefore, *children be quiet* Kinder ſeid ruhig; or *b)* in poetical language, when old people and persons of high rank are addressed; but in social language the second person singular and plural is addressed by the third person of the plural, as *follow my advice* folgen Sie meinem Rathe; and it is to be observed, that this Sie is written with a capital initial. [b] zufrieden. [c] murren über, Acc. [d] Loos, *n.*

15. [a] hören. [b] ſchweigen.

16. [a] The third person sing. of the Imperative is either taken from the Subjunctive Present, or formed by laſſen, as *let him read this letter once more* leſe er dieſen Brief noch einmal, or laſſet ihn dieſen Brief noch einmal leſen. [b] Genitive.

17. [a] brauchen. [b] Gewalt. [c] Opfer, *n.* [d] Sicherheit. [e] geſtehen. [f] richten. [g] gemäß. [h] Geſetz, *n.*

18. Let him command[a], and this fortress[b] will open[c] its gates.[d]

19. Let him enter.[a]

20. Thy will be done.[a]

21. Let it be executed[a] directly.[b]

22. Bring[a] me proofs[b], and I will[c] condemn[d] him.

23. Permit[a] me to make some general[b] observations[c] before I refer to[d] this special[e] case.[f]

24. Let people[a] go into the asylums[b] of madmen[c], and hear their chattering[d], or let them[e] listen to[f] some exceedingly[g] simple fools[h], and they will explain[i] to themselves why the ape has been refused[j] the divine[k] gift[l] of speech.

25. Let them depart[a] in peace.[b]

26. Let them suppose[a] the case of their having failed[b] in this attempt[c], what resource[d] would have been left[e] to them?

---

18. [a] gebieten. [b] Feſtung. [c] aufthun. [d] Thor, *n.* (*pl.*—e).

19. [a] eintreten.

20. [a] geſchehen to be done.

21. [a] ausführen. [b] ſogleich.

22. [a] express this by the indefinite man. [b] Beweis, *m.* [c] take the Present. [d] verurtheilen.

23. [a] to permit to make erlauben; here either the social form of the Imperative can be taken, or the indefinite man, if the people addressed are not present, as in a book. [b] allgemein. [c] Bemerkung. [d] eingehen in, Acc. [e] beſonder. [f] Fall.

24. [a] man. [b] Haus, *n.* [c] Wahnſinnig. [d] Geſchwätz, *n.* [e] man. [f] anhören. [g] äußerſt. [h] einfältig, Thor. [i] erklären. [j] verſagen, with Dat. [k] göttlich. [l] Gabe.

25. [a] ſcheiden, and it is to be remarked, that the third person of the plural, like that of the singular, is either taken from the Subjunctive Present, or circumscribed by laſſen. [b] Friede, *m.*

26. [a] ſetzen. [b] *say*, that they had failed, in the Subjunctive; *I fail in a thing* is eine Sache mißlingt mir. [c] Verſuch. [d] Hülfsquelle, *f.* [e] laſſen or bleiben.

27. Let them say whatever they like[a], but let them pay[b] what they owe.[c]

28. Tell me, please[a], your opinion[b] on[c] this matter.[d]

29. Pray[a] do not mention[b] this affair to anybody.[c]

30. Be so kind as[a] to ring[b] the bell.[c]

XIV. On the Infinitive.

1. Talking[a] has its time, and keeping silence[b] has its time too.[c]

2. Giving presents[a] is more delightful[b] than receiving presents.[c]

3. It is certainly better to suffer[a] wrong[b] than to do wrong; but there is a third way[c], which is more reasonable[d] and noble than both, to prevent[e] by courage and energy[f] any[g] wrong being done at all.[h]

---

27. [a] wollen. [b] zahlen. [c] ſollen.

28. [a] to be given by the Adverbs einmal, doch or gefälligſt: the first two express more the *urgency* of the Imperative, the third refers to the *kindness* of the addressed person. [b] Meinung. [c] über, Acc. [d] Sache, *f.*

29. [a] either bitte, or by the Adverb ja placed after the Imperative. [b] erwähnen. [c] not any body keiner, e, es, or niemand.

30. [a] this *as* after *so kind*, and similar expressions, against all construction, is expressed by und, which makes the following sentence perfectly independent; therefore translate, *and ring*. [b] ſchellen. [c] Glocke, *f.*, or Klingel, *f.*

1. [a] the English Participle Present often only refers to the action of the Verb, without reference to time, person, or mood: this is expressed in German by the *Infinitive*, without zu *to*. [b] ſchweigen. [c] auch.

2. [a] geben to give presents. [b] ſelig. [c] nehmen to receive presents.

3. [a] leiden, and mark, when the *Infinitive expression*, like *to suffer wrong*, is the subject to a sentence, as here to *it is certainly better*, it is not preceded by the particle zu *to*. [b] Unrecht. [c] Drittes third way. [d] vernünftig. [e] verhindern. [f] Kraft, *f.* [g] durchaus kein. [h] geſchehen.

4. Telling a falsehood[a] and cheating[b] are very nearly[c] related.[d]

5. It is very well for you to talk and laugh. (*Say*, you have nice[a] talking[b] and laughing.)

6. I saw her dancing[a] with your friend.

7. I heard him speaking[a] in that assembly.[b]

8. The medical man found the patient[a] sleeping on[b] the sofa.[c]

9. You remained[a] standing, whilst[b] she remained sitting.

10. What one[a] does not see growing[b], one finds grown after a short time.[c]

11. Talking little and thinking much, is, at all times[a], better than talking much and thinking little.

12. Listening[a], relating[b], forgetting[c], is the motto[d] of the curious.[e]

13. I breathe[a] the air[b] in an English prison[c]; and is this called[d] living[e] in England, and enjoying[f] the benefit[g] of its laws[h]?

---

4. [a] lügen. [b] betrügen. [c] nahe. [d] verwandt, *say*, related to each other.

5. [a] gut. [b] the Participle Present after *to have* is given in German by an Infinitive without zu.

6. [a] the Participle Present after Verbs expressing *to see*, *to hear*, to *feel*, *to find*, and after *to remain*, is expressed in German by the Infinitive without zu.

7. [a] reden. [b] Verſammlung.

8. [a] Krank. [b] auf. [c] Sopha, *n.*

9. [a] bleiben. [b] während.

10. [a] man. [b] wachſen. [c] einige Zeit.

11. [a] allezeit at all times.

12. [a] horchen. [b] erzählen. [c] vergeſſen. [d] Wahlſpruch, *m.* [e] Neugierig.

13. [a] athmen. [b] Luft, *f.* [c] Gefängniß, *n.* [d] heißen, which means both *to call*, and *to be called*, and it is to be observed, that heißen is followed by an Infinitive without zu. [e] leben. [f] genießen. [g] Wohlthat, *f.* [h] Geſetz, *n.*

14. Could the ruler[a] of England do more than select[b] the noblest of the whole realm[c], and appoint[d] them as judges in this royal[e] dispute.[f]

15. This proud[a] heart is not to be humbled.[b]

16. In order[a] to be happy, one only needs[b] contentment.[c]

17. Happy I call him, who, in order to enjoy, is not obliged[a] to do[b] wrong; and in order to act justly, is not obliged to live in want.[c]

18. My son, try[a] to be what you wish[b] to appear.[c]

19. Benefits cease[a] to be benefits, if you[b] try to repay yourself[c] for them.

20. Much still remains to be done.[a]

21. Before God it is enough to be pure[a] af heart[b], for God looks[c] into the heart.

22. I have often heard[b] it said.[a]

---

14. [a] Beherrſcher. [b] erwählen, and mark, after *he does nothing but*, or *does more than*, stands the Infinitive without zu. [c] Königreich, *n.* [d] beſtellen zu, to appoint as. [e] königlich. [f] Streit, *m.*

15. [a] ſtolz. [b] demüthigen, and mark, the Infinitive *Passive* after *to be* and *to remain* is in German an Infinitive *Active*.

16. [a] um, which requires the Infinitive with zu. [b] bedürfen. [c] Zufriedenheit.

17. [a] nöthig haben. [b] when the *Infinitive expression* is an *Accusative* to a sentence, it must be preceded by zu. [c] entbehren to live in want.

18. [a] ſuchen. [b] wünſchen. [c] ſcheinen.

19. [a] aufhören. [b] man. [c] ſich bezahlt machen to pay one's self.

20. [a] cf. Note 15[b].

21. [a] rein. [b] *say*, of pure heart. [c] anſehen to look into.

22. [a] the Past Participle after *to see, to hear, to feel, to find*, is expressed by the *Infinitive Active* of the *Present*; and mark, there being a rule that a Past Participle of the Verbs *to see, to hear*, etc., when following an Infinitive is changed into an Infinitive too, it follows that *heard* [b] must stand in the Infinitive.

23. I have seen a soldier affrighted[a] at[b] his own shadow[c], who the day before had entered[d] a breach.[e]

24. The defence[a] of liberty[b] has always been found[c] to expand[d] and strengthen[e] the mind.[f]

25. The king had[a] him punished[b] on account[c] of his neglect of duty.[d]

26. As we lived near[a] the road[b], we often had[c] the traveller or stranger visit[c] us, to taste[d] our gooseberry-wine[d], for which[f] we had great[g] reputation.[h]

27. And I profess[a], with the veracity[b] of an historian[c], that I never knew[d] one of them find fault[e] with it.

28. When any of our relations[a] was found[b] to be a person[c] of a very bad character, a troublesome[d] guest[e], or one[f] we desired[g] to get rid of[h], upon his leaving my

---

23. [a] erſchrecken. [b] über, Acc. [c] Schatten, *m.* [d] ſich ſtürzen in. [e] Breſche, *f.*

24. [a] Vertheidigung. [b] Freiheit. [c] *say*, one has always found, and mark, the *Accusative* and *Infinitive*, which, in imitation of the Latin, follows in English such Verbs as *to find*, *to see*, etc., must be expressed in German by an *objective sentence*, headed by *that* daß. [d] entfalten. [e] ſtärken. [f] Seele, *f.*

25. [a] laſſen, which is followed by an *Infinitive Active*. [b] beſtrafen. [c] wegen. [d] Pflichtvergeſſenheit.

26. [a] an. [b] Landſtraße, *f.* [c] *say*, we received visits from, erhalten to receive, Beſuch, *m.*, visit. [d] koſten, *say*, who wished to taste. [e] Stachelbeerwein, *m.* [f] *say*, which enjoyed ſich erfreuen, with Gen. [g] verbreitet. [h] Ruf, *m.*

27. [a] geſtehen. [b] Wahrheitsliebe. [c] Geſchichtſchreiber. [d] *say*, that I never heard it blamed by. [e] tadeln.

28. [a] Verwandt. [b] when it was found that, ſich ergeben to be found. [c] Menſch. [d] läſtig. [e] Gaſt. [f] Geſell, *m.*, and do not forget the *Relative Pronoun*. [g] gern wollen. [h] los ſein.

house[l], I ever took care[j] to lend[k] him a riding-coat[l], or a pair of boots, and I always had the satisfaction[m] to find he never came back to return[n] them.

XV. On the Participles.

1. The Germans[a] have often had to lament[b] bitterly[c], that they succeeded better[d] in thinking[e] and speaking than in acting.[f]

2. I rejoice[a] in the expectation[b] of comparing[c] the imaginary[d] world with the real[e] one.[f]

3. It is too good to[a] be true.

4. Friendship improves[a] happiness[b] and abates[c] misery[d], by[e] doubling[f] our joy, and dividing[g] our grief.[h]

5. Bocaccio is not only entitled[a] to gratitude[b] for[c] having introduced[d] into Italy the study[e] of the Greek[f]

---

[l] *say*, an leave beim Abſchiede. [j] nicht verſäumen. [k] borgen. [l] Ueberrock, *m*. [m] Vergnügen. [n] zurückgeben.

1. [a] Deutſch. [b] beklagen. [c] ſchmerzlich. [d] *to succeed better* es weiter bringen. [e] The Participle Present, *in English*, is often nothing but the action of the Verb represented as a Substantive; this is expressed, *in German*, by the Infinitive, used as a Substantive neuter. [f] handeln.

2. [a] ſich freuen. [b] *say*, on that (darauf), that I shall compare. [c] vergleichen. [d] geträumt. [e] wirklich. [f] is not translated.

3. [a] *say*, in order to be.

4. [a] erhöhen. [b] Glück, *n*. [c] mildern. [d] Elend. [e] When the Participle Present, preceded by a Preposition, expresses, *in English*, an adverbial sentence of *cause* or *effect*, it must be translated by an adverbial sentence, headed by a *conjunction*, which implies *cause* or *effect*. Here say *because it doubles*; or the Conjunction can be *that* daß, following an *Adverb* of *cause* or *effect*, as *by that* dadurch, *that* daß; *or* in that indem; that daß omitted. [f] verdoppeln. [g] theilen. [h] Schmerz, *m*.

5. [a] has a right to Recht haben auf, Acc. [b] Dankbarkeit. [c] dafür daß, or indem (cf. Note 4[c]). [d] einführen. [e] Studium. [f] griechiſch.

language, but[g] for having preserved[h] and restored[i] what constitutes[j] its greatest glory[k], the writings[l] of Homer.

6. Most[a] authors[b] content themselves[c] with[d] thinking on[e] their subject[f] with all possible calmness[g], then with making a so-called[h] disposition[i], and carrying out[j] their argument[k] accordingly.[l]

7. But they use[a] the warmth[b] of the first excitement[c] in giving[d] us from[e] their glowing[f] imagination[g] a fresh picture.

8. This is often richly coloured[a] and forcible[b] enough, but still[c] it fails[d] to produce[e] the expected[f] effect.[g]

9. Many people[a] possess[b] a number[c] of impressions[d], derived[e] either[f] from nature or art, without their knowing[g] it themselves.

10. When[a] formerly[b] one manuscript[c] was destroy-

---

[g] ſondern. [h] erhalten. [i] wiederherſtellen. [j] ausmachen. [k] Herrlichkeit. [l] Schrift.

6. [a] die meiſten. [b] Schriftſteller. [c] ſich begnügen. [d] damit daß. [e] über. [f] Gegenſtand. [g] Gelaſſenheit. [h] nennen. [i] Dispoſition. [j] ausführen. [k] Satz. [l] danach.

7. [a] nutzen. [b] Heftigkeit. [c] Anfall. [d] *say*, whilst they give indem, etc. [e] von. [f] glühen. and mark, when the Participle is, *in English*, used as an Adjective, it is used and declined as such also *in German*. [g] Einbildungskraft.

8. [a] bunt richly coloured. [b] ſtark. [c] dennoch. [d] verfehlen. [e] thun. [f] erwarten. [g] Wirkung.

9. [a] Menſch. [b] bei ſich haben. [c] Menge, *f.* [d] Eindruck, *m.* [e] herrühren to be derived, and *say*, be they derived. [f] entweder. [g] wiſſen, and say either *without to know*, or in form of an adverbial sentence with daß *without that they know;* the latter method is especially to be used when the subject of this adverbial sentence is not the same as that in the chief sentence.

10. [a] wenn. [b] ehemals. [c] handſchriftliches Werk.

ed[d], the entire[e] work was commonly[f] lost[g]; with[h] us a hundred and more copies[i] may[j] be destroyed, without the work being[k] lost.

11. The natives[a] of South Africa, having[b] observed[c] the anxiety[d] of the ostrich[e] to keep[f] the fox from[g] robbing[h] her nest, avail themselves[i] of this solicitude[j] to lure[k] the bird to[l] its destruction.[m]

12. For, seeing[a] that it runs to the nest the instant[b] a fox appears[c], they fasten[d] a dog near it[e], and conceal themselves[f] close by.[g]

13. And the ostrich, on approaching[a] to drive away[b] the supposed[c] fox, is frequently[d] shot[e] by the real hunter.[f]

14. Would the child beware[a] of hurting itself[b] with sharp instruments[c], if it were not afraid[d] of the pains[e] arising[f] from it[g]?

---

[d] vernichten. [e] ganz. [f] gewöhnlich. [g] verlieren. [h] bei. [i] Exemplar, *n.* (*pl.*—e). [j] können. [k] cf. Note 9 g, and therefore say, *without that the work*, etc.

11. [a] Eingeboren. [b] this tentence containing the reason, it must be rendered in the form of an adverbial sentence with da; and mark, since an Adverb cannot stand between a Nominative, *the natives* and the Verb *avail*, the adverbial sentence must, in German, lead; therefore translate: Since the natives of South Africa have observed, etc., they avail themselves, etc. [c] bemerken. [d] Sorgfalt, *f.* [e] Strauß, *m.* [f] verhindern. [g] *say*, that he may not. [h] berauben. [i] benutzen. [j] Besorgniß, *f.* [k] locken. [l] in. [m] Verderben, *n.*

12. [a] *say*, as they see. [b] Augenblick, *m.*, *say*, the moment that. [c] sich sehen lassen. [d] anbinden. [e] nicht weit davon. [f] sich verbergen. [g] in der Nähe.

13. [a] sich nähern, and *say*, when the ostrich approaches. [b] fortjagen. [c] vermeintlich. [d] häufig. [e] erschießen. [f] Jäger.

14. [a] sich hüten. [b] *say*, before wounding itself; Verwundung is to express the Participle. [c] Werkzeug, *n.* [d] sich fürchten vor, Dat. [e] Schmerz, *m.* (*pl.*—en). [f] entstehen. [g] daraus, and treat *arising from it* as an Adjective standing before *pains*.

15. He who[a] makes a mistake[b] in the choosing[c] of good and evil[d] and chooses what is[e] momentarily[f] pleasant[g], but productive of[h] bad[i] consequences[j], commits[k] an error.[l]

16. During[a] the severest[b] frost[c], the Greenlanders[d] sit working[e] in a room without a fire.[f]

17. The trembling[a] sound[b] of the poplar[c] or aspen[d] has something peculiar[e], which[f] also the Latin[g] populus, the English poplar, and the German pappel, indicate.[h]

18. The grinding[a] of grain[b] to[c] flour[d], at first[e] required[f] much time and trouble, until at last handmills[g], and afterwards[h] watermills[i] and windmills[j] were invented.[k]

19. Committing an error[a] is a mistaking[b] of good and evil.

20. Pretending[a] to read a book, I heard several dreadful[b] stories.[c]

21. The necessity[a] of clothing[b] drove[c] men to the invention[d] of tanning[e], spinning[f], and weaving.[g]

---

15. [a] wer. [b] ſich vergreifen to make a mistake. [c] wählen. [d] treat *good* and *evil* as Substantives neuter. [e] *what is pleasant* treat as a Substantive neuter with the Def. Art. [f] augenblicklich. [g] angenehm. [h] Pres. Part. of bringen, and make it dependent upon the preceding Def. Article. [i] ſchlimm. [j] Folge, *f.* [k] begehen. [l] Verirrung.

16. [a] Während. [b] bitter. [c] Kälte, *f.* [d] Grönländer. [e] arbeiten, and mark, the Participle Present is also in German used adverbially. [f] unheated ungeheizt.

17. [a] zittern. [b] Säuſeln, *n.* [c] Pappel, *f.* [d] Eſpe, *f.* [e] eigen. [f] was. [g] lateiniſch, treated as a Substantive neuter. [h] andeuten.

18. [a] Zermalmen. [b] Getreide, *n.* [c] in. [d] Mehl, *n.* [e] anfangs. [f] koſten. [g] Handmühle, *f.* [h] ſpäterhin. [i] Waſſermühle, *f.* [j] Windmühle, *f.* [k] erfinden.

19. [a] Verirrung committing an error. [b] Verkennen.

20. [a] *say*, whilst I pretended; vorgeben to pretend. [b] ſchrecklich. [c] Geſchichte, *f.*

21. [a] Unentbehrlichkeit. [b] Kleidung. [c] treiben. [d] Erfindung. [e] gerben. [f] ſpinnen. [g] weben.

22. Blucher's intrepidity[a] in dangerous[b] situations[c], his perseverance[d] in misfortune, and his courage, increasing[e] with[f] every difficulty[g], were founded[h] on the consciousness[i] of his bodily[j] strength.[k]

23. My landlady's[a] daughters telling them that it was nobody[b] but[c] the gentleman[d], they went on[e] without minding[f] me.

24. The civil[a] wars[b] having been terminated[c], Julius Cæsar stood on the pinnacle[d] of his fortune[e], surrounded[f] with splendour[g] and power.[h]

25. Curiosity[a] is the wish[b] to learn[c] what has just[d] happened, and, if[e] possible, what is just happening; it is the desire[f] of filling[g] a mental[h] vacuum.[i]

26. Desire of knowledge[a] is the wish[b] to employ[c] an active[d] mind.[e]

27. Cæsar was only intent[a] on making his victory[b] lasting[c], and on maintaining[d] by wisdom and mildness[e], what he had gained by the fortune[f] of war.[g]

---

22. [a] Unerschrockenheit. [b] gefährlich. [c] Lage, *f.* [d] Ausdauern. [e] wachsen, and treat the Participle as an Adjective. [f] bei with the plural; *say*, with all. [g] Schwierigkeit. [h] sich gründen auf, with Acc. [i] Bewußtsein, *n.* [j] körperlich. [k] Kraft, *f.*

23. [a] Wirthin. [b] niemand. [c] als. [d] Herr. [e] fortfahren. [f] sich kümmern um.

24. [a b] Bürgerkrieg, *m.* [c] beenden. [d] Gipfel, *m.* [e] Glück, *n.* [f] bekleiden. [g] Glanz, *m.* [h] Macht, *f.*

25. [a] Neugier, *f.* [b] Verlangen. [c] erfahren. [d] so eben. [e] wo. [f] Bedürfniß, *n.* [g] ausfüllen. [h] inner. [i] Leere, *f.*

26. [a] Wißbegier, *f.* [b] Bedürfniß, *n.* [c] beschäftigen. [d] thätig. [e] Geist, *m.*

27. [a] bedacht sein auf. [b] Sieg, *m.* [c] dauernd. [d] behaupten. [e] Milde, *f.* Glück. [g] *say*, of arms; Waffe, *f.*

28. Death[a] once seen[b] at[c] our hearth[d] leaves[e] a shadow[f], which abides[g] there for[h] ever.

29. Butterflies[a] are adorned[b] with glorious[c] colours.

30. You are not engaged[a] for[b] the following day.

31. The estate[a] is left[b] to me, and I am the legal[c] heir.[d]

32. In order to be sure[a] of it[b], I was resolved[c] to go myself.

33. I was determined[a] to do it the rather[b], since[c] necessity[d] was urging.[e]

34. My patience[a] was now quite exhausted.[b]

35. The ambassador[a] having delivered his address[b], presented[c] the gift[d], and having received[e] from the mayor[f] the assurance[g] of continued[h] encouragement[i], he departed[j] from[k] the enclosed[l] circle.[m]

36. This story[a] is fabricated.[b]

---

28. [a] Tod, *m.* [b] say either *the once at our hearth seen death*, or *has death once been seen;* to be seen erſcheinen. [c] an. [d] Herd, *m.* [e] zurücklaſſen. [f] Schatten, *m.* [g] verweilen. [h] auf.

29. [a] Schmetterling, *m.* [b] ſchmücken, and mark, when the Past Participle conveys the notion of a *Verb*, the auxiliary is werden; i. e. it is treated as a Participle in the *Passive Voice;* but when it refers to the *quality* of a Substantive, it is treated as an Adjective, and the auxiliary is ſein. [c] herrlich.

30. [a] verſagen. [b] auf.

31. [a] Gut, *n.* [b] hinterlaſſen. [c] rechtmäßig. [d] Erbe, *m.*

32. [a] gewiß. [b] take the Gen. of the Dem. Pron. der, die, das. [c] entſchloſſen, which, like erſchöpft, is one of those Participles Past that have lost the participial meaning, and are used only as Adjectives.

33. [a] entſchloſſen. [b] um ſo eher. [c] da. [d] Noth, *f.* [e] drängen.

34. [a] Geduld, *f.* [b] erſchöpft.

35. [a] Geſandt. [b] eine Anrede halten to deliver an address. [c] abgeben. [d] Geſchenk, *n.* [e] empfangen. [f] Schultheiß. [g] Verſicherung. [h] fortdauernd. [i] Begünſtigung. [j] ſich entfernen. [k] aus. [l] ſchließen. [m] Kreis, *m.*

36. [a] Geſchichte, *f.* [b] erlügen.

37. The children are being dressed[a] by their nurse[b], and when they are dressed, they will take a walk.[c]

38. The books are being printed[a] by our old acquaintance[b], and as soon as[c] they are printed, you shall have a copy[d] of each[e] of them.

39. We shall meet[a] again, when the battle[b] is lost[c] and won.[d]

40. She came cheerfully[a] running towards[b] me.

41. All the boys came at once[a] bounding[b] uproariously[c] into the room.

XVI. On Verbs, Construed with a Genitive or Dative Case.

1. Remember[a], O king, the promise[b] you have given us.
2. War spares[a] not even[b] the infant[c] in the cradle.[d]
3. Must a weak woman give up[a] her native[b] right?
4. Is it worth while[a] to talk so much about a trifle.[b]
5. He has applied himself[a], during the last three years, to the study[b] of ancient history.

---

37. [a] ankleiden. [b] Amme, *f.* [c] ausgehen.

38. [a] drucken. [b] Bekannt. [c] ſobald. [d] Exemplar, *n.* [e] jeder.

39. [a] ſich treffen. [b] Schlacht, *f.* [c] verlieren. [d] gewinnen.

40. [a] heiter. [b] entgegenlaufen, with Dat., and mark, the Partic. Present, like *running*, after Verbs of motion, like *came*, is expressed in German by a Past Participle.

41. [a] auf einmal. [b] ſpringen. [c] lärmend.

1. [a] gedenken, with Gen. [b] Verſprechen.

2. [a] ſchonen, Gen. [b] auch nicht. [c] Kindlein. [d] Wiege, *f.*

3. [a] ſich entäußern, Gen. [b] angeboren.

4. [a] *say*, does it reward the trouble; to reward ſich lohnen, Gen.; trouble Mühe, *f.* [b] Kleinigkeit.

5. [a] ſich befleißen, Gen. [b] Studium.

6. I do not remember[a] it any more.[b]

7. How long did you serve[a] your country[b]?

8. Bless[a] those who curse[b] thee.

9. Thy lamenting[a] avails[b] thee not.

10. The dress[a] fitted[b] my sister well.

11. Do not trust[a] those who flatter[b] thee.

12. Do not defy[a] the stronger[b], but[c] rather[d] yield[e] to superior power.[f]

13. He beckoned[a] me to follow[b] him into the next room.

14. It behoves[a] the children to obey[b] their parents.

15. Your promise satisfies[a] me perfectly.[b]

16. It does not please[a] me to see you constantly[b] in such company.

17. The sword escaped[a] his hand.

18. His name had almost[a] escaped[b] my memory.

19. Do not trust[a] him, who promises[b] you too much.

---

6. [a] ſich entſinnen, Gen. [b] not any more nicht mehr.

7. [a] dienen, Dat. [b] Vaterland, *n.*

8. [a] ſegnen. [b] fluchen, Dat.

9. [a] klagen. [b] to avail nützen, Dat.

10. [a] Kleid, *n.* [b] paſſen, Dat.

11. [a] trauen, Dat. [b] ſchmeicheln, Dat.

12. [a] trotzen, Dat. [b] ſtärker, used as *Substantive*. [c] ſondern. [d] vielmehr. [e] weichen, Dat. [f] Uebermacht, *f.*

13. [a] winken, Dat. [b] folgen, Dat.

14. [a] ziemen, Dat. [b] gehorchen, Dat.

15. [a] genügen, Dat. [b] vollkommen.

16. [a] gefallen, Dat. [b] ſtets.

17. [a] entfallen, Verbs derived by ent meaning *away*, are construed with the Dative of the object.

18. [a] faſt. [b] for *escape my memory*, *may escape me*.

19. mißtrauen, Dat. [b] verſprechen, Dat.

20. I have assisted[a] him with all the money I possessed.[b]

21. This evil[a] must be remedied.[b]

22. Imitate[a] the great examples[b] of those excellent[c] men.

23. You have too long connived[a] at his faults.[b]

24. We must try to prevent[a] this danger.[b]

25. Such a dish[a] would not agree[b] with the patient.[c]

26. What did you advise[a] him in this emergency[b]?

27. How many troubles[a] and anxieties[b] does not humility[c] spare[d] us!

28. In the north of Siberia they can as little[a] do without[b] dogs, as in other countries without horses.

29. Sheep[a] are without[b] any[c] arms or[d] faculty[e] of defending[f] themselves.

30. What does not belong[a] to your office[b], with that[c] do not meddle.

---

20. [a] helfen, Dat. [b] haben.

21. [a] Elend, *n.* [b] abhelfen, Dat., and mark, *Verbs* with a *Dative* are in Passive so construed, that the *Dative in German* takes the place of the *English Nominative*, and the Verb itself stands in the third singular; e. g., they were assisted ihnen wurde geholfen.

22. [a] nachhelfern, which, like all compounds with nach, is construed with Dative. [b] Beiſpiel, *n.* (*pl.*—e). [c] vortrefflich.

23. [a] nachſehen to connive at. [b] Fehler, *m.*

24. [a] vorbeugen, Dat. [b] Gefahr, *f.*

25. [a] Speiſe, *f.* [b] bekommen, Dat., to agree with. [c] Kranf.

26. [a] rathen, Dat. [b] wichtiger Fall.

27. [a] Unruhe, *f.* [b] Marter, *f.* [c] Demuth, *f.* [d] überheben, with Accusative of the *person*, and Genitive of the *thing*.

28. [a] eben ſo wenig. [b] to do without entbehren, Gen.

29. [a] Schaaf, *n.* (*pl.*—e). [b] ermangeln, Gen. [c] all. [d] *say*, and. [e] Fähigkeit. [f] vertheidigen.

30. [a] ſein, with Gen. [b] Amt, *n.* [c] *say*, there leave your wit laſſen, Vorwitz, *m.*

31. Arnold endeavoured[a] in his historical[b] reading[c] to follow the plan[d], which he afterwards recommended[e] in his lectures[f], of making himself thoroughly[g] master[h] of some one period.[i]

32. During the frequent[a] irruptions[b] of the northern nations who subverted[c] the Roman state[d], Florence[e] followed the fate[f] of the rest[g] of Italy.

33. Who can resist[a] the force[b] of circumstances[c]?

34. The peacocks[a] fell on[b] the jackdaw[c], to pluck from[d] her the deceitful[e] ornament.[f]

35. By hospitals[a] the misery[b] of many thousand people is partly[c] remedied[d], partly it is at least considerably[e] alleviated.[f]

36. The Athenians[a] had bound[b] themselves by an oath[c], to live for ten years[d] according[e] to the institutions[f] which Solon had prescribed[g] to them.

37. It can be proved that[a] all the persons, introduced[b] into this story, existed[c] within[d] that memorable[e] period.

---

31. [a] versuchen. [b] geschichtlich. [c] Studium, and take the plural, Studien. [d] Plan, *m.* [e] empfehlen. [f] Vorlesung. [g] vollkommen. [h] to make one's self master sich bemeistern. [i] Zeitraum, *m.*

32. [a] häufig. [b] Einfall, *m.* [c] stürzen. [d] Staat, *m.* [e] Florenz. [f] Schicksal, *n.* [g] *say*, of the remaining übrig Italy.

33. [a] widerstehen, which, like all compounds with wider, is construed with a Dat. [b] Gewalt, *f.* [c] Umstand, *m.*

34. [a] Pfau, *m.* (Gen.—en). [b] herfallen über, Acc. [c] Krähe, *f.* [d] ausreißen, with Dat. [e] trügerisch. [f] Schmuck, *m.*

35. [a] Krankenhaus, *n.* [b] Elend, *n.* [c] theils. [d] abhelfen. [e] beträchtlich. [f] mindern.

36. [a] Athener. [b] verpflichten. [c] Eid, *m.* [d] *say*, ten years through hindurch. [e] to live according nachleben, with Dat. [f] Einrichtung. [g] vorschreiben.

37. [a] Treat *it can be proved that* as an Adverb, *in a way that can be proved* erweislicher Maßen. [b] to introduce into einflechten, with the Dative. [c] leben. [d] innerhalb. [e] denkwürdig.

38. A scholar[a] was pleased[b] to convince[c] us of having committed[d] an error[e] in the chronology[f] of that century.[g]

XVII. On Adverbs.

1. The old man clogs[a] our earliest[b] years, and simple childhood[c] comes the last.[d]

2. The parents and tutors[a] always knew best[b], what was advantageous[c] to young people.

3. After such wars[a] and pestilential diseases[b], the remembrance[c] of the blessings[d] of peace most forcibly[e] recurred[f] to several pious[g] men.

4. Queen Christina rode[a] most boldly[b] on horseback; one foot in the stirrup[c], thus she flew along.[d]

5. Of[a] all living beings[b] man is the least[c] confined[d] to one country.

---

38. [a] Gelehrt. [b] *say*, it had pleased gefallen, Dat. [c] überweiſen, and construe thus: to convince us of that, that we had committed. [d] machen. [e] Fehler, *m.* [f] Zeitrechnung. [g] Jahrhundert, *n.*

1. [a] hemmen. [b] früh. [c] Kindheit. [d] zuletzt.

2. [a] Erzieher. [b] The superlative of the Adverb is formed by the Preposition an, with the Dat. of the neuter of the superlative of the Adjective, as *in the finest manner* an dem, or more usually contracted, am ſchönſten; or by auf, with the Acc. neuter, as auf das, or more usually, aufs ſchönſte; the first way is used when the superlative is the highest degree in reference to other things; the second, when the superlative implies the highest degree absolutely. [c] frommen to be of avail.

3. [a] Krieg, *m.* [b] Peſtkrankheit. [c] Gedanke, *m.* [d] Segnung. [e] lebendig. [f] to recur to ergreifen. [g] fromm.

4. [a] to ride on horseback zu Pferde ſitzen. [b] kühn. [c] Bügel, *m.* [d] dahin.

5. [a] unter. [b] Weſen, *n.* [c] wenig. [d] beſchränken auf, Acc.

6. He did not yield[a], nor[b] did he renounce[c] the least[d] advantage.[e]

7. It was properly[a] about[b] this period[c] that I first became acquainted[d] with my native city[e], which[f] I strolled[g] over[h] with more and more freedom[i] in every direction.

8. For a time[a] I was permitted[b] to read those entertaining[c] books.

9. We sailed[a] up and down[b] the beautiful river.

10. Now and then[a] there appeared in the house some very curious[b] people.

11. And we even[a] hoped that we might yet live to see[b], some day[c], a coronation[d] with our own eyes.

12. From[a] the very first moments of consciousness[b] this excited[c] in me an unconquerable[d] desire[e] to know the meaning[f] of those obscure[g] words.

13. They pushed us out[a] beyond[b] the village.

14. During the day[a] we did nothing but regard[b] all the novelties.[c]

---

6. [a] weichen. [b] auch nicht, which are separated by the *Verb* and following *Nominative*. [c] aufgeben. [d] gering. [e] Vortheil, *m.*

7. [a] eigentlich. [b] in. [c] Zeit, *f.* [d] gewahr werden, with Acc. [e] Vaterstadt, *f.* [f] *say*, in which I strolled. [g] wandeln. [h] auf und ab. [i] *say*, always more freely.

8. [a] auf eine Zeit lang. [b] gestatten, Dat. [c] unterhalten.

9. [a] fahren. [b] auf und abwärts.

10. [a] Mitunter. [b] seltsam.

11. [a] wohl auch. [b] to live to see erleben. [c] noch einmal. [d] Krönung.

12. [a] *From* is run; but mark, after a Preposition with its case, there often follows, in German, an Adverb of place, to point out the direction more strongly; thus here *say*, from the first moments onward on. [b] Bewußtsein, *n.* [c] erregen. [d] unbezwinglich. [e] Begierde, *f.* [f] Meinung. [g] dunkel.

13. [a] drängen. [b] über—hinaus, between both place *the village*.

14. [a] *say*, the day through, so that über is treated as an Adverb. [b] I regard something ich sehe mir etwas an. [c] Neuigkeit.

15. That which, indeed[a], was the chief point[b], occurred[c] not before[d] the approach of night[e].

16. I am[a] not to know what detained[b] you so long, and yet[c] my brother knows it?

17. The house after which you enquire[a] stands towards[b] the corner of the street.[c]

18. Down from[a] the market-place[b] they all had large gardens.

19. He arrived in London at seven, and thence[a] he travelled[b] to York.

20. She remained[a] three days in Bristol, whence[b] she came to us.

21. From there[a] he brought these fine fruit with him.[b]

22. Beyond[a] those gardens we saw a fertile[b] plain.[c]

23. Then, I suppose[a], I shall not fare[b] so very badly[c] after all.[d]

24. I assure you[a], nothing is the matter.[b]

---

15. [a] eigentlich. [b] this is the chief point darauf kommt es an. [c] ſich ereignen. [d] not before, or not sooner than, ir erſt. [e] *say*, with sinking night.

16. [a] dürfen. [b] aufhalten. [c] doch, and mark, this doch, which corresponds with the English *though*, stands last.

17. [a] ſich erkundigen. [b] gegen—zu. [c] Straßenecke, *f.*

18. [a] Von—her. [b] Marktplatz, *m.*

19. [a] von da. [b] reiſen.

20. [a] bleiben. [b] *whence* is woher, if it refers to the place of the speaking person, if not it is von wo.

21. [a] Von dort her. [b] *him* is not expressed in German.

22. [a] über—hinaus. [b] fruchtbar. [c] Ebene, *f.*

23. [a] wohl. [b] I fare es wird mit mir. [c] arg. [d] trotz alle dem.

24. [a] ja, which stands after the Verb. [b] nothing is the matter, *say*, it is nothing.

25. Solon was hardly[a] gone, when[b] the revenging[c] gods decreed[d] great[e] misery[f] to[g] Crœsus, probably[h] because he had considered[i] himself the happiest of all men.

26. The tree stands in[a] its place all the while[b], and does not fall.

27. Why[a], you know that way[b] of speaking.

28. I suppose I shall not forget it in so great a hurry.[a]

29. I suppose you are jesting.[a]

30. He was still[a] living[b] here six months ago.[c]

31. Only[a] six months ago he determined[b] to leave[c] this village.

32. He will remain here twelve months[a] longer.[b]

33. Every state, however[a] large and however small, has felt[b] more or less the influence[c] of the Reformation.[d]

34. It was[a] not until in later times, that silk weaving[b] was transplanted[c] to this side[d] of the Alps too.[e]

35. You understand me of course[a]?

---

25. [a] kaum. [b] this *than* after *hardly* kaum, leads an adverbial sentence, and can be translated by als; but it is more usually, against all rule, translated by ſo, as if the preceding sentence, with *hardly* kaum, were the adverbial sentence. [c] rächen. [d] verhängen. [e] ſchwer. [f] Unglück, *n.* [g] über. [h] vermuthlich. [i] halten für.

26. [a] an. [b] nach wie vor.

27. [a] ja. [b] Weiſe, *f.*

28. [a] *say*, so quickly ſo ſchnell.

29. [a] ſcherzen.

30. [a] noch. [b] wohnen. [c] *say*, before six months.

31. [a] erſt. [b] beſchließen. [c] verlaſſen.

32. [a] *say*, a year. [b] noch.

33. [a] noch ſo. [b] empfinden. [c] Einfluß, *m.* [d] Kirchenverbeſſerung.

34. [a] Treat *it was but that* as an adverbial expression erſt ſpäter. [b] Seidenweberei. [c] verpflanzen. [d] diesſeits, Gen. [e] Alp, *f.*

35. [a] ſchon.

36. For any other price[a] you do not get[b] the book.

37. She is as[a] slender[b] as[c] a palm-tree.[d]

38. She acted[a] as[b] wife and mother.

39. These gifts[a] were presented[b] to the mayor[c] and that[d] for the sake of[e] a more imposing show[f], when[g] he sat in full court.[h]

40. I like[a] those conversations[b] best, where[c] I can speak[d] my mind[e] freely in a circle[f] of intimate[g] friends.

41. Christina of Sweden read all the ancient authors[a]; even[b] the fathers of the church[c] did not remain unknown[d] to her.

42. People fancied[a] that the coach, in pursuance[b] of an old custom[c], must always contain[d] a drunkard[e], on which account[f] the urchins[g] used[h] to break out[i] into an ear-splitting[j] shout[k] on[l] the arrival[m] of the coach.

43. Something you must learn at all events.[a]

44. That did certainly[a] annoy[b] me.

---

36. [a] for any other price, *say*, otherwise anders. [b] kriegen.

37. [a] ſo, but it can be omitted. [b] ſchlank. [c] if *as* implies a *likeness*, it is wie. [d] Palme, *f.*

38. [a] handeln. [b] if *as* implies *identity*, it is als.

39. [a] Geſchenk, *n.* (*pl.*—e). [b] überreichen. [c] Schultheiß. [d] that express by zwar, a contraction of es iſt wahr. [e] wegen, which is to be placed after its case. [f] more imposing show Anſtand, *m.* [g] wenn. [h] to sit in full court feierlich zu Gerichte ſitzen.

40. [a] I like well ich habe gern, I like better ich habe lieber, I like best ich habe am liebſten. [b] Unterhaltung. [c] wenn. [d] ausſprechen. [e] Geſinnung. [f] Kreis, *m.* [g] vertraut.

41. [a] Schriftſteller. [b] ſelbſt. [c] Kirchenvater. [d] fremd.

42. [a] man trug ſich mit der Rede. [b] nach. [c] Gewohnheit. [d] enthalten. [e] Trunkenbold. [f] weßhalb denn. [g] Straßenjunge. [h] pflegen. [i] ausbrechen. [j] gellend. [k] Geſchrei, *n.* [l] bei. [m] Ankunft, *f.*

43. [a] doch.

44. [a] denn doch. [b] verdrießen.

45. I hope[a], you do not imagine[b] that I am uttering a falsehood.[c]

46. Go there[a] yourself, why not[b]?

47. Indeed[a], I have thought so.[b]

48. Why, he confessed[a] it himself.[b]

49. Why is she not to[a] dance? you cannot deny[b], you once[c] were very fond of[d] dancing.

50. Peace be with the ashes[a] of these brave men; we know[b] they fought[c] for a good cause.[d]

51. I really feel[a] as if it had happened but[b] yesterday.

52. We hurt[a] those most whom we love most tenderly.[b]

53. No sooner had I completed[a] my seventh year, than[b] immediately afterwards[c] that far-famed[d] war broke out[e], which was also to exert[f] great influence upon the next[g] seven years of my life.

54. I also listened to[a] what he said, and consequently[b] walked along[c] with him.

55. This certainly[a] could not be denied[b]; still[c] you were not justified[d] in using such harsh[e] terms.[f]

---

45. [a] doch wohl, which are to be placed after *imagine*. [b] glauben. [c] lügen.

46. [a] hingehen. [b] doch einmal.

47. [a] doch, and mark, if an opinion of the speaking or the addressed person is appealed to by doch, then the Verb leads the sentence. [b] *say*, it.

48. [a] geſtehen. [b] doch (cf. Note 47[a]).

49. [a] ſollen. [b] express by doch, and cf. 47[a]. [c] früher. [d] gern haben.

50. [a] Aſche, *f.*, sing. [b] express by doch. [c] kämpfen. [d] Sache, *f.*

51. [a] Iſt mir's doch. [b] erſt.

52. [a] verletzen. [b] zärtlich.

53. [a] zurücklegen. [b] als (cf. 25[b]). [c] gleich darauf. [d] weltberühmt. [e] ausbrechen. [f] ausüben. [g] nächſt.

54. [a] horchen auf, Acc.; and *say*, to that what. [b] alſo. [c] entlang.

55. [a] allerdings. [b] leugnen. [c] doch. [d] berechtigen. [e] ſtreng. [f] Wort, *n.*

56. As it is usual[a] in childish matters[b], this event[c] was soon forgotten; it was, unfortunately[d], the cause why[e] our lessons[f] became rarer[g], and at last ceased[h] entirely.

57. You have commanded us to speak these words; in spite of this[a] he stubbornly[b] refuses[c] to obey you.

58. Suffice it to say, that[a] the perception[b] of the injustice of parties[c] had even then[d] a very unpleasant[e], nay[f], an injurious[g] effect[h] upon the boy.

XVIII. On Prepositions.

1. The legend[a] is poetry[b] both[c] in reference to[d] its contents[e] and its nature.[f]

2. The ocean[a] is not too great a scene of action[b] for the whale[c], and millions[d] of animalcula[e] find space[f] enough in a drop[g] of water.

3. What a distance[a] from the hugest[b] animal to the egg[c] of the tiniest[d] insect! and how, again[e] does all grandeur[f] and glory[g] on earth disappear in comparison to[h] the universe[i]!

---

56. [a] *say*, as it is accustomed to go. [b] Sache, *f.* [c] Ereigniß, *n.* [d] zum Unglücke. [e] daß. [f] Stunde, *f.* [g] ſelten. [h] aufhören.

57. [a] dennoch [b] hartnäckig. [c] ſich weigern.

58. [a] *Suffice....that* express by the Adverb *enough* genug. [b] Gewahrwerden, *n.* [c] *say*, of party injustice parteiiſch, Ungerechtigkeit. [d] ſchon damals. [e] unangenehm. [f] this Adverb is in German *not* nein, as might be *imagined*, but ja. [g] ſchädlich. [h] Wirkung.

1. [a] Sage, *f.* [b] Poeſie, *f.* [c] both—and ſowohl—als auch. [d] in reference to nach, standing after its case. [e] Inhalt, *m.* [f] Weſen, *n.*

2. [a] Weltmeer, *n.* [b] Tummelplatz, *m.* [c] Wallfiſch, *m.* [d] Million, *f.* [e] Thierchen, *n.* [f] Raum, *m.* [g] Tropfen, *m.*

3. [a] Abſtand, *m.* [b] groß. [c] Ei, *n.* [d] klein. [e] wiederum. [f] Größe *f.* [g] Herrlichkeit. [h] in comparison to gegen. [i] Weltall, *n.*

4. Many remarks[a] have been repeated[b] so often, that, in spite[c] of their sublime[d] meaning[e], they make but[f] little[g] impression[h] on[i] mankind.[j]

5. There are[a] animals which, even in proportion[b] to[c] the size[d] of their bodies[e], move so slowly, that they, in[f] all justice[g], deserve the name *Tardigrades*, given them by the French natural historians[h], since[i], from[j] all appearance[k], even this slow movement causes[l] them very great exertion.[m]

6. The shark[a] follows the speediest ship from Europe to the East Indies[b], and withal[c] incessantly[d] swimming round it, so that he, in that time, repeats the voyage perhaps three times.

7. The motion of the whole earth around its axis[a] is quicker than most motions which take place[b] on[c] the earth itself.

8. In consequence[a] of the daily[b] revolution[c] of the earth, a point[d] underneath[e] the line[f] traverses[g] 1431 feet in one second.

9. Of[a] all motions, known to us, the speediest[b] is that of light.[c]

---

4. [a] Bemerkung. [b] wiederholen. [c] ungeachtet. [d] erhaben. [e] Meinung. [f] nur. [g] wenig, indeclinable. [h] Eindruck, *m.* [i] auf. [j] Plural of Menſch.

5. [a] es giebt. [b] im Verhältniß. [c] zu. [d] Größe. [e] Körper, *m.* [f] mit. [g] Recht, *n.* [h] Naturforſcher. [i] da. [j] nach. [k] Anſchein; and mark, Substantives are masculine when they are derived from Verbs, without any additional termination. [l] koſten. [m] Anſtrengung.

6. [a] Hai, *m.* [b] Oſtindien, *n.*; it is used without any Article. [c] dabei. [d] unaufhörlich.

7. [a] Axe, *f.* [b] Statt finden. [c] auf.

8. [a] vermöge. [b] täglich. [c] Umwälzung. [d] Punct, *m.* [e] unterhalb [f] Linie, *f.* [g] durchlaufen.

9. [a] *of*, after the superlative, unter or von. [b] ſchnell. [c] Licht, *n.*

10. It is remarkable, that all the motions which occur in the skies[a], and therefore belong to[b] astronomy[c], are known with mathematical[d] accuracy[e] through the industry[f] and ingenuity[g] of astronomers.[h]

11. Notwithstanding all the raillery[a] which the proud man throws[b] on humility[c] and modesty[d], he still[e] loves the modest, and feels a comfort[f] in their society.

12. Humility is an ever[a] persevering[b] gratitude[c] towards the Almighty.[d]

13. He was condescending[a] to[b] inferiors[c], without the least[d] constraint[e], and in some measure[f] made others equal to himself.

14. Whence[a] do most wars arise[b]? From[c] covetousness[d] and thirst of power[e], from haughtiness[f] and vindictiveness.[g]

15. Words produce a strong effect when they are spoken from[a] a deep conviction.[b]

16. The sway[a] of imagination terminates with[b] nations as with[c] individuals[d], when in[e] progress[f] of time the power of reason[g] steps[h] into[i] its place.[j]

---

10. [a] *say*, which have the sky for the place of action den Himmel zum Spielraum haben. [b] *say*, are an object of Gegenſtand. [c] Aſtronomie, *f.* [d] mathematiſch. [e] Genauigkeit. [f] Fleiß. [g] Scharfſinn, *m.* [h] Aſtronom (Gen.—en).

11. [a] Spott, *m.* [b] fallen laſſen. [c] Demuth, *f.* [d] Beſcheidenheit. [e] dennoch. [f] *say*, finds himself well.

12. [a] ſtets. [b] fortdauernd. [c] Dankbarkeit. [d] Allmächtig.

13. [a] ſich herablaſſen to be condescending. [b] gegen. [c] Geringer. [d] entfernt. [e] Zwang. [f] auf gewiſſe Weiſe.

14. [a] woher. [b] entſtehen. [c] aus. [d] Habſucht, *f.* [e] Herrſchſucht. [f] Hochmuth, *m.* [g] Rachſucht.

15. [a] aus. [b] Ueberzeugung.

16. [a] Herrſchaft. [b] bei. [c] in. [d] einzelner Menſch. [e] bei. [f] Fortgang. [g] Vernunft. [h] treten. [i] an. [j] Stelle, *f.*

17. Is it not our own fault when, in[a] illness, or on receiving an external[b] bruise[c], we do not immediately[d] seek assistance[e], but wait until it is too late?

18. But[a] few[b] people, and only[c] those who are bad payers[d], have[e] their work done by[f] an unskilful[g] master.

19. In[a] everything one must look to[b] the end.

20. Our affection[a] for a human being[b] often begins only[c] when he is departed[d] from us.

21. Often the hatred[a] against a man dies with him, but never the affection for him.

22. Among[a] these papers there was found[b] a letter, which will be of[c] great importance[d] to[e] us.

23. I addressed[a] the one next to[b] me.

24. He had kept[a] her to[b] the piano, and by[c] this circumstance[d] she found herself obliged to acquire[e] some knowledge[f] of[g] the Italian language.

25. They went home in[a] the evening, just as[b] the sun was near[c] to setting.[d]

---

17. [a] bei. [b] äußer. [c] Schaden, *m.* [d] unmittelbar. [e] Hülfe.

18. [a] nur. [b] wenige. [c] einzig. [d] ſchlecht bezahlen to be a bad payer [e] arbeiten laſſen to have one's work done. [f] bei. [g] ungeſchickt.

19. [a] bei. [b] auf.

20. [a] Liebe. [b] Menſch. [c] erſt dann. [d] gehen.

21. [a] Haß, *m.*

22. [a] bei. [b] use the reflective form. [c] von is *of* when implying a quality. [d] Wichtigkeit. [e] für.

23. [a] anreden. [b] bei.

24. [a] anhalten. [b] zu, and *the piano* express by *the playing*. [c] bei. [d] Gelegenheit. [e] ſich erwerben. [f] use the plural of Kenntniß. [g] in.

25. [a] an. [b] da eben. [c] *say*, inclined himself to the setting ſich neigen zu. [d] Untergang.

26. Since the remotest[a] times the serpent[b] has been considered[c] the symbol[d] of cunning[e], acuteness[f] and falsehood.[g]

27. Man can alleviate[a] many evils, by making[b] proper[c] use of[d] his reason and of his bodily strength.[e]

28. That is learned[a] of itself[b], and does not require[c] the assistance of a master.

29. You need[a] not ask him, he will do it of his own accord.[b]

30. As[a] Solon did not speak to the satisfaction[b] of Crœsus, nor[c] seemed to care[d] for[e] him, he was dismissed.[f]

31. And Crœsus took him to be[a] a foolish[b] man, because he did not value[c] the advantages[d] of the present moment[e], but[f] said, one must wait for[g] the end of everything.

32. From[a] love to[b] your old mother you will be obliged to make[c] many a sacrifice.[d]

33. To please[a] your poet[b], you wished to become an actor.[c]

---

26. [a] alt. [b] Schlange, *f.* [c] anſehen als. [d] Sinnbild, *n.* [e] Liſt. [f] Klugheit. [g] Falſchheit.

27. [a] vermindern. [b] *say*, when he makes. [c] gehörig. [d] von. [e] Leibeskraft, *f.*

28. [a] take the reflective form. [a] von ſelber. [c] bedürfen, with Gen.

29. [a] brauchen. [b] von ſelbſt.

30. [a] da. [b] zum Willen. [c] noch. [d] ſich kehren. [e] an. [f] fortſchicken.

31. [a] halten für to take to be. [b] unverſtändig. [c] achten. [d] Gut, which must be neuter, since it is the Adjective form without termination. [e] Gegenwart, *f.* [f] ſondern. [g] auf, *to wait for* is either warten auf, or abwarten without Preposition.

32. [a] aus. [b] zu, but mark, you can also say, deiner alten Mutter zu Liebe. [c] bringen. [d] Opfer, *n.*

33. [a] gefallen, Dat. [b] Dichter, but you can also express it by *for pleasure to your poet* deinem Dichter zu Gefallen. [c] Schauſpieler.

34. For appearance' sake[a], Caesar refused[b] the proffered[c] royal title.[d]

35. The inhabitants of many countries neither want[a] buildings nor clothing for[b] protection[c] against cold.

36. The distress[a] was great, since all the wisdom of the learned, all the ingenuity[b] of the artist, and all the power of kings were confounded.[c]

37. Heaven has given us pain, at is were[a], for[b] a watch[c] and ward[d] of our life and health.

38. Conflagrations[a] in great cities are very soon extinguished[b] by good fire-regulations.[c]

39. It is[a] only by means of speech that slumbering[b] reason is awakened.[c]

40. Solon considered[a] Tellus, a citizen of Athens, as the happiest man, becauee he had lived in prosperity[b], and had attained[c] the end of life[d] in the fulness[e] of honour and esteem.[f]

41. Nature creates nothing without special[a] purposes[b]; there is always in her creations[c] and gifts[d] a well cal-

---

34. [a] *say*, out of appearance, zu and Schein with the Art. [b] ablehnen. [c] anbieten. [d] Königstitel, *m*.

35. [a] bedürfen. [b] mark, when a *Substantive* like *protection* is the predicate to another, like *dress*, it has generally the Preposition zu prefixed. [c] Schutz, *m*.

36. [a] Noth, *f*. [b] Fertigkeit. [c] *say*, became to shame zu Schanden werden.

37. [a] gleichsam. [b] cf. Note 35 [b]. [c] Wächter. [d] Hüter.

38. [a] Feuersbrunst, from brennen, with the termination st, and therefore *Feminine*. [b] auslöschen. [c] Feueranstalt.

39. [b] omit *it is—that*. [b] schlummern. [c] erwecken.

40. [a] halten für to consider as. [b] Glück, *n*. [c] erreichen. [d] Lebensende, *n*. [e] Fülle. [f] Achtung.

41. [a] besonder. [b] Absicht. [c] Schöpfung. [d] Gabe.

culated[e] connexion[f] between them and other things, although[g] the human eye, from[h] weak inattention[i], does not everywhere[j] and immediately recognise[k] it.

42. A practised[a] ear would recognise most trees by[b] the rustling[c] of their foliage.[d]

43. The German emperor[a], Rodolph[b] the Second, had the greatest delight[c] in[d] antique[e] works of art[f], in statues[g], intaglios[h], and pictures, and spent[i] great sums of money on[j] them.

44. But just as strongly[a] was he attracted[b] by his alchymistic[c] laboratory[d], where gold was to be made.

45. Those who had to converse[a] with him on[b] weighty[c] public affairs, were often obliged to seek him there or in his stables, in which he used[d] to pass[e] many hours of the day.

46. Charles[a] the Fourth did not make[b] the people of Frankfort[c] atone for[d] their adherence[e] to[f] his noble rival emperor[g] Günther von Schwarzburg.

47. Luther is a phenomenon[a] in history, to which no other of similar[b] kind[c] can be compared.[d]

48. The Athenians buried[a] Tellus, at[b] public expense[c], on[d] the very spot where he had fallen, and showed[e] him great honour.

---

[e]berechnen. [f]Zuſammenhang. [g]obgleich. [h]aus. [i]Unachtſamkeit. [j]überall. [k]erkennen.

42. [a]geübt. [b]aus. [c]Säuſeln, *n.* [d]Laub, *n.*

43. [a]Kaiſer. [b]Rudolf. [c]Freude, *f.* [d]an. [e]alt. [f]Kunſtwerk, *n.* [g]Bildſäule, *f.* [h]geſchnittener Stein. [i]verwenden. [j]für or auf.

44. [a]eben ſo ſehr. [b]anziehen. [c]alchymiſtiſch. [d]Werkſtätte, *f.*

45. [a]reden. [b]über. [c]wichtig. [d]pflegen. [e]zubringen.

46. [a]Karl. [b]laſſen. [c]Frankfurter. [d]entgelten. [e]Anhänglichkeit. [f]an. [g]Gegenkaiſer.

47. [a]Erſcheinung. [b]ähnlich. [c]Art, *f.* [d]*say*, placed by the side an die Seite ſetzen.

48. [a]begraben. [b]auf. [c]Koſten, only used in pl. [d]an. [e]erweiſen.

49. Practice[a] makes one perfect[b] in[c] body[d] and mind.[e]

50. Many countries are rich in[a] provisions[b] which nature freely[c] produces[d] without the assistance[e] of man, in sound[f] and flavoury[g] fruit, in plants, roots[h], and in animals which always find their food[i] in plenty.[j]

51. He who in society makes greater claims[a] than he ought[b], is wanting in modesty[c]; and he who mixes with[d] or steals[e] into a society to[f] which he does not belong[g], is intrusive.[h]

52. Do not meddle[a] with[b] the affairs[c] of other people.

53. History has preserved[a] us several notices[b] concerning[c] the introduction[d] of silk-weaving[e] into Italy during the Crusades.[f]

54. King Roger the Second of Sicily having, in 1148, conquered[a] Corinth, Thebes[b], and Athens[c], conducted the Greek artificers[d] to his Capital[e] of Palermo, and had[f] instruction given[g] by them to his subjects[h] in the weaving of silk.

55. Human beings who have got[a] among[b] animals, have lost not only speech itself, but also partially[c] the capacity[d] for it.[e]

---

49. [a] Uebung. [b] vollkommen. [c] an. [d] Leib, *m.* [e] Seele, *f.*

50. [a] an. [b] Nahrungsmittel, *n.* [c] freiwillig. [d] hervorbringen. [e] Zuthun, *n.* [f] geſund. [g] wohlſchmeckend. [h] Wurzel *f.* [i] Futter, *n.* [j] vollauf in plenty.

51. [a] Anſpruch. [b] ſollen. [c] wanting in modesty unbeſcheiden. [d] ſich miſchen. [e] ſchleichen. [f] in. [g] gehören. [h] zudringlich.

52. [a] ſich miſchen. [b] in. [c] Angelegenheit.

53. [a] erhalten. [b] Nachricht. [c] über. [d] Einführung. [e] Seidenweberei. [f] Kreuzzug.

54. [a] erobern. [b] Theben. [c] Athen. [d] Künſtler. [e] Hauptſtadt, *f.* [f] laſſen. [g] Unterricht ertheilen. [h] Unterthan, *m.* (*pl.*—en).

55. [a] fallen or gerathen. [b] unter. [c] zum Theil. [d] Fähigkeit. [e] dazu.

56. Under the animating[a] sound[b] of song[c] brave warriors[d] have often rushed[e] into battle.[f]

57. Among[a] the cherished plans[b] of Schiller was also a journey to the sea shore[c], which he had never seen, but for[d] which he always[e] had a great longing.[f]

58. Condors[a] are found throughout[b] the whole range[c] of the Cordilleras, along[d] the south-west[e] coast[f] of South America, from the Straits[g] of Magellan to[h] the Rio Negro.

59. Their habitations are almost invariably[a] on overhanging[b] ledges[c] of high and perpendicular[d] cliffs.[e]

60. The young ones cannot use their wings[a] for[b] flight[c] until[d] many months after[e] they are hatched[f], being covered[g], during that time, with only a blackish[h] down[i], like[j] that of a gosling.

61. Their food consists[a] of[b] the carcasses[c] of deer[d], cattle[e], and other animals.

XIX. On Conjunctions.

1. I always had the fault of not being able[a] to keep silence[b] when[c] I saw an injustice.[d]

---

56. [a] begeiſtern. [b] Ruf. [c] Geſang, *m.* [d] Streiter. [e] ſich ſtürzen. [f] der Kampf.

57. [a] unter. [b] Lieblingsplan, *n.* (*pl.*—pläne). [c] Meer, *n.* [d] zu. [e] von jeher. [f] Sehnſucht, *f.*

58. [a] Condor, *m.* (*pl.*—e). [b] auf. [c] Kette, *f.* [d] längs. [e] ſüdweſtlich. [f] Küſte, *f.* [g] Meerenge, *f.* Sing. [h] bis zu.

59. [a] *say*, without exception Ausnahme. [b] überhangen. [c] Felſenrand, *m.* (*pl.*—ränder). [d] ſenkrecht. [e] Klippe, *f.*

60. [a] Flügel, *m.* [b] zu. [c] das Fliegen. [d] bis. [e] nachdem. [f] ausbrüten. [g] bedecken. [h] ſchwärzlich. [i] Flaumfeder, *f.*, in pl. [j] gleich.

61. [a] beſtehen. [b] in. [c] Leichnam, *m.* (*pl.*—e). [d] Reh, *n.* (*pl.*—e). [e] Rind, *n.* (*pl.*—er), in plural.

1. [a] *say*, that it was impossible for me. [b] ſchweigen. [c] *when*, meaning *whenever*, is wenn. [d] Unrecht.

2. Solon did not[a] flatter[b] Crœsus at all[a], but[c] told the truth.

3. Man is not a being[a] belonging[b] to this or that country, but one[c] belonging to the whole earth; and he is not a being merely comprehending[d] the earth, but one embracing[e] the whole universe.[f]

4. As often as[a] you feel yourself stronger[b] in your perceptions[c] than in the faculty of expressing them, then boldly[d] believe that your mind is lazy[e], and will not produce all it possesses.

5. The prophets[a] existed[b] in a spiritual[c] atmosphere[d] as[e] their proper[f] element[g], to[h] which others raise[i] themselves only in hours of exaltation.[j]

6. The refined taste[a] of man has, at[b] all times, acknowledged[c] the rose to be[d] one of the most beautiful productions of nature.[e]

7. Sir Francis Bacon has finely[a] described[b] some advantages[c], or as[d] he calls[e] them, fruits of friendship.

---

2. [a] keineswegeſ. [b] ſchmeicheln, Dat. [c] *but*, when denying a preceding negative expression, is ſondern.

3. [a] Weſen. [b] angehören, *say*, which belongs. [c] *say*, a being. [d] umfaſſen. [e] begreifen, and treat the Participles as Adjectives to *being*. [f] Weltall.

4. [a] ſo oft. [b] mächtig. [c] Empfindung. [d] kühn. [e] faul.

5. [a] Prophet. [b] wandeln. [c] geiſtig. [d] Aether, *m.* [e] *as*, implying *identity* is als. [f] eigenthümlich. [g] Lebenselement, *n.* [h] zu. [i] erheben. [j] Weihe, *f.*

6. [a] Schönheitsſinn, *m.* [b] in. [c] anerkennen. [d] *say*, as. [e] Naturerzeugniß, *n.*

7. [a] ſinnig. [b] beſchreiben. [c] Vortheil, *m.* [d] *as*, implying *likeness*, is wie. [e] nennen.

8. The whole appearance[a] of Blücher bore[b] the stamp[c] of a hero[d], who could command[e] as well as[f] fight.

9. Men even[a] bear the hard yoke[b] of bondage[c] and slavery[d] before[e] they leave the paternal[f] soil.[g]

10. In the same way[a] as[b] they say that economy[c] is the greatest revenue[d] in reference to[e] our fortune[f], so one can also say, that humility is the same[g] to[h] the tranquillity of our mind.[i]

11. Widely different as[a] were Arnold's juvenile compositions[b] in many points[c] from those of his after[d] life[e], yet[f] it is interesting[g] to observe in them the materials[h] for his future[i] great historical works.

12. The example[a] of those who[b] are born deaf and dumb proves[c], in how small a degree[d] man can acquire[e] rational[f] notions[g], even[h] in the midst of[i] men, without the assistance of speech, and in what brutish[j] savageness[k] all his impulses[l] remain.[m]

---

8. [a] Anſehen. [b] *say*, bore. [c] Gepräge, *n.* [d] Kriegsheld (G.—en). [e] gebieten. [f] wie, and treat *who (could) command* and *fight* as Participles of *to command* and *fight*, and make them agree with *hero*.

9. [a] ſogar or eher. [b] Joch, *n.* [c] Leibeigenſchaft. [d] Knechtſchaft. [e] ehe. [f] väterlich. [g] Boden, *m.*

10. [a] eben ſo. [b] wie. [c] Sparſamkeit. [d] Einkommen. [e] in Abſicht. [f] Vermögen. [g] *say*, it. [h] für. [i] *say*, our mind-tranquillity.

11. [a] ſo verſchieden auch, and mark, this is a relative expression, as if it were said, *however different*. [b] Jugendarbeit, *f.* [c] Hinſicht, sing. [d] vorgerückt. [e] Alter, *n.* [f] doch, this must stand after *Verb* and *Nominative*, which must lead. [g] unterhaltend. [h] Stoff, *m.*, sing. [i] ſpäter.

12. [a] Beiſpiel, *n.* [b] *say*, of the deaf and dumb born. [c] zeigen. [d] wie wenig. [e] gelangen zu. [f] vernünftig. [g] Begriff. [h] ſogar. [i] unter. [j] thieriſch. [k] Wildheit. [l] Trieb. [m] bleiben.

13. These solemnities[a] seemed the[b] more dignified[c], as[d] they vividly[e] recalled[f] the olden time, and what had come down to[g] us from it.[h]

14. The more[a] humility reminds[b] us who we are, and how much we still want[c], the more[d] she encourages[e] us to apply ourselves[f] to[g] our improvement.[h]

15. However much[a] the proud man is pleased[b] with[c] his arrogance[d], still[e], he hates it in others.

16. However necessary[a] it is that he who wishes impressively[b] to inculcate[c] a great truth should[d] ponder over[e] it[f], should well arrange[g] his materials[h], and treat[i] his subject[j] with all possible zeal[k], still this is not yet[l] the real[m] method[n] by which[o] one can arrive[p] at[q] a vigorous[r] representation[s] of one's ideas.

17. The miser[a] can return[b] to[c] the golden mean[d] as soon as[e] he likes; but for the spendthrift it becomes more and more[f] difficult, the farther[g] he recedes[h] from it.[i]

18. Many a rule[a] is the[b] oftener neglected[c] the[d] oftener one hears it repeated.

---

13. [a] Feierlichkeit. [b] um ſo, with comparative. [c] würdig. [d] als. [e] lebhaft. [f] vergegenwärtigen. [g] daher. [h] auf.

14. [a] je mehr *quanto magis*, therefore relative. [b] erinnern. [c] *say*, is wanting to us fehlen. [d] deſto mehr *eo magis*, therefore demonstrative. [e] ermuntern. [f] arbeiten. [g] an. [h] Verbeſſerung.

15. [a] ſo ſehr auch; *however* is ſo—auch; *much*, ſehr is inserted. [b] *say*, pleases himself. [c] in. [d] Hochmuth, *m.* [e] doch, cf. Note 11 [f].

16. [a] nöthig, cf. 15 [a]. [b] mächtig. [c] vortragen. [d] express by the Subjunctive Present of the Verbs following. [e] überdenken. [f] *say*, the same. [g] ordnen. [h] Stoff, *m.* sing. [i] behandeln. [j] Gegenſtand. [k] Wärme. [l] noch nicht. [m] eigentlich. [n] Weg, *m.* [o] worauf. [p] gelangen. [q] zu. [r] kräftig. [s] Darſtellung.

17. [a] Geizig. [b] zurückkehren. [c] auf. [d] Mittelſtraße, *f.* [e] ſobald. [f] immer mehr. [g] je weiter. [h] ſich entfernen. [i] davon.

18. [a] Regel, *f.* [b] deſto. [c] vernachläßigen. [d] je.

19. I am not the less[a] determined[b] to part[c], because I clearly[d] know[e] what I part from.[f]

20. On a Christmas eve[a] my mother crowned[b] all her favours[c] by[d] having[e] a puppet-show[f] exhibited[g] to us.

21. This transition[a] from a[b] domestic[c] education[d] to[e] the instruction[f] at a public school was connected with[g] some[h] unpleasantness[i], for[j] by[k] throwing[l] children hitherto[m] kept carefully[n] by themselves[o] at home, among[p] a rude mass of young urchins[q], they had, quite unexpectedly[r], to suffer everything from vulgarity[s], malice[t], nay baseness[u], because they lacked[v] every[w] weapon and every capacity[x] of defending themselves[y] against them.[z]

22. After[a] the Bible, the catechism[b], and books of edification[c] of every kind, the works of classical literature were multiplied[d] by printing[e], so that every man now was able to attain to[f] a higher cultivation of the mind.[g]

23. Would not too[a] great a heat or cold hurt[b] or kill[c] us, if[d] the sensation[e] of pain did not, as it were[f], inform[g] us of it.[h]

---

19. [a] *say*, on that account not less darum minder nicht. [b] entſchloſſen. [c] ſcheiden. [d] deutlich. [e] *say*, know it. [f] wovon.

20. [a] Weihnachtsabend. [b] die Krone aufſetzen. [c] Wohlthat. [d] indem. [e] laſſen. [f] Puppenſpiel, *n.* [g] vorſtellen.

21. [a] Uebergang. [b] *say*, the. [c] häuslich. [d] Erziehung. [e] zu. [f] Unterricht, *m.* [g] *say*, had. [h] manch. [i] take the neuter of the Adj. unangenehm. [j] denn. [k] indem. [l] hinunterſtoßen. [m] bisher. [n] abgeſondert. [o] ſorgfältig. [p] unter. [q] Geſchöpf, *n.* [r] unerwartet. [s] das Gemeine. [t] das Schlechte. [u] das Niederträchtige. [v] ermangeln, with Gen. [w] all. [x] Fähigkeit. [y] ſich ſchützen. [z] take an Adverb.

22. [a] nächſt. [b] Catechismus, *m.* [c] Erbauungsbuch. [d] vervielfältigen. [e] Druck, *m.* [f] theilhaftig werden, with Gen. [g] Geiſtesbildung.

23. [a] allzu. [b] ſchädlich werden. [c] tödtlich werden. [d] wenn or wofern. [e] Empfindung. [f] gleichſam. [g] benachrichtigen von. [h] take an Adverb.

24. Whence[a] could we know[b] if a dangerous inflammation[c] was forming[d] inside us[e], unless[f] pain revealed[g] it to us?

25. He will not guess[a] it unless[b] he be more shrewd[c] than all other men.

26. Since[a] we must associate[b] with human beings, it is our duty[c] not to give them, knowingly[d], even the slightest[e] ground[f] for forming a bad opinion[g] concerning[h] us.

27. Humility elevates[a] us by[b] humbling[c] us, and pride humbles us by elevating us.

28. New enjoyments[a] with which the barbarian[b] gets acquainted[c], create[d] in him[e] new wants[f], which he can only satisfy[g] by[h] abandoning[i] his manner of living.[j]

29. The kindness[a] of the proud man towards[b] the humble[c] one is a sure proof[d] that humility must be something excellent[e], since[f] it is even sought after[g] by its own enemy; and that pride must be something unnatural[h], since its owner[i] can bear in others anything but his own self.[j]

30. I once read a remark[a] which contains the reason[b] why[c] most men are proud and the fewest humble.

---

24. [a] woher. [b] *say*, know it. [c] *say*, in our interior das Innere. [d] Entzündung. [e] entstehen, take the Subjunctive. [f] wofern nicht, and place *pain* between them. [g] offenbaren.

25. [a] errathen. [b] *say*, he be then; and *be* express by the Subjunctive of *must*, with the Infinitive. [c] klug.

26. [a] the moral and logical reason can be expressed either by weil or da. [b] umgehen. [c] ſollen. [d] wiſſentlich. [e] entfernt. [f] Gelegenheit. [g] ſchlecht denken. [h] von.

27. [a] erhöhen. [b] *by* implying means, is indem. [c] erniedrigen.

28. [a] Genuß. [b] Barbar. [c] kennen lernen. [d] ſchaffen. [e] *say*, to him. [f] Bedürfniß, *n.* [g] befriedigen. [h] comp. 27 [b]. [i] aufgeben. [j] Lebensweiſe, *f.*

29. [a] Liebe. [b] zu. [c] Demüthig. [d] Beweis. [e] Vortrefflich. [f] cf. 26 [a]. [g] ſuchen. [h] Unnatürlich. [i] Beſitzer. [j] *say*, it, namely *pride*.

30. [a] Bemerkung. [b] Grund, *m.* [c] warum.

31. We are perfectly content with the feeling that we love humility in others, as[a] if we, in consequence of this[b], were possessed of[c] this virtue ourselves; and because we hate pride in others, we behave[d] as if we hated it in ourselves too.

32. He was silent, although[a] he ought to have spoken.

33. The iron[a] must be struck[b] while[c] it is hot.[d]

34. Although[a] the art of printing books cannot render[b] literary productions[c] imperishable, still[d] the destruction[e] of a whole work is no longer easily imaginable.[f]

35. Although our future is as gloomy[a] as the dark night, still our just cause is brightly shining.[b]

36. Although the old books are not at hand[a], yet they are inscribed[b] in our hearts.

37. That this wholesome[a] invention has also had injurious[b], nay, terrible[c] consequences, whom could this escape[d], and who would conceal[e] it?

---

31. [a] als. [b] deßhalb. [c] to be possessed of beſitzen. [d] ſich gehaben.

32. [a] da doch, and the Nominative must be placed between them.

33. [a] Eiſen, *n.* [b] ſchmieden. [c] während, or weil, which latter is used only in proverbial and antiquated phrases. [d] glühend.

34. [a] *although* is either *a*) wenn gleich, *b*) wenn auch, *c*) wenn ſchon, *d*) wie wohl, or *e*) obwohl, *f*) obgleich, *g*) obſchon, *h*) obzwar, *i*) ob auch; and mark, those not compounded with wohl can be separated in the sentence by a Pronoun, or some other small phrase, on which a stress lies: it is to be observed, besides, that wenn and ob can be altogether omitted, but then the Verb must lead. [b] to render imperishable Unvergänglichkeit geben. [c] Schrift. [d] the chief sentence preceded by the adverbial sentence, must be headed by a Verb. [e] Untergang. [f] denkbar.

35. [a] düſter. [b] *to shine brightly* ſcheinen.

36. [a] zur Hand. [b] einſchreiben.

37. [a] heilſam. [b] verderblich. [c] ſchrecklich. [d] entgehen, Dat. [e] verſchweigen

38. Where there are high[a] mountains, there large rivers are usually[b] found.

39. The flying[a] enemy often sets fire to[b] a city that[c] the pursuers[d] may be detained.[e]

40. Since[a] the Turks conquered[b] Constantinople[c], civilisation[d] has disappeared[e] more and more[f] in[g] the East.[h]

41. Since the art of printing was invented, one can get at[a] books for a much smaller sum[b] than formerly, when[c], in consequence[d] of the great trouble which copying[e] caused[f], books were excessively[g] dear.

42. When[a] one rope[b] is torn[c] another will be[d] ready.[e]

43. When[a] once the historian[b] arises[c] who understands how to demonstrate[d] philosophically the influence[e] which the propagation[f] of some[g] plants have had on the fate[h] of nations and states; what place[i] will the history of the sugar cane[j] obtain[k] in his work?

---

38. [a] groß. [b] gewöhnlich.

39. [a] flüchtig. [b] anzünden. [c] damit. [d] Verfolger. [e] aufhalten.

40. [a] seitdem. [b] erobern. [c] Constantinopel. [d] Bildung. [e] verschwinden. [f] immer mehr. [g] aus. [h] Morgenland, *n.*

41. [a] kommen zu. [b] *say*, much cheaper. [c] da or wo. [d] Folge, *f.* [e] abschreiben. [f] kosten. [g] überaus.

42. [a] *when*, if referring to the future, is wenn; it can be omitted, but then the Verb must lead. [b] Strick, *m.* [c] reißen. [d] express this by the Present with schon. [e] in Bereitschaft.

43. [a] omit *when*. [b] Geschichtschreiber. [c] aufstehen. [d] entwickeln. [e] *say*, which influence. [f] Verbreitung. [g] einzeln. [h] Schicksal, *n.* [i] Raum, *m.* [j] Zuckerrohr, *n.* [k] einnehmen.

XX. On Punctuation.

1. The hare[a] is aware[b] that the dog pursues[c] him.

2. In order the better to find the game[a] the huntsman takes the hound[b] with him.

3. Is that game[a] which is the largest also the most dangerous?

4. The skin[a] of the otter[b] which lives near[c] rivers is much esteemed.[d]

5. This is the boy who[a], when I asked[b] him the name of the street, was so unkind[c] as to refuse[d] to tell it to me.

6. He has always recommended[a] us to be truthful[b]; however[c], I cannot say[d] that we always tried[e] to tell the whole[f] truth.

7. Incredulous[a] is he[b] who, in spite[c] of sufficient[d] rea-

---

1. [a] Haſe, *m.* [b] wiſſen, and mark, at the end of every sentence a comma is put in German; therefore, a comma must stand before *that*, daß. [c] verfolgen.

2. [a] Wild, *n.* [b] Jagdhund, *m.*

3. [a] every relative sentence is included by commas in German; so that they must be placed before *which*, and after *largest*.

4. [a] Fell, *n.* [b] Otter, *f.* [c] an. [d] ſchätzen.

5. [a] after *boy* must stand a comma, because *who* begins a relative sentence; as however *when* begins another inserted relative sentence, a comma must also stand after *who*. [b] fragen nach. [c] *unkind* finishes the relative sentence, headed by *who*, and must have a comma after it. [d] ſich weigern, after which, as a shortened sentence, a comma must follow.

6. [a] empfehlen, and put a comma after *us*. [b] die Wahrheit lieben, and mark, before adversative sentences, headed by aber, indeſſen, ſondern, a semicolon is put in German. [c] after *however*, which is followed in English by a comma, none is put in German. [d] cf. 1[b]. [e] ſich beſtreben. [f] völlig.

7. [a] ungläubig. [b] before *who* stands a comma; and mark, adverbial expressions, such as *in spite of sufficient reasons*, are *not* included in commas. [c] trotz. [d] hinreichend.

sons, still[e] does not believe; credulous[f] he who is inclined[g] to believe without sufficient reasons; superstitious[h] he, who believes things which can not possibly[i] be true.

8. He to whom the world does not immediately reveal[a] in what a relation[b] it stands to him[c], who is not told by his own heart what he owes[d] to himself and others[e], will hardly[f] learn it from[g] books[h] which, indeed[i], are only fit[j] to give names to our errors.[k]

9. As our energies[a] are daily exhausted[b] by work[c] and bodily exercise[d]; and[e], as food[f] alone is not sufficient[g] to replace[h] them, rest[i] must accomplish[j] what food leaves[k] half done.[l]

10. It is sweet to take revenge[a] but it is far[b] sweeter to pardon.[c]

11. I confess I should have liked to travel with them; however[a], business[b] comes before[c] pleasure.

---

[e] dennoch, [f] leichtgläubig. [g] geneigt. [h] abergläubig. [i] unmöglich, and mark, when co-ordinate sentences form a period, they are divided by a semicolon; therefore, one must stand here before *credulous*, and another before *superstitious*.

8. [a] offenbaren. [b] Verhältniß, *n.* [c] put a semicolon. [d] ſchuldig ſein. [e] here must stand a colon, which announces the beginning of the chief sentence in German. [f] ſchwerlich. [g] aus. [h] put a comma before *which*, but none before and after *indeed*. [i] eigentlich. [j] geſchickt. [k] Irrthum, *m.*

9. [a] Kraft, *f.* [b] erſchöpfen. [c] Arbeit, *f.* [d] Bewegung, and here must stand a semicolon. [e] überdieß. [f] Nahrung. [g] zureichen to be sufficient. [h] erſetzen, and after *then* must stand the colon, because *rest* begins the chief sentence. [i] Ruhe, *f.* [j] vollenden. [k] laſſen. [l] unvollkommen.

10. [a] ſich rächen, and before *but* must the semicolon be placed. [b] bei weitem. [c] verzeihen.

11. [a] indeſſen, before which must stand the semicolon, but no comma must follow. [b] Geſchäft, *n.* (*pl.*—e), take the pl. [c] gehen vor.

12. In parting[a] he said, farewell[b], write often, and believe that I shall often and often think of[c] you.

13. The proverb[a] says[b], the apple does not fall far[c] from the tree.

14. The most important[a] domestic animals[b] are[c] the dog, the cat, the horse, the goat, etc.[d]

15. As the conduct[a] of the minister towards[b] him did not change[c] in proportion to[d] the rapid[e] progress[f] which he made in the favour[g] of the prince[h], on the contrary[i] often visibly[k] enough seemed arranged[l] for the purpose[m] of humbling[n] his rising[o] pride[p] by a holesome[q] remembrance[r] of[s] his origin[t], this[u] forced[v] and contradictory[w] situation[x] became to him at last so troublesome, that he formed[y] a serious[z] plan[a] to finish[b] it at once[c] by the ruin[d] of his rival.[e]

---

12. [a] ſcheiden, introduced by indem. [b] lebewohl, before which must stand a colon, which is always used when the following words of another speaker are directly quoted. [c] an.

13. [a] Sprichwort, *n.* [b] cf. 12 [b]. [c] weit.

14. [a] wichtig. [b] Hausthier, *n.* (*pl.*—e). [c] here must stand a colon, which is put before things enumerated. [d] this means in German, und ſo weiter, or, abbreviated, u. ſ. w.

15. [a] Benehmen, *n.* [b] gegen, Acc. [c] ſich ändern. [d] im Verhältniß zu. [e] raſch. [f] Fortſchritt, *m.*, take pl. [g] Gunſt, *f.* [h] mark. the different parts of the Subordinate Clause of a Period are divided by semicolons. Therefore, before *on the* im stands a semicolon. [i] Gegentheil, *n.* [k] ſichtbar. [l] eingerichtet. [m] darauf. [n] say, *to humble*, niederſchlagen, demüthigen. [o] aufſteigend. [p] Stolz, *m.* [q] heilſam. [r] Rückerinnerung. [s] an, Acc. [t] Urſprung, *m.* [u] mark, when the subordinate part of a Period contains two or more or more clauses, they are divided from the chief part following by a colon. Therefore, you must put a colon before the chief part, beginning with *this*. [v] gezwungen. [w] widerſprechend. [x] Stellung, Zuſtand, *m.* [y] entwerfen. [z] ernſtlich. [a] Plan, *m.* [b] ein Ende machen, with Dat. [c] auf einmal. [d] Sturz, *m.* [e] Nebenbuhler, *m.*

MATERIALS

FOR

TRANSLATING FROM ENGLISH INTO GERMAN.

PART II.

TRANSLATION OF CONNECTED PIECES.

I. The Desolation[1] of Tyranny.[2]

The Khaleefeh[3] Abd El-Melik, was, in the beginning[4] of his reign[5], an unjust monarch. Being one night[6] unable to sleep, he called for[7] a person[8] to tell[9] him a story for[10] his amusement. "O Prince of the faithful[11]," said the man thus bidden[12], "there was[13] an owl[14] in El-Mósil, and an owl in El-Basrah; and the owl of El-Mósil demanded in marriage[15], for her son, the daughter of the owl of El-Basrah; but the owl of

---

[1] Verwüſtung. [2] Tyrannei. [3] Kalif. [4] Anfang, which must be masculine, because it is derived from a Verb, fangen, without addition to the root. [5] Regierung. [6] in imitation of eines Tages, eines Morgens, eines Abends, it is also said, eines Nachts, although Nacht is feminine. [7] rufen laſſen. [8] jemand. [9] *say*, who was to tell, and express *I am to* by ſollen. [10] zu. [11] gläubig. [12] *to bid* is heißen or befehlen, but both are construed with the Dative of the *person*; therefore, *a man is bidden* is einem Manne wird geheißen or befohlen; and *bidden* geheißen or befohlen can be an Adjective to a *thing*, but not to a *person*: you must then translate *the man to whom such* (ſolches) *was bidden*. [13] *there is* is es giebt, when implying *there is always existing*, but when meaning *is living*, it is es iſt. [14] Eule, *f.* [15] zur Ehe verlangen.

El-Basrah said, 'I will not, unless[16] thou give me, as her dowry[17], a hundred desolate[18] farms.[19]' 'That I cannot do,' said the owl of El-Mósil, 'at present; but if our sovereign[20] (may God, whose name be exalted[21], preserve[22] him!) live[23] one year, I will give thee what thou desirest.[24]'" This simple fable sufficed[25] to rouse[26] the prince from his apathy[27], and he thenceforward[28] applied himself[29] to fulfil[30] the duties of his station.[31] — *Lane, notes to Arabian Nights.* (From C. Knight's Half Hours with the Best Authors.)

II. Perfection.[1]

A friend called on[2] Michael Angelo, who was finishing[3] a statue[4]: some[5] time afterwards[6] he called again[7]; the sculptor[8] was still at[9] his work. His friend, looking at[10] the figure[11], exclaimed[12], "You have been idle[13] since I saw[14] you last.[15]" "By no means[16],"

---

[16] denn, which must be placed after *me*, and *give* must stand in the Subjunctive. [17] Mitgift, which is fem., because derived from a Verb geben, with the addition of t. [18] verwüstet. [19] Pachthof, *m.*, the plural is Pachthöfe, because monosyllables masc. have in plural the termination e, and a modification of the vowel. [20] Fürst, declined as an Adjective, *the first*. [21] verherrlichen. [22] erhalten. [23] take Indicative. [24] begehren. [25] hinreichen. [26] erwecken aus. [27] Gefühllosigkeit. [28] von jetzt an. [29] sich befleißen. [30] erfüllen. [31] Stellung.

[1] Vollkommenheit. [2] besuchen, with Acc., or einen Besuch abstatten with the Dat. [3] die letzte Feile geben, with the Dat. [4] Bildsäule, *f.* [5] einig. [6] nachher, namely, in reference to the visit, but afterwards in reference to the *present time* is hernach; as jetzt wollen wir lesen, und hernach plaudern now we will read, and afterwards talk. [7] den Besuch wiederholen. [8] Bildhauer. [9] bei or an. [10] to look at betrachten. [11] Figur, the gender of which can be ascertained from the Latin or French. [12] ausrufen. [13] müßig. [14] take the Perfect Tense. [15] zuletzt. [16] keineswegs.

replied the sculptor; "I have retouched[17] this part, and polished[18] that: I have softened[19] this feature[20], and brought out[21] this muscle[22]; I have given more expression to this lip, and more energy[23] to this limb.[24]" "Well, well," said his friend, "but all these[25] are trifles.[26]" "It may be so," replied Angelo, "but recollect[27] that trifles make[28] perfection, and that perfection is no trifle." — *Colton's Lacon.* (From the Half Hours.)

III. Vicar of Wakefield.

Johnson had now become one[1] of[2] Goldsmith's best friends and advisers.[3] He knew all the[4] weak points[5] of his character[6], but he knew also his merits[7]; and while[8] he would[9] rebuke[10] him like a child, and rail[11] at[12] his errors[13] and follies[14], he would[15] suffer[16] no one else to undervalue[17] him. Goldsmith knew the soundness[18] of his judgment[19] and his practical[20] benevolence[21], and often sought his counsel and aid[22] amid[23]

---

[17] mit dem Meißel wieder berühren. [18] glätten. [19] mildern. [20] Zug. [21] hervorheben. [22] Muskel, *m.* [23] Kraftfülle, which is fem., because formed from an Adjective with the addition of e, and implying the abstract quality of the Adjective. [24] Glied, *n.* [25] take the sing. neuter, because this subject refers only in general to the fore-mentioned things; however, the Verb *are* must stand in the plural. [26] Kleinigkeit. [27] bedenken. [28] ausmachen.

[1] Mark, *one* is here used Substantively, and not as an Adjective. [2] *of* after number is von. [3] Rathgeber. [4] *the* after *all* is not translated. [5] Seite, *f.* [6] Character, *m.* [7] Vorzug. [8] während. [9] *would* meaning as much as *was accustomed* is expressed by pflegen. [10] ausschelten. [11] schmähen. [12] über. [13] Fehler, *m.* [14] Thorheit. [15] *would*, when adequate to *wished*, is rendered by wollen. [16] gestatten, with Dat. [17] gering denken von. [18] Tüchtigkeit. [19] Urtheil, *n.* [20] thätig. [21] Wohlwollen, which is neuter, because the second compound wollen, as an Infinitive, is neuter. [22] Beistand. [23] in.

the difficulties[24] into which his heedlessness[25] was continually[26] plunging[27] him. "I received one morning," says Johnson, "a message[28] from poor[29] Goldsmith, that he was[30] in great distress[31], and, as[32] it was[33] not in his power to come to me, begging[34] that I would[35] come to him as soon as possible. I sent him a guinea, and promised to come to him directly. I accordingly[36] went as soon as I was dressed[37], and found that his landlady[38] had arrested[39] him for[40] his rent[41], at which[42] he was in a violent[43] passion.[44] I perceived that he had already changed[45] my guinea, and had a bottle of Madeira[46] and a glass before him.[47] I put[48] the cork[49] into the bottle, desired he would be calm[50], and began to talk to[51] him of[52] the means[53] by which he might[54] be extricated.[55] He then told me he had a novel[56] ready[57] for the press[58], which he produced[59] to me. I looked into it[60], and saw its merit[61], told the landlady I should soon return[62], and having gone to a bookseller, sold it for sixty pounds. I brought Goldsmith the money, and he discharged[63] his rent, not without rating[64] his landlady in a high[65] tone[66] for having

---

[24] Schwierigkeit. [25] Unbesonnenheit. [26] stets. [27] gerathen lassen. [28] Mittheilung. [29] before *poor* the Definite Article must be placed in German, and combined with the Preposition *from* in one word. [30] Subjunctive Present. [31] Noth, *f.* [32] da. [33] es steht in meiner Macht it is in my power. [34] *say*, he begged. [35] mögen. [36] demgemäß. [37] ankleiden. [38] Wirthin. [39] mit Arrest belegen. [40] wegen. [41] Miethe, *f.* [42] *say*, whereat; at über. [43] heftig. [44] Zorn, *m.* [45] wechseln. [46] Madera. [47] reflective, because it refers to the same person. [48] stecken. [49] Pfropfen, *m.* [50] sich beruhigen. [51] mit. [52] über. [53] Mittel, *n.* [54] können. [55] herausbelfen, Dat. [56] Roman, *m.* [57] bereit. [58] Druck, *m.* [59] verlegen. [60] hineinblicken. [61] Werth, *m.* [62] zurück kommen. [63] bezahlen. [64] einen Verweis geben. [65] scharf. [66] Ton, *m.*

used[67] him so ill." The novel in question[68] was the "Vicar[69] of Wakefield;" the bookseller to whom Johnson sold it was Francis Newbery, nephew to[70] John. Strange as it may seem, this captivating[71] work, which has obtained[72] and preserved[73] an almost unrivalled[74] popularity[75] in various[76] languages, was so little appreciated[77] by the bookseller, that he kept it by him[78] for nearly two years! — *Washington Irving's Life of Goldsmith.*

IV. A Tale[1] of Terror.[2]

I was once travelling in Calabria[3], a land of wicked[4] people, who, I[5] believe, hate every one, and particularly the French. The reason[6] why[7] would take[8] long[9] to tell[10] you, suffice[11] it to say, that they mortally[12] hate us, so that one gets on[13] very badly[14] when one falls into their hands. I had for[15] a companion[16] a young man, with a face, my faith[17], like[18] the gentleman that we saw at[19] Rincy; you remember[20]? and better still perhaps. I don't say so[21] to interest[22] you, but because it is a fact.[23] In these mountains the roads are pre-

---

[67] behandeln. [68] in Rede ſtehend. [69] Landprediger. [70] *say*, of. [71] anziehend. [72] ſich erwerben. [73] ſich erhalten. [74] unvergleichlich. [75] Gunſt, derived from gönnen to favour. [76] verſchieden. [77] würdigen. [78] reflective.

[1] Geſchichte, from geſchehen, with the termination te. [2] *say*, terrible ſchrecklich. [3] Calabrien, *n.* [4] böſe. [5] *say*, as I believe. [6] Grund, *m.* [7] weßhalb. [8] erfordern. [9] *say*, much time. [10] erklären, and construe thus *it would require much time to tell you the reason why.* [11] genügen. [12] tödtlich. [13] fahren. [14] ſchlimm. [15] zu, with the Definite Article. [16] Gefährte, the feminine of which is Gefährtin. [17] meiner Treu. [18] gleich, with Dat. [19] bei. [20] ſich erinnern, and *say*, remember you. [21] *say*, it. [22] *say*, to excite your interest; erregen to excite; Theilnahme interest. [23] Thatſache, *f.*

cipices[24]; our horses got on[25] with much difficulty; my companion went first[26]; a path[27] which appeared to him shorter and more practicable[28] led[29] us astray.[30] It was my fault. Ought I to have trusted[31] to a head[32] only twenty years old? Whilst[33] daylight[34] lasted[35], we tried to find our way through the wood, but the more[36] we tried, the more[37] bewildered[38] we became; and it was pitch dark[39] when[40] we arrived at[41] a very blacklooking[42] house. We entered[43], not without fear, but what could we do?

We found a whole family of colliers[44] at[45] table[46]; they immediately[47] invited[48] us to join[49] them; my young man did not wait[50] to be pressed[51]: there we were eating and drinking; he at least, for I was examining[52] the place[53] and the appearance[54] of our hosts.[55] Our hosts had quite the look[56] of colliers, but the house you would have taken[57] for an arsenal[58]; there was nothing but guns[59], pistols, swords[60], knives, and cutlasses.[61] Everything displeased[62] me, and I saw very well that I displeased them. My companion, on[63] the contrary[64], was quite one of the family; he laughed and

---

[24] Abgrund. [25] von der Stelle kommen. [26] fuerſt. [27] Pfad, *m.* [28] gangbar. [29] führen. [30] irre. [31] trauen, and construe *had I ought to trust.* [32] Kopf, *m.* [33] ſo lang. [34] Tageslicht, *n.* [35] währen. [36] quanto magis je mehr. [37] tanto magis um ſo mehr or deſto mehr. [38] verwirrt. [39] ſtockfinſter. [40] als.. [41] bei. [42] ausſehen to look. [43] eintreten. [44] Köhler. [45] bei. [46] Tiſch, *m.* [47] ſogleich. [48] einladen. [49] ſich ſetzen zu. [50] warten. [51] *say*, to allow himself to be long pressed ſich lange nöthigen laſſen. [52] ſich (Dat.) genau betrachten. [53] Ort, *m.* [54] Benehmen. [55] host Wirth, *m.*, *pl.* Wirthsleute. [56] Anſehen. [57] halten. [58] Zeughaus, *n.* [59] Flinte, *f.* [60] Schwert, *n.* [61] Hirſchfänger, lit. stag-catchers. [62] mißfallen, with Dat. [63] in, to be contracted with the following Article. [64] Gegentheil, *n.*

talked with them, and with an imprudence[65] that I ought to have forseen[66] (but to[67] what purpose[68], if it was decreed[69]), he told at once[70] where[71] we came from, where[72] we were going, and that we were Frenchmen. Just[73] imagine[74]! Amongst our most mortal enemies, alone, out of[75] our road, so far[76] from all human succour[77]! and then, to omit[78] nothing that might ruin[79] us, he played the rich man, promised to give the next[80] morning, as a[81] remuneration[82] to these people, and to our guides[83], whatever[84] they wished.

Then he spoke of his portmanteau[85], begging them to take care of[86] it, and put it at the head[87] of his bed: he did not wish, he said[88], for[89] any other pillow.[90] Oh[91], youth[92], youth! you are to be pitied[93]! Cousin[94], one would have thought we carried[95] the crown diamonds.[96] What caused[97] him so much solicitude[98] about[99] this portmanteau, was[100] his mistress's[101] letters. Supper[102] over[103], they left[104] us. Our host slept below[105], we in the upper room[106] where we had

---

[65]Unbedachtſamkeit. [66]vorherſehen. [67]zu. [68]Zweck, *m.* [69]verhängen. [70]auf einmal. [71]where from woher. [72]where, understand *to*, wohin. [73]nur, and place it after the Imperative. [74]ſich denken. [75]von—ab, lit. *from our road off.* [76]weit or fern. [77]Hülfe, from helfen. [78]unterlaſſen. [79]zu Grunde richten. [80]folgend. [81]not translated. [82]Belohnung. [83]Führer. [84]*say*, what they ever was nur. [85]Mantelſack, *m.* [86]in Acht nehmen. [87]Kopfende, *n.* [88]such small inserted sentences are inverted. [89]not to wish for any kein—wünſchen. [90]Kiſſen, *n.* [91]ach. [92]junger Menſch. [93]bedauern. [94]Baſe or Couſine. [95]Subjunctive Imperfect. [96]Krondiamanten. [97]machen. [98]Sorge, *f.* [99]wegen. [100]in German the plural must stand here, since the *subject* is only generally expressed, and the chief saying is contained in the *predicate*. [101]Geliebte. [102]Abendeſſen. [103]vorüber, and say, *when the supper was over*. [104]verlaſſen. [105]unten. [106]Oberzimmer, *n.*

supped.[107] A loft[108] raised[109] some[110] seven or eight feet, which was reached[111] by[112] a ladder[113], was the resting-place[114] that awaited[115] us; a sort[116] of nest, into which we were to introduce[117] ourselves by creeping[118] under joists[119] loaded[120] with provisions[121] for the year. My companion climbed up[122] alone, and, already nearly asleep[123], laid himself down with his head upon the precious[124] portmanteau. Having determined[125] to sit up[126], I made a good fire and seated myself by[127] the side of it. The night, which had been undisturbed[128], being nearly over[129], I began to reassure[130] myself, when[131], about[132] the time that[133] I thought the break of day[134] could not be far off[135], I heard our host and his wife talking and disputing[136] below; and putting[137] my ear to (an Acc.) the chimney[138] which communicated[139] with the one (*say* that) in the lower room, I perfectly distinguished[140] these words spoken[141] by the husband: "Well, let us see, must they both be killed?[142]" To which[143] the wife replied, "Yes;" and I heard no (Nichts) more. How shall I go on?[144] I stood[145]

---

[107] zu Abend eſſen. [108] Boden, *m.* [109] erhöhen. [110] etwa. [111] *say*, to which one came; to come gelangen. [112] mittelſt. [113] Leiter, *f.* [114] Ruheplatz, *m.* [115] erwarten. [116] Art, *f.* [117] ſich einlaſſen. [118] kriechen, and express the Part. by an adverbial sentence led by indem with the Subj. Imperf. [119] Querbalken, *m.* [120] beladen. [121] Lebensmittel, *n.* [122] hinaufklettern. [123] eingeſchlafen. [124] koſtbar. [125] beſchließen. [126] aufbleiben. [127] *say*, near it, or thereat; at an. [128] ungeſtört. [129] *say*, passed vergehen, and express the Participle by an adverbial sentence, led by da. [130] beruhigen. [131] als, after which, the Nominative, when it is a Personal Pronoun, must immediately follow. [132] gegen. [133] da. [134] Tagesanbruch. [135] weit entfernt. [136] ſtreiten. [137] legen. [138] Kamin, *n.* [139] im Zuſammenhang ſtehen. [140] vernehmen. [141] construe the Part. as an Adj. to *words*. [142] abſchlachten. [143] *say*, whereon; on auf. [144] fortfahren. [145] daſtehen.

scarcely breathing[146], my body cold as marble[147]; to have[148] seen me, you could hardly[149] have known[150] if[151] I were alive[152] or dead. Good heavens! when I think of it[153] now! — We two almost without weapons[154], against twelve or fifteen who had so many! and my companion dead[155] with[156] sleep and fatigue[157]! to call[158] him, or make a noise[159], I dared[160] not: to escape[161] alone was impossible; the window was not high, but below were two large dogs howling[162] like wolves. In what an agony[163] I was, imagine[164] if you can. At[165] the end of a long quarter of an hour[166] I heard some one on the stairs, and through the crack[167] of the door, I saw the father, his lamp[168] in one hand, and in the other, one of his large knives. He came up, his wife after him, I was behind the door; he opened it, but before[169] he came in, he put down[170] the lamp which his wife took.[171] He then entered barefoot[172], and from outside[173] the woman said to him in a low[174] voice, shading[175] the light of the lamp with her hand, "Softly[176], go softly." When he got[177] to the ladder, he mounted[178] (it), (*say* with) his knife between his[179] teeth[180], and getting up[181] as high as[182] the bed — the poor young man lying[183] with

---

[146] athmen. [147] Marmor, *m.* [148] *say*, had you. [149] ſchwerlich. [150] wiſſen. [151] ob. [152] am Leben, or lebendig. [153] *say*, thereof; of an. [154] Waffe, *f.* [155] *say*, half dead. [156] vor. [157] Müdigkeit. [158] rufen. [159] Lärm, *m.* [160] wagen. [161] entfliehen. [162] heulen, and say, *which howled.* [163] Seelenangſt, *f.* [164] ſich vorſtellen. [165] an. [166] Viertelſtunde, *f.* [167] Spalte, *f.* [168] *say*, the lamp. [169] ehe. [170] nieder ſetzen. [171] aufnehmen. [172] barfuß. [173] von draußen. [174] *say*, with low leiſe. [175] ſchützen. [176] ſachte. [177] gelangen an. [178] hinaufſteigen. [179] *say*, the. [180] Zahn, *m.* [181] ſteigen, led by indem. [182] *say*, up to the bed bis zu. [183] *say*, whilst the poor, etc.

his throat[184] bare[185], with one hand he took his knife, and with the other, — Oh cousin! — he seized[186] a ham[187] which hung[188] from the ceiling[189], cut a slice[190] from it[191], and retired[192] as he had come. The door was closed[193] again, the lamp disappeared[194], and I was left alone with my reflections.[195] As soon as day[196] appeared, all the family making[197] a great noise came to awaken[198] us as we had requested.[199] They brought us something to eat, and gave us a very clean[200], and a very good breakfast[201], I assure[202] you. Two capons[203] formed[204] part[205] of it[206], of which we must, said our hostess, take away[207] one and eat the other. When I saw them I understood the meaning of those terrible words, "must they both be killed?" and I think[208], cousin, you have enough penetration[209] to guess[210] now what they signified.[211] Oblige[212] me cousin, do not tell this story. In the first place[213], as you see, I do not play a good part[214] in it; next[215], you would spoil[216] it. Stay[217], I do not flatter[218] you, but your face[219] would destroy[220] the effect of my tale.[221] Without boasting[222], I have just[223] the countenance[224] to relate a fearful[225] story: but as for you[226], if you

---

[184]Hals, *m.* [185]entblößt. [186]ergreifen. [187]Schinken, *m.* [188]herabhangen. [189]Decke, *f.* [190]Scheibe, *f.* [191]*say*, thereof. [192]ſich zurückziehen. [193]ſchließen, reflect. [194]verſchwinden. [195]Gedanke, *m.* [196]*say*, the day. [197]*say*, with. [198]wecken. [199]verlangen. [200]reinlich. [201]Frühſtück, *n.* [202]verſichern, *say*, this I assure to you. [203]Kapaun, *m.* [204]bilden. [205]*say*, a part. [206]*say*, thereof. [207]mitnehmen. [208]glauben. [209]Scharfſinn. [210]errathen. [211]bedeuten. [212]verpflichten. [213]erſtens. [214]Rolle, *f.* [215]zweitens. [216]verderben. [217]halten. [218]ſchmeicheln, with Dative. [219]Antlitz, *n.* [220]zu Nichte machen. [221]Erzählung. [222]prahlen. [223]gerade. [224]Geſicht, *n.* [225]furchtbar. [226]*say*, what concerns you; to concern betreffen.

wish to tell a story, choose[227] a subject[228] that suits[229] your face — Psyche for example.[230] — (From the Half Hours.)

V. Desire of Knowledge.[1]

Dr. Johnson and I (Boswell) took (*say* hired) a sculler[2] at[3] the Temple stairs[4], and set out for[5] Greenwich. I asked him if he really[6] thought[7] a knowledge[8] of the Greek[9] and Latin[10] languages[11] an essential[12] requisite[13] to a[14] good education.[15] Johnson: "Most certainly[16] sir[17], for those who know them have a great advantage[18] over[19] those who do[20] not. Nay[21] sir, it is wonderful what a difference[22] learning[23] makes upon[24] people, even in the common[25] intercourse[26] of life, which does not appear to be much connected[27] with it." "And yet," said I, "people go[28] through the world very well, and carry on[29] the business[30] of life to[31] good advantage[32], without learning." Johnson: "Why[33] sir, that may be true in (*say* certain) cases where learning cannot possibly[34] be of any use[35]; for instance[36], this boy rows[37] us as[38] well without learning as if he could

---

[227] sich wählen. [228] Gegenstand. [229] passen zu. [230] zum Beispiel.
[1] Wißbegierde, *f.* [2] Bootsmann, *m.* [3] bei. [4] die Tempel-Stufen. [5] fahren nach. [6] wirklich. [7] halten, with für before the predicate. [8] Kenntniß. [9] griechisch. [10] lateinisch. [11] take the sing. [12] wesentlich. [13] Erforderniß, *n.* [14] take the Gen. [15] Erziehung. [16] ganz gewiß. [17] mein Herr, which is, however, rarely used, and generally by inferiors, like the *boy* below, to superiors like Johnson. [18] Vortheil, *m.* [19] vor. [20] *say*, know them not. [21] ja. [22] Unterschied. [23] Gelehrsamkeit. [24] bei. [25] gewöhnlich. [26] Verhandlung, take pl. [27] verbinden. [28] ihren Weg machen. [29] betreiben. [30] Geschäft, *n.*, take pl. [31] mit. [32] *say*, success Erfolg. [33] freilich. [34] möglicher Weise. [35] not of any use von keinem Nutzen, *m.* [36] zum Beispiel. [37] rudern. [38] eben so.

sing the song[39] of Orpheus to (DAT.) the Argonauts[40], who were the first sailors." He then called to[41] the boy, "What would you give my lad[42] to know about[43] the Argonauts?" "Sir," said the boy, "I would give what I have." Johnson was much pleased[44] with[45] his answer, and we gave him a double fare.[46] Dr. Johnson then turning[47] to me, "Sir," said he, "a desire[48] of knowledge[49] is the natural feeling of mankind[50]; and every human being, whose mind[51] is not debauched[52], will be willing to[53] give all that he has to get[54] knowledge.[55]" — *Boswell, Life of Johnson.* (From the Half Hours.)

VI. The Sack[1] of Magdeburg.

Going[2] out of church immediately after sermon[3], some people of[4] St. James's[5] parish[6] passed by[7], and told me the enemy had entered the town. With difficulty[8] could I persuade[9] myself that this was anything more than a false[10] alarm[11]; but the news[12] unfortunately[13] proved[14] too true. I then lost my presence of mind[15], and as my wife and maid-servant[16] were with[17] me, we ran directly[18] to my colleague[19], M.

[39] Geſang, *m.* [40] Argonaut. [41] anreden. [42] Junge. [43] von. [44] erfreut. [45] über. [46] Fährgeld, *n.* [47] ſich wenden. [48] Begierde, *f.* [49] *say*, of knowing zum Wiſſen. [50] Menſchheit. [51] Geiſt, *m.* [52] verderben. [53] *say*, will willingly give; willingly gern. [54] ſich erwerben. [55] Kenntniß, take the plural.

[1] Zerſtörung. [2] treten, and begin the adverbial sentence with als. [3] Predigt, from predigen, with the termination t; add the Definite Article. [4] von. [5] der heilige Jacobus. [6] Kirchſpiel, *n.* [7] vorbeikommen. [8] mit Mühe. [9] überreden. [10] falſch. [11] Gerücht, *n.* [12] Nachricht, *f.* [13] unglücklicher Weiſe. [14] ſich erweiſen als. [15] Geiſtesgegenwart, *f.* [16] Dienſtmagd, before which the Pronoun must be repeated, since the Substantives refer to persons of different stations. [17] bei. [18] ſogleich. [19] Amtsgenoſſe.

Malsio's house, and left our own house open. At M. Malsio's we found many people, who had fled[20] to him in great perplexity.[21] We comforted[22] and exhorted[23] each other as far as the terror[24] of our minds[25] would give us leave.[26] I was summoned thence[27] to discharge[28] the last duties to[29] a colonel[30], who lay dangerously wounded. I resolved[31] to go, and sent my maid to fetch my gown[32]; but before my departure[33] from my wife and neighbours, I told them that the affair[34] appeared to me concluded[35], and that we should meet[36] no more in this world. My wife reproached[37] me in a flood of tears, crying[38], "Can you prevail on yourself[39] to leave[40] me to perish all[41] alone?. You must answer for[42] it before God!" I represented[43] to her the obligation[44] of my functions[45], and the importance[46] of the moments[47] I was called upon[48] to give[49] my assistance in. As I crossed[50] the great street a multitude of old and young women[51] flocked[52] about me, and besought[53] me, in all the agonies[54] of distress[55], to advise[56] them what to do.[57] I told them, my best advice was, to recommend[58] themselves to God's protecting[59] grace[60], and prepare[61] for death.[62] At length[63]

[20] sich flüchten. [21] Bestürzung. [22] trösten. [23] ermuntern. [24] Schreck. [25] Gemüth, *n.* (*pl.*—er). [26] verstatten to give leave. [27] wegrufen. [28] erfüllen. [29] bei. [30] Oberst, declined as an Adjective, *the uppermost*. [31] sich entschließen. [32] Priesterrock, *m.* [33] *say*, before I departed schelden. [34] Sache, *f.* [35] enden. [36] sich treffen. [37] Vorwürfe machen. [38] *say*, whilst she cried; indem whilst, ausrufen to cry. [39] to prevail on one's self es über sich bringen. [40] to leave to perish umkommen lassen. [41] ganz. [42] verantworten. [43] vorstellen. [44] Verpflichtung. [45] Amt, *n.*, sing. [46] Wichtigkeit. [47] Augenblick. [48] berufen; and before *I was called upon* is to be expressed *in which*. [49] Hülfe leisten. [50] *say*, went over gehen über. [51] Frau. [52] sich drängen. [53] bitten. [54] Angst, *f.* [55] Noth, *f.* [56] rathen, with Dat. [57] *say*, what they ought to do. [58] empfehlen. [59] schützen. [60] Gnade, *f.* [61] sich vorbereiten. [62] *say*, for the death; for zu. [63] endlich

I entered[64] the colonel's lodgings[65], and found him stretched[66] on the floor[67], and very weak. I gave him such consolation[68] as[69] the disorder[70] of my mind would permit me: he heard me with great attention[71], and ordered[72] a small present of gold[73] to be given me, which I left on the table. In this interval[74], the enemy poured in[75] by crowds[76] at[77] the Hamburg gate[78], and fired[79] on the multitude as upon beasts of prey.[80] Suddenly my wife and maid-servant entered the room, and persuaded me to remove[81] immediately, alleging[82] we should[83] meet with no quarter if the enemy found us in an apartment[84] filled with arms. We ran down into the court-yard[85] of the house, and placed[86] ourselves in the gateway.[87] Our enemies soon burst[88] the gate open with an eagerness[89] that cannot be described. The first address[90] they made[91] to[92] me was, "Priest[93], deliver[94] thy money." I gave them about four and twenty shillings in a little box[95], which they accepted[96] with good will[97]; but when they opened the box, and found only silver, they raised[98] their tone[99], and demanded[100] gold. I represented to them that I was at[1] some distance[2] from my house, and could

---

[64] eintreten in. [65] Wohnung. [66] hinſtrecken. [67] Boden; *m.* [68] Troſt, *m.* [69] *as* is qualem, the Acc. of wie er. [70] Verſtörung. [71] Aufmerkſamkeit. [72] heißen, which requires the Infinitive Active after it. [73] Geldgeſchenk, *n.* [74] *say*, meanwhile unterdeſſen. [75] hereinſtrömen. [76] haufenweiſe. [77] zu. [78] Thor; *n.* [79] feuern or ſchießen. [80] Raubthier, *n.* (*pl.*—e). [81] ſich hinwegbegeben. [82] vorgeben. [83] *say*, no quarter would be granted to us; Schonung quarter; zu Theil werden to be granted. [84] Gemach, *n.* [85] Hof, *m.* [86] ſtellen. [87] Thorweg, *m.* [88] erbrechen. [89] Heftigkeit. [90] Wort, *n.*; take the plural. [91] richten. [92] an. [93] Prieſter. [94] hergeben, of which two compounds, in such abrupt address, the verbal part can be omitted. [95] Doſe, *f.* [96] annehmen. [97] gutwillig. [98] erheben. [99] Stimme, *f.* [100] fordern. [1] in. [2] Entfernung.

not at present possibly give them more. They were reasonable[103] enough to be contented[104] with[105] my answer, and left us, after having plundered the house, without offering[106] us any insult.[107] There was a well-looking[108] youth among[109] the crowd[110], to[111] whom my wife addressed[112] herself, and besought him, in God's name, to protect[113] us: "My dear[114] child," said he, "it is a thing[115] impossible; we must pursue[116] our enemies;" and so they retired.[117] In that moment another party[118] of soldiers rushed in[119], who demanded[120] also our money. We contented them with seven shillings and a couple of[121] of silver spoons[122], which the maid had fortunately concealed[123] in her pocket. They were scarce gone before[124] a soldier entered alone, with the most furious[125] countenance I ever saw; each cheek[126] was puffed out[127] with a musket-ball[128], and he carried two muskets[129] on his shoulder.[130] The moment he perceived[131] me, he cried with a voice of thunder[132], "Priest, give me thy money, or thou art dead." As I had nothing to give him, I made[133] my apology[134] in[135] the most affecting[136] manner.[137] He levelled[138] a piece[139] to shoot[140] me, but my wife luckily[141] turned it with her hand, and the ball passed[142] over my head. At length, finding we had no

---

[3] vernünftig. [4] ſich befriedigen laſſen. [5] durch. [6] zufügen. [7] Beleidigung. [8] wohlgeſtaltet. [9] in. [10] Gedränge, *n.* [11] an. [12] ſich wenden. [13] beſchützen. [14] lieb. [15] Sache. [16] verfolgen. [17] ſich zurückziehen. [18] Abtheilung. [19] hereinſtürzen. [20] verlangen. [21] ein paar, which is not declined when meaning *a few*, but when meaning *two, a pair*, it is declined. [22] Löffel, *m.* [23] verſtecken. [24] als. [25] wüthend. [26] Backe, *f.* [27] aufblaſen. [28] Flintenkugel, *f.* [29] Büchſe, *f.* [30] Schulter, *f.* [31] bemerken. [32] Donnerſtimme, *f.* [33] vorbringen. [34] Entſchuldigung. [35] auf. [36] rührend. [37] Weiſe, *f.* [38] anlegen. [39] Flinte, *f.* [40] ſchießen auf. [41] zum Glücke. [42] gehen.

money, he asked for[143] plate[144]: my wife gave him some silver trinkets[145], and he went his way. A little after[146] came four or five soldiers, who only said, "Wicked[147] priest, what doest thou here?" Having said this much[148] they departed.[149]

We were now inclined[150] to shelter ourselves[151] in the uppermost[152] lodging of the house, hoping there to be less exposed[153] and better concealed.[154] We entered a chamber[155] that had[156] several[157] beds in it, and passed[158] some time there in the most unsupportable[159] agonies.[160] Nothing was heard in the streets but[161] the cries[162] of the expiring[163] people; nor[164] were the houses much more quiet: everything was burst open or cut to[165] pieces.[166] We were soon discovered[167] in our retirement.[168] A number of soldiers poured in[169]; and one, who carried a hatchet[170], made an attempt[171] to cleave[172] my skull[173], but a companion[174] hindered[175] him, and said, "Comrade, what are you doing, don't you perceive that he is a clergyman[176]?" When these were gone, a single soldier came in; to whom my wife gave a crape handkerchief[177] off[178] her neck[179]; upon which he retired without offering[180]

---

[143] fordern. [144] Silbergeſchirr, *n.* [145] Zierath, *m.* (*pl.*—en). [146] *say*, a short time after that kurze Zeit nachher. [147] ſchändlich. [148] *say*, only this. [149] davongehen. [150] geneigt. [151] ſeine Zuflucht nehmen. [152] höchſt. [153] ausſetzen. [154] verborgen. [155] Stube, *f.* [156] *say*, contained enthalten. [157] mehrere. [158] zubringen. [159] unerträglich. [160] Seelenangſt, *f.*, take the singular. [161] als. [162] Geſchrei, *n.*, which has no plural. [163] ſterben. [164] auch nicht. [165] in. [166] Stück, *n.*, (*pl.*—e). [167] entdecken. [168] Verſteck, *m.* [169] hereinſtrömen. [170] Beil, *n.* [171] Verſuch, *m.* [172] ſpalten. [173] Schädel, *m.* [174] Gefährte. [175] daran hindern. [176] Geiſtlich, an Adjective used as a Substantive. [177] Flortuch, *n.* [178] von. [179] Hals, *m.* [180] anthun.

us any injury.[181] His successor[182] was not so reasonable, for, entering the chamber with his sword drawn[183], he immediately discharged[184] a blow[185] upon[186] my head, saying, "Priest, give me thy money." The stroke[187] stunned[188] me. The blood gushed[189] out in abundance[190], and frightened[191] my wife and servant to[192] that degree[193] that they both continued[194] motionless.[195] The barbarian[196] turned round[197] to my wife, and aimed[198] a blow at[199] her, but it glanced[200], fortunately, on[201] her gown[202], which happened[203] to be lined[204] with furs[205], and wounded her not. Amazed[206] to see us so submissive[207] and patient[208], he looked at[209] us fixedly[210] for some moments. I laid hold of[211] this interval[212] to represent to him that I was not in my own house, being come to the place where I was to discharge my duty to a dying person; but if he would grant[213] us quarter[214], and protect us to our home, I would then bestow upon[215] him all I had. "Agreed[216], priest," said he, "give me thy wealth[217], and I will give thee the watchword[218]: it is Jesu Maria: pronounce[219] that, and no one will hurt[220] thee." We went down stairs[221] directly, — highly contented to have found such a protector.

---

[181] Leid, *n.* [182] Nachfolger. [183] ziehen, and put the Partic. as Adjective before *sword*. [184] verſetzen. [185] Schlag. [186] nach. [187] Streich. [188] betäuben. [189] ſtrömen. [190] Fülle. [191] erſchrecken. [192] in. [193] Grad, *m.* [194] ſtehen bleiben. [195] bewegungslos. [196] Barbar. [197] ſich herum drehen. [198] thun. [199] nach. [200] abſtreifen. [1] an. [2] Gewand, *n.* [3] *say*, by chance was lined; by chance zufällig. [4] to line füttern. [5] Pelz, *m.*, take sing. [6] erſtaunen. [7] unterwürfig. [8] geduldig. [9] anblicken. [10] ſtarr. [11] benutzen. [12] Zwiſchenraum, *m.* [13] gewähren. [14] Gnade, *f.* [15] verleihen. [16] topp. [17] Reichthum, *m.* [18] Loſungswort, *n.* [19] ausſprechen. [20] verletzen. [21] die Treppe hinunter.

The street was covered[222] with the dead[223] and dying. Their cries were enough[224] to have pierced[225] the hearts of[226] the greatest barbarians. We walked over the bodies[227]; and, when we arrived at[228] the church of St. Catherine, met[229] an officer of distinction[230] on horseback.[234] This generous[232] person[233] soon discovered us; and seeing me covered with blood, said to the person[234] who conducted us, "Fellow-soldier[235], fellow-soldier, take care[236] what you do to these persons." At the same time, he said to my wife, "Madam[237], is yonder[238] house yours?" My wife answered that it was. "Well," added[239] he, "take hold of[240] my stirrup[241], conduct me thither[242], and you shall have quarter." Then, turning to me, and making[243] a sign[244] to the soldier with his hand, he said to me, "Gentlemen[245] of Magdeburg, you yourselves are the occasion[246] of this destruction[247]: you might[248] have acted[249] otherwise."[250] The soldier who had used[251] me ill[252], took[253] this opportunity[254] to steal away.[255]

Upon entering my house, we found it filled with a multitude of plunderers[256], whom the officer, who was a colonel, ordered away.[257] He then said he would take up[258] his lodging[259] with[260] us; and having

---

[222]bedecken. [223]todt. [224]genügen. [225]dringen durch. [226]take the Dative, and put it before the Accusative of the thing, namely, *the hearts*. [227]Leichnam, *m.* [228]bei. [229]begegnen, with Dat. [230]*say*, of superior rank, höher and Rang, *m* [231]zu Pferde. [232]edelmüthig. [233]Mann. [234]Mensch. [235]Kriegskamerad. [236]sich vorsehen. [237]Frau. [238]jener, e, es. [239]hinzu setzen. [240]ergreifen. [241]Bügel, *m.* [242]hin. [243]*say*, giving. [244]Zeichen, *n.* [245]*say*, you gentlemen. [246]Ursache, *f.* [247]Zerstörung. [248]turn it so: you had might act. [249]handeln. [250]anders. [251]zurichten. [252]so übel. [253]wahrnehmen. [254]Gelegenheit. [255]sich wegstehlen. [256]Plünderer. [257]say either *ordered to go away*, or *sent away*. [258]aufschlagen. [259]Wohnung. [260]bei.

posted[261] two soldiers for[262] a guard[263] to[264] us, he left[265] us, with a promise[266] to return forthwith.[267] We gave, with great cheerfulness[268], a good breakfast to our sentinels[269], who complimented[270] us on the lucky fortune of falling into their colonel's hands; at the same time representing to us, that their fellow-soldiers made a considerable[271] booty[272], while they continued[273] inactive[274], merely[275] as a safeguard to us, and therefore beseeching us to render[276] them an equivalent[277] to[278] a certain degree. Upon this, I gave them four rosenobles[279], with which they were well contented, and shewed so much humanity[280] as[281] to make us an[282] offer[283] to go and search for[284] any acquaintance[285] whom we desired[286] to place[287] in safety[288] with[289] us.

I told them I had[290] one particular[291] friend who had escaped[292] to[293] the cathedral[294], as I conjectured[295], and promised them a good gratuity[296] on his part[297] if they saved[298] his life. One of them, accompanied[299] by my maid-servant, went to the church, and called my friend often by[300] name; but it was all in vain[301]: no one answered; and we never heard men-

---

[261] hinſtellen. [262] als. [263] Schutzwache, *f.* [264] für. [265] verlaſſen. [266] Verſprechen, and use the Def. Article. [267] ſogleich. [268] Freude, *f.* [269] Schildwache. [270] to compliment — on fortune Glück wünſchen. [271] bedeutend. [272] Beute, *f.* [273] bleiben. [274] unthätig. [275] bloß. [276] geben. [277] Entſchädigung. [278] bis zu. [279] Roſenobel, *f.* [280] Menſchenfreundlichkeit. [281] *say*, that they made. [282] take Def. Article. [283] Anerbieten. [284] ſuchen nach. [285] Bekannt, used as Substantive. [286] wünſchen. [287] bringen. [288] Sicherheit. [289] bei. [290] Subj. Imperf. [291] beſonder. [292] ſich flüchten. [293] in. [294] Dom, *m.* [295] muthmaßen, and insert the adverbial sentence, *as I conjectured*, after *who*. [296] Belohnung. [297] ſeinerſeits. [298] retten. [299] begleiten. [300] bei, with the Def. Art. [1] vergebens.

tion[302] of him from that period.[303] Some moments after, our colonel returned; and asked if any person[304] had offered[305] us the least[306] incivility.[307] After we had exculpated[308] the soldiers in this respect[309], he hastened[310] abroad[311] to see if there was any possibility of extinguishing[312] the fire, which had already seized[313] great[314] part of the city. He had already got[315] into[316] the street, when he returned with uncommon[317] haste[318], and said, "Show me the way out of the town, for I see plainly[319] we shall perish[320] in the flames if we stay[321] here a few minutes longer." Upon this, we threw the best[322] of our goods and moveables[323] into a vaulted[324] cellar[325], covered the trap-door[326] with earth, and made[327] our escape. My wife took nothing with her but[328] my robe: my maid seized a neighbour's child by[329] the hand, whom we found crying at[330] his father's door, and led[331] him away. We found it impossible[332] to pass[333] through the gates of the town, which were all in flames, and the streets burnt with great fury[334] on either[335] side: in[336] a word, the heat[337] was so intense[338], that it was[339] with difficulty[340] we were able[341] to breathe. Having made several unsuccessful[342] attempts, we de-

---

[2] erwähnen hören. [3] von der Zeit an. [4] jemand. [5] beweiſen. [6] gering. [7] Unhöflichkeit. [8] entſchuldigen. [9] Hinſicht, from ſehen. [10] eilen. [11] hinaus. [12] löſchen. [13] ergreifen. [14] *say*, a great. [15] hinausgelangen. [16] auf. [17] ungewöhnlich. [18] Haſt, *f.* [19] deutlich. [20] umkommen. [21] verweilen. [22] neuter singular. [23] our goods and chattels unſere Habe und Gut. [24] wölben. [25] Keller, *m.* [26] Fallthüre, *f.* [27] to make his escape ſich auf die Flucht begeben. [28] als. [29] bei. [30] vor. [31] hinwegführen. [32] unmöglich. [33] hindurchkommen. [34] Wuth, *f.* [35] *say*, on both sides. [36] mit. [37] Hitze. [38] gewaltig. [39] leave out *it was*. [40] Mühe, *f.* [41] im Stande ſein. [42] vergeblich.

termined[343], at last, to make our escape[344] on[345] the side of the town next[346] the Elbe.[347] The streets were clogged[348] with dead bodies; and the groans[349] of the dying were insupportable. The Wallöons[350] and Croatians[351] attacked[352] us every moment, but our generous colonel protected us from[353] their fury. When we gained the bastion[354], which stands on the bank[355] of the Elbe, we descended[356] it by the scalingladder[357] which the Imperialists[358] had made use of[359] in[360] the assault[361], and arrived at length in the enemy's camp[362], near[363] Rottensee, thoroughly[364] fatigued[365], and extremely[366] alarmed.[367]

The colonel made[368] us enter[369] his tent[370], and presented[371] us some refreshments.[372] The ceremony[373] being over, "Well," said he, "having saved your lives[374], what return[375] do you make me? We told him, that for the present we had nothing to bestow, but that we would transfer[376] to him all the money and plate we had buried[377] in the cellar, which was the whole of our worldly[378] possessions.[379] At[380] this instant many Imperial officers came in, and one chanced[381] to say to me, "Ego tibi condoleo, ego sum addictus Fidei Augustanæ." The distressed[382] state[383] I found myself

---

[43] beſchließen. [44] ſich flüchten. [45] auf. [46] nächſt, with Dat. [47] Elbe, *f.* [48] voll preſſen. [49] Geſtöhn, *n.*, implying a plural. [50] Wallone. [51] Croat. [52] anfallen. [53] vor. [54] Bollwerk, *n.* [55] Ufer, *n.* [56] hinunterſteigen. [57] Sturmleiter, *f.* [58] Kaiſerlich, to be used as a Substantive. [59] ſich bedienen. [60] bei. [61] Stürmen. [62] Lager, *n.* [63] unweit. [64] durch und durch. [65] ermüden. [66] äußerſt. [67] erſchrecken. [68] laſſen. [69] treten in. [70] Zelt. [71] anbieten. [72] Erfriſchung. [73] *say*, after this courteous reception; höflich; Empfang. [74] take Sing. [75] to make return einen Erſatz geben. [76] übertragen. [77] vergraben. [78] weltlich. [79] Beſitz, take sing. [80] in. [81] *say*, by chance said, gerade. [82] traurig. [83] Zuſtand.

in made me unable[384] to give a proper[385] reply[386] to the condolence[387] of a man who carried arms against those whose religion[388] he professed[389], and whose hard[390] fortune[391] he pretended[392] to deplore.[393] Next day the colonel sent one of his domestics[394] with my maid-servant to search for the treasure[395] we had buried in the cellar, but they returned without success[396], because, as the fire still continued[397], they could not approach[398] the trap-door. In the meanwhile[399] the colonel made us[400] his guests[401] at[402] his own table, and during our whole stay[403] treated us, not as prisoners[404], but as intimate[405] friends. One day at dinner[406], an officer of the company happened to say, that our sins[407] were the cause of all the evil[408] we suffered[409], and that God had made use of the Catholic[410] army[411] to chastise[412] us; to whom my wife replied, that the observation[413] was perhaps too true; however, take care[414], continued[415] she, lest[416] God ni[417] the end should throw that very[418] scourge[419] into the flames. This sort of prophecy[420] was fulfilled[421] soon afterwards on[422] the self-same[423] Imperial army, which was almost totally[424] destroyed[425] at[426] the battle[427] of[428] Leipzig. At length I ventured[429]

---

[384] unfähig. [385] gehörig. [386] Antwort, *f.* [387] Beileidsbezeigung. [388] Religion. [389] ſich bekennen zu. [390] ſchwer. [391] Loos, *n.* [392] vorgeben. [393] beklagen. [394] Diener. [395] Schatz, *m.* [396] Erfolg, *m.* [397] fortbrennen. [398] ſich nähern, with Dat. [399] unterdeſſen. [400] machen zu. [1] Gaſt, *m.* [2] an. [3] Verweilen. [4] gefangen. [5] vertraut. [6] bei Tiſche. [7] Sünde, *f.* [8] Uebel, *n.* [9] erleiden. [10] katholiſch. [11] Heer, *n.* [12] züchtigen. [13] Bemerkung. [14] ſich in Acht nehmen. [15] fortfahren. [16] daß—nicht. [17] an. [18] ſelbſt, put in after *scourge*. [19] Geißel, *f.* [20] Prophezeiung. [21] erfüllen. [22] an. [23] derſelbe. [24] gänzlich. [25] vernichten. [26] in. [27] Schlacht, from ſchlagen. [28] bei. [429] wagen.

one day to ask[430] the colonel to give us leave to[431] depart[432]; he complied[433] immediately, on[434] condition[435] that we paid our ransom.[436] Next morning I sent my maid into the town to try if there was any possibility of penetrating[437] into the cellar; she was more fortunate that day, and returned with all our wealth. Having returned[438] our thanks[439] to our deliverer[440], he immediately ordered[441] our passport[442] to be prepared[443] for us, with permission[444] to retire[445] to[446] whatever[447] place[448] we should think proper[449], and made us a present of[450] a crown[451] to defray[452] the expense[453] of our journey.[454] This brave Spaniard[455] was colonel of the regiment[456] of Savelli, and named[457] Don Joseph de Ainsa. —

From the "Half Hours."

VII.

My Dear[1] Friend,[2]

My visit[3] seems lengthening out[4] indefinitely[5]; the thaw[6] has taken place[7], and yet there seems no immediate prospect[8] of my return.[9] Since last[10] Sunday I have been a close[11] prisoner, so my time passes[12] in

---

[430] to *ask* a favour is bitten, but to *ask* a question fragen. [431] die Erlaubniß. [432] *say*, for departing zum Scheiden. [433] einwilligen. [434] mit, with the Definite Article. [435] Bedingung. [436] Lösegeld, *n.* [437] dringen. [438] abstatten. [439] Dank, *m.*, sing. [440] Befreier. [441] lassen, with Inf. Active. [442] Paß, *m.* [443] ausfertigen. [444] *say*, the permission. [445] sich begeben. [446] nach. [447] welcher. [448] Ort, *m.* [449] to think proper für bequem erachten. [450] Geschenk, *n.*, mit. [451] Krone, *f.* [452] bestreiten. [453] Unkosten, only used in plural. [454] Reise. [455] Spanier. [456] Regiment, *n.*, *of* is not expressed. [457] heißen.

[1] theuer. [2] Freundin. [3] Besuch, *m.* [4] sich hinziehen. [5] ins Unendliche. [6] Thauwetter, *n.* [7] eintreten. [8] Aussicht. [9] Rückkehr, *f.* [10] vergangen. [11] streng. [12] vergehen.

a placid[13] succession[14] of meals[15], sleep[16], and intervals.[17] Post-time[18] is the most interesting[19] period[20] of the day; the arrival[21] of a letter is quite[22] an event.[23] From this[24] you may imagine[25] the heart-felt[26] thanks[27] I render[28] for your last kind[29] note.[30] I value[31] your correspondence[32] very much[33]; it is not conventional[34], but genuinely[35] affectionate[36]; and it is very pleasant[37], the thought that some[38] one loves us. Trusting[39] that we may both feel sure[40] of this[41], as[42] regards[43] each other[44],

I remain[45], your affectionate[46] friend,

C. G. R.

VIII.

My Dear Friend,

I hate[1] to think[2] how ungrateful[3] I must appear to some correspondents[4], and to you among[5] the number; but I can assure[6] you my occupations[7] are so many[8], and my leisure[9] comparatively[10] so limited[11], that I can with difficulty find time for more than my weekly[12] letter to mamma.[13] I am much obliged[14] for your and

---

[13]ſanft. [14]Folge. [15]Mahlzeit, *f.* [16]Schlaf. [17]Mußeſtunde, *f.* [18]Poſtzeit, *f.* [19]unterhaltend. [20]Periode, *f.* [21]Ankunft, from kommen. [22]vollkommen. [23]Ereigniß, *n.* [24]*say*, therefrom daher. [25]ſich vorſtellen. [26]innig. [27]Dank, *m.*, sing. [28]abſtatten. [29]freundlich. [30]Billet, *n.* [31]ſchätzen. [32]Briefwechſel, *m.* [33]recht ſehr. [34]ſteif und förmlich. [35]ächt. [36]herzlich. [37]angenehm. [38]jemand. [39]im Vertrauen. [40]*say*, the surety die Gewißheit. [41]thereof. [42]ſoweit als es. [43]betreffen. [44]*say*, us. [45]verbleiben. [46]herzlich ergeben.

[1]haſſen, and insert *it*. [2]daran denken. [3]undankbar [4]Correſpondent. [5]in. [6]verſichern, with Dat. [7]Beſchäftigung, take the Gen. [8]viel. [9]Mußezeit. [10]verhältnißmäßig. [11]beſchränkt. [12]wöchentlich. [13]meine Mutter. [14]verpflichten.

your husband's[15] very kind expressions[16] with regard[17] to my little book. I continue[18] to find myself very comfortable[19] here in most respects.[20] I admire[21] the people in whose house I am residing[22] more and more.[23] They are truly excellent[24] people, and extremely[25] kind to[26] me. The lady[27] of the house is remarkably[28] thoughtful[29] and considerate[30] in little things, and I think[31] this one of the greatest charms[32] any one can possess. If I happen[33] to mention[34] any book I should like to read, she always remembers[35] it. I hope your husband and your children are quite well. Pray offer[36] my kindest remembrance[37] to the former[38], and kisses[39] to the latter[40], and accept[41] for them, and for yourself, the best new years wishes[42] of,

My dear friend, your's most sincerely,[43]

the[44] 18*th of*[45] *November*, 1848. M. F. R.

IX. Griseldis.

The little German theatre[1] here (in Reval), proves[2] a most agreeable diversion.[3] We engaged[4] a box[5] for the season[6]; and are glad[7] whenever the many hos-

---

[15]Gatte. [16]Wort, *n.* [17]in Bezug auf. [18]express it adverbially by ſtets or noch immer. [19]behaglich. [20]*say*, in the most; respect Hinſicht. [21]bewundern. [22]wohnen. [23]immer mehr. [24]vortrefflich. [25]höchſt. [26]gegen. [27]Frau. [28]auf eine merkwürdige Weiſe. [29]aufmerkſam. [30]rückſichtsvoll. [31]halten für. [32]*say*, of the most charming features; reizend; Zug. [33]express this by the Adverb gerade. [34]erwähnen, with Gen. [35]denken, with of it daran. [36]geben. [37]Gruß, *m.* [38]erſter. [39]Kuß, *m.* [40]letzter. [41]empfangen. [42]either Neujahrswunſch, *m.*, or my best wishes for the new year. [43]aufrichtig ergeben. [44]the Acc. [45]is not expressed, and the name of the month is not declined.

[1]Schauſpielhaus, *n.* [2]gewähren. [3]Unterhaltung. [4]nehmen. [5]Loge, *f.* [6]Schauſpielzeit, *f.* [7]ſich freuen.

pitable[8] houses have an evening free. Without attempting too much, the modest[9] German company, most respectable[10] in performance[11], gave[12] us selections[13] from Kotzebue, from Iffland, etc.[14]: but a piece[15], recently[16] dramatised[17], called[18] Griseldis, is more attractive[19] than all, and draws[20] most sympathising audiences.[21] This is taken from[22] the same old German legend[23], which, I[24] conclude[25], furnished[26] our ancient[27] ballad[28] of the patient Griselda, with a slight[29] alteration[30] of[31] the *dénouement*.[32] The drama[33], however, is laid in the times of our national[34] character[35] King Arthur. The hero[36], Percival, is one of the chief nobles[37] of his court[38]; and the heroine[39], Griseldis, has, on account of her beauty and virtue, been taken from a lowly[40] woodman's hut[41] to grace[42] his castle.[43] Knowing his wife to be the very[44] mirror[45] of excellence[46], Percival leaves her to repair[47] to[48] King Arthur's court; where, taunted[49] by some with[50] her low birth[51], by others, with possessing[52] a diamond which he is afraid to display[53], he boasts that, though his wife be a woodman's daughter, she surpasses[54] in[55] obedience[56], and every wifely sense[57] of duty,

[8] gaſtfreundlich. [9] beſcheiden. [10] höchſt achtenswerth. [11] Leiſtung, and *say*, in their performances. [12] zeigen. [13] eine Auswahl. [14] und ſo weiter, or u. ſ. w. [15] Stück, *n*. [16] kürzlich. [17] für die Bühne bearbeiten. [18] Namens. [19] reizend. [20] ziehen. [21] *say*, a great number Zahl, of sympathising theilnehmend, spectator Zuſchauer. [22] entlehnen, with Dat. [23] Sage. [24] *say*, as I. [25] ſchließen. [26] den Stoff liefern zu. [27] alt. [28] Ballade, *f*. [29] gering. [30] Aenderung. [31] in. [32] Entwickelung. [33] Schauſpiel, *n*. [34] volksthümlich. [35] Character, *m*. [36] Held. [37] Hauptedelmann. [38] Hof, *m*. [39] Heldin. [40] niedrig. [41] Köhlerhütte, *f*. [42] zieren. [43] Schloß, *n*. [44] ſelbſt, and put it after *mirror*. [45] Spiegel, *m*. [46] Vortrefflichkeit. [47] ſich begeben. [48] an. [49] höhnen. [50] wegen. [51] Geburt, *f*. [52] *say*, the possession Beſitz. [53] ans Tageslicht bringen. [54] übertreffen. [55] an. [56] Gehorſam, *m*. [57] Frauengefühl, *n*.

all the high-born[58] ladies[59] of the court. This so stings[60] the queen herself, — a bad, designing[61] woman, that she offers[62] to do homage[63] to this peasant-born[64] countess[65], and to proclaim her[66] best among women, if her obedience prove[67] superior[68] to[69] every trial[70]; but, if Griseldis fail[71], exacts[72] the same homage from the haughty[73] Percival to[74] herself. This rouses[75] Percival's vanity[76], and confident of[77] his wife's principles[78], and careless[79] of her sufferings, he accepts[80] the gage.[81] Two courtiers[82], chosen as witnesses to this conjugal[83] ordeal[84], now accompany him to his castle. Here an unforeseen occasion for trial[85] immediately presents itself[86]: Griseldis' old mother, on her death-bed, sends a messenger to the castle to summon[87] her daughter, if not grown unmindful[88] in her present exaltation[89], to come and receive her last blessing.[90] Griseldis sues to[91] Percival for leave to fulfil[92] this act of piety[93], which Percival, thinking only of his bond[94], denies[95], and forbids[96] her to leave the castle. Griseldis obeys. Percival then asks for[97] their only child, — a babe[98] in the cradle.[99] "The king wants[100] it," he coolly[101] says, and gives it to the courtiers. "The king wants my child!" screams Griseldis, with a

---

[58]hochgeboren. [59]Dame. [60]erbittern. [61]falſch. [62]ſich erbieten. [63]Huldigung leiſten. [64]bauern-erzeugt. [65]Gräfin. [66]erklären als. [67]ſich erweiſen. [68]erhaben. [69]über. [70]Verſuchung. [71]ſinken. [72]verlangen. [73]ſtolz. [74]für. [75]erregen. [76]Eitelkeit. [77]trauend auf. [78]Grundſatz. [79]unbekümmert um. [80]annehmen. [81]Fehdehandſchuh, *m.* [82]Höfling. [83]ehelich. [84]Unſchuldsprobe, *f.* [85]die Prüfung. [86]ſich darbieten. [87]auffordern. [88]der niedern Abkunft vergeſſen, *lit.*, to forget her lowly origin. [89]Erhöhung. [90]Segen, *m.* [91]bitten. [92]üben. [93]fromme Pflicht. [94]Vertrag. [95]abſchlagen. [96]verbieten, with Dat. [97]fordern. [98]Säugling, *m.* [99]Wiege, *f.* [100]verlangen. [101]ruhig.

mother's agony [102], and is rushing [103] to seize [104] it from their grasp [105], when Percival restrains [106] her, and gives her to understand that such is his will. Griseldis obeys. In the next scene [107], he bids the great hall [108] be prepared [109], calls together his dependents [110] and vassals [111], and now commands [112] his countess to put off [113] her splendid robes [114], to unbind [115] the jewels from her hair, and return to his presence [116] in the russet [117] petticoat [118], loose [119] tresses [120], and bare [121] feet, with which he first saw her. Griseldis obeys. Now turning to the assembly [122], he says, "Thus you saw this woman enter my castle; this was her condition [123] when she became your mistress [124]; to that let her return; conduct her beyond [125] the castle-gates [126], and give her neither food nor shelter [127] on [128] your allegiance." Griseldis attempts no remonstrance [129], save [130] her tears [131]; weeping she bids [132] her lord [133] adieu [134], passes [135] meekly [136] through the throng [137], and goes barefooted [138] forth. [139] A storm [140] of [141] thunder [142] and lightning [143] now bursts [144] over the scene [145], but still she pursues her forlorn [146] way, till, torn [147] and exhausted [148], she reaches the home [149]

---

[2] Seelenangſt, *f.* [3] verwärtsſtürzen. [4] reißen. [5] pl. of Hand. [6] zurückhalten. [7] Auftritt. [8] Halle, *f.* [9] zurüſten. [10] Untergeben. [11] Vaſall (Gen.—en). [12] befehlen, with Dat. [13] ablegen. [14] Gewand, *n.* (*pl.*—änder). [15] löſen. [16] *say*, to reappear before him. [17] bäueriſch. [18] Kleidchen. [19] ungeflochten. [20] Locke, *f.* [21] nackt. [22] Verſammlung. [23] Zuſtand. [24] Herrin. [25] zu—hinaus. [26] Schloßthor, *n.* (*pl.*—e). [27] Obdach, *n.* [28] bei—Lehnspflicht. [29] Einrede. [30] außer. [31] Thräne, *f.* [32] bieten. [33] Gemahl. [34] Lebewohl. [35] ſchreiten. [36] demüthig. [37] Gedränge, *n.* [38] barfuß. [39] dahin. [40] Unwetter, *n.* [41] *say*, accompanied by. [42] Donner, *m.* [43] Blitz, *m.* [44] losbrechen. [45] Schauplatz, *m.* [46] hülflos. [47] verwunden. [48] erſchöpfen. [49] Heimath, *f.*

of her girlhood.[150] Here her father, pointing[151] to[152] the dead body of her mother, upbraids[153] her with[154] neglect[155] of filial duty[156], conveys[157] to her a maternal[158] curse[159] instead of a blessing, and further[160] incensed[161] by beholding her in this degraded[162] condition, stigmatises[163] her as the most worthless[164] of women, and drives[165] her from his hut. Now is poor Griseldis poor indeed. Overcome[166] with[167] hunger and wretchedness[168], she lays herself down on a stone to die, which so touches the old man's heart, that he consents[169] to receive[170] her. And thus she lives: resuming[171] her hard[172] labour[173] and her hard fare[174], praying[175] to God for her husband and child, and fading away[176] beneath her griefs.[177] Three months elapse[178], and Griseldis appears in the same russet garb — pale and wan[179], when a horn is heard; and the king and the queen, and all the court, with Percival in the midst[180], crowd[181] into the lonely valley.[182] Griseldis looks and listens in[183] speechless[184] amazement[185], as[186] Percival explains how all this suffering has been but a trial of her duty, which[187] having abided[188] the sharpest proof, the queen here falls on her knees[189], and owns[190] her peerless[191] among

---

[150] Kindheit. [151] weiſen. [152] auf. [153] ſchmähen. [154] wegen. [155] Vernachläſſigung, *say*, her neglect. [156] Kindespflicht. [157] hinterbringen. [158] *say*, a mother's. [159] Fluch, *m*. [160] noch mehr. [161] entflammen. [162] entwürdigen. [163] brandmarken. [164] unwürdig. [165] jagen. [166] überwältigen. [167] von. [168] Elend, *n*. [169] darein willigen. [170] zu ſich nehmen. [171] zurückkehren zu. [172] rauh. [173] Arbeit, *f*. [174] Nahrung. [175] beten. [176] hinwelken. [177] Gram, *m*., sing. [178] vergehen. [179] ſchmächtig. [180] Mitte, *f*. [181] ſich drängen. [182] Thal, *n*. [183] mit. [184] ſprachlos. [185] Staunen. [186] indem. [187] *say*, and since this had. [188] beſtehen. [189] Knie (*pl*.—e). [190] anerkennen als. [191] unvergleichlich.

women. And now Percival, with a face radiant[192] with[193] gratified[194] pride, bids[195] her return to his castle and resume her sway[196] over him and all his possessions. But Griseldis, with an unutterable[197] expression[198] of woe[199], here lifts[200] up her voice: "Percival, thou art lost to[201] me for ever.[202] God knows that I would have borne[203] humiliation[204], torture[205], death in any[206] shape[207], for[208] thy good[209], — that I have suffered grief, degradation[210], and hardship[211], — have taught my hands again to labour, and have washed my bread with tears at[212] thy bidding[213] without a complaint[214]; but to know that thou hast wrung[215] thy wife's tenderest[216] feelings, — that thou hast loaded[217] my heart with a dying mother's curse, hast turned[218] my raven locks[219] to grey, and taught me, in a few months, an eternity[220] of misery[221], — and that all this wretchedness has been (*say* heaped on me) but to prove[222] my duty to the world — but to gratify thy vanity! — this, this it is that breaks my heart. What is[223] a queen's homage to me when Percival has lost my esteem[224]? Ask me not to return; my mother's spectre[225] would rise[226] between us; I should despise[227] myself for[228] following the weakness[229] of my affection, and thou wouldst despise me

---

[192] ſtrahlen. [193] vor. [194] befriedigen. [195] heißen. [196] Herrſchaft. [197] unausſprechlich. [198] Ausdruck. [199] Jammer, *m.* [200] erheben. [1] für. [2] auf immer. [3] ertragen. [4] Erniedrigung. [5] Marter, *f.* [6] jeder. [7] Geſtalt, *f.* [8] zu. [9] Frommen, *n.* [10] Herabwürdigung. [11] Noth. [12] auf. [13] Geheiß, *n.* [14] Klage. [15] foltern. [16] zart. [17] laden auf. [18] to turn to grey ergrauen laſſen. [19] Rabenhaar, *n.*, sing. [20] Ewigkeit. [21] Schmerz, *m.*, take the plural. [22] beweiſen. [23] gelten, with Dat. [24] Achtung. [25] Geiſt. [26] ſich erheben. [27] verachten. [28] *say*, if I were to follow wollte ich, etc. [29] Schwachheit.

for loving one I had ceased[230] to revere.[231] No,—ask me not,—it cannot be. Let me remain with[232] him who pitied[233] me when I seemed most guilty.[234] Farewell, my Percival, cherish[235] our child, and tell him that his mother died.[236] Come father." And so saying, Griseldis resists[237] every[238] solicitation[239], and, weeping, leaves the scene.[240]

This *dénouement* is the theme[241] of all conversation; and parties[242] run high[243] for and against its moral.[244] Some little patient Griseldises of the society blame their prototype[245] for not returning, and some selfish[246] Percivals acquit[247] her, and *vice versa*.[248] I venture[249] no opinion. Count M. wiped[250] his eyes[251], and hoped they made it up[252] behind the scenes.[253] (*Letters from the Baltic.*)

X. Character of Oliver Goldsmith.

There are few writers[1] for whom the reader feels such personal[2] kindness[3] as for Oliver Goldsmith; for few have so eminently[4] possessed the magic gift[5] of identifying themselves[6] with[7] their writings. We read his character in[8] every page[9], and grow into familiar intimacy[10] with him as[11] we read. The artless[12] bene-

---

[230] aufhören. [231] verehren. [232] bei. [233] ſich erbarmen, with Gen. [234] ſchuldig. [235] lieben. [236] take the Perfect. [237] widerſtehen. [238] all. [239] Flehen, *n.* [240] Bühne, *f.* [241] Gegenſtand. [242] der Parteigeiſt. [243] ſich lebhaft regen. [244] Moral, *f.* [245] Urbild, *n.* [246] ſelbſtiſch. [247] freiſprechen. [248] umgekehrt. [249] wagen. [250] trocknen. [251] *say*, to himself the eyes. [252] ſich verſöhnen. [253] Couliſſe, *f.*

[1] Schriftſteller. [2] perſönlich. [3] Freundſchaft. [4] in ſo bedeutendem Grade. [5] Zauberkraft, *f.* [6] ſo ganz aufgehen. [7] in, Acc. [8] auf. [9] Seite, *f.* [10] innig vertraut werden. [11] indem. [12] unerkünſtelt.

volence[13] that beams[14] throughout[15] his works, — the whimsical[16], yet amiable[17] views[18] of[19] human life and human nature, — the unforced[20] humour[21], blending[22] so happily with good[23] feeling[24] and good[25] sense[26], and singularly[27] dashed[28] at[29] times with a pleasing[30] melancholy[31], — even the very[32] nature[33] of his mellow[34], flowing[35], and softly tinted[36] style[37], all[38] seem to bespeak[39] his moral as well as his intellectual[40] qualities[41], and make[42] us love the man at the same time that[43] we admire the author.[44] While the productions[45] of writers of loftier[46] pretension[47], and more sounding[48] names, are suffered[49] to moulder[50] on our shelves[51], those of Goldsmith are cherished[52] and laid in[53] our bosoms.[54] We do not quote[55] them with ostentation[56], but[57] they mingle[58] with our minds[59], sweeten[60] our tempers[61], and harmonise[62] our thoughts: they put[63] us in good[64] humour[65] with[66] ourselves and with the world, and in[67] so[68] doing they make us happier and better men.[69]

An acquaintance[70] with the private[71] biography[72] of

---

[13] Wohlwollen. [14] durchſtrahlen. [15] überall. [16] ſonderbar. [17] liebenswürdig. [18] Anſicht. [19] von, with Def. Art. [20] ungezwungen. [21] Witz, *m.* [22] ſich vereinigen. [23] zart. [24] Gefühl, *n.* [25] geſund. [26] Verſtand. [27] ſeltſam. [28] durchweben. [29] zu. [30] gefällig. [31] Schwermuth, *f.* [32] eigentlich. [33] Weſen, *n.* [34] weich. [35] fließend. [36] ſanft gefärbt. [37] Schreibart, *f.* [38] ſing. [39] verrathen. [40] geiſtig. [41] Eigenſchaft. [42] zwingen. [43] da. [44] Autor. [45] Werk, *n.* [46] höher. [47] Anſpruch, pl. [48] vollſtönend. [49] *say*, we ſuffer laſſen. [50] vermodern. [51] Bücherbrett, *n.* (*pl.*—er). [52] hegen. [53] legen an. [54] Herz, *n.*, ſing. [55] anführen. [56] Scheingelehrſamkeit. [57] *but* does not here deny ſo much, as it continues the discourse. [58] ſich verweben. [59] Geiſt, ſing. [60] beſänftigen. [61] Gemüth, ſing. [62] in Einklang bringen. [63] verſetzen. [64] *say*, a good. [65] Stimmung. [66] gegen. [67] indem. [68] *say*, this. [69] omit *men*. [70] *say*, die Bekanntſchaft. [71] das Privatleben berückſichtigend. [72] Lebensbeſchreibung.

Goldsmith lets[73] us into the secret[74] of his gifted[75] pages.[76] We there[77] discover them to be little more than transcripts[78] of his own heart, and picturings[79] of his fortunes.[80] There he shows[81] himself the same kind, artless, goodhumoured[82], excursive[83], sensible[84], whimsical[85], intelligent[86] being[87] that he appears in his writings. Scarcely an adventure[88] or character is given[89] in his works that may not be traced[90] to his own parti-coloured[91] story. Many of his most ludicrous[92] scenes[93] and ridiculous[94] incidents[95] have been drawn from[96] his own blunders[97] and mischances[98]; and he seems[99] really[100] to have been buffeted into[101] almost every maxim[102] imparted[103] by him for the instruction[104] of his reader.

XI. Goldsmith's Parentage[1] and Birthplace.[2]

Oliver Goldsmith was born on[3] the 10th of November, 1728, at the hamlet[4] of Pallis, or Pallasmore, county[5] of Longford, in Ireland. He sprang[6] from[7] a respectable[8] but by no means (a) thrifty[9] stock.[10] Some families seem to inherit[11] kindness[12] and incompetency[13], and to hand down[14] virtue and poverty from generation[15]

---

[73] einlaſſen. [74] Geheimniß, *n.* [75] geiſtreich. [76] Schrift. [77] darin. [78] Abſchrift. [79] Schilderung. [80] Glücksfall. [81] ſich erweiſen als. [82] gutmüthig. [83] herumſtreifend. [84] verſtändig. [85] drollig. [86] geiſtvoll. [87] Weſen. [88] Abenteuer. [89] erwähnen. [90] zurückführen. [91] bunt. [92] luſtig. [93] Auftritt. [94] lächerlich. [95] Ereigniß, *n.* [96] entlehnen, with Dat. [97] Irrthum, *m.* (*pl.*—thümer). [98] Unfall. [99] *say*, it seems as if every maxim had been buffeted into him. [100] wirklich. [101] einpauken, with Dat. [102] Grundſatz. [103] vortragen. [104] Belehrung.

[1] Abkunft. [2] Geburtsort, *m.* [3] an. [4] Dörfchen. [5] Grafſchaft, *say*, in the. [6] ſtammen. [7] aus. [8] achtbar. [9] wohlhabend. [10] Geſchlecht, *n.* [11] erben. [12] Herzensgüte. [13] Untüchtigkeit. [14] überliefern. [15] Alter, *n.*

to generation. Such was the case with (bei) the Goldsmiths. "They were always," according[16] to their own accounts[17], "a strange[18] family; they rarely acted like other people; their hearts were[19] in[20] the right place[21], but their heads seemed to be doing anything[22] but[23] what they ought." "They were remarkable[24]" says another statement[25], "for[26] their worth[27], but of no cleverness[28] in the ways of the world." Oliver Goldsmith will be found[29] faithfully[30] to inherit the virtues and weaknesses[31] of his race.[32] His father, the Rev.[33] Charles Goldsmith, with hereditary[34] improvidence[35], married when (*say* he was yet) very young and very poor, and starved along[36], for a number[37] of years, on[38] a small country curacy[39] and the assistance of his wife's friends. His whole income[40], eked out[41] by the produce[42] of some fields which he farmed[43], and of some occasional[44] duties[45] performed[46] for his wife's uncle, the rector[47] of an adjoining[48] parish[49], did not exceed[50] forty pounds.

"And passing[51] rich with forty pounds[52] a[53] year."

He inhabited an old half rustic[54] mansion[55] that stood on a rising[56] ground[57], in a rough[58] lonely[59] part of the country, overlooking[60] a low[61] tract[62] occasionally[63] flooded[64] by the river Inny. In this house Goldsmith

[16] nach. [17] Aussage, sing. [18] seltsam. [19] sitzen. [20] an. [21] Stelle. [22] alles. [23] nur nicht. [24] berühmt. [25] Bericht, *m.* [26] wegen. [27] Biederkeit. [28] Geschick, *n.* [29] *say*, had, as will be found, inherited. [30] getreulich. [31] Schwachheit. [32] Geschlecht. [33] Prediger. [34] angeerbt. [35] Unbedachtsamkeit. [36] kümmerlich leben. [37] *say*, during a series; Reihe, *f.* [38] von. [39] Landpfarre, *f.* [40] Einkommen. [41] vermehren. [42] Ertrag. [43] pachten. [44] gelegentlich. [45] Amtsarbeit, *f.* [46] verrichten. [47] Oberprediger. [48] benachbart. [49] Kirchspiel, *n.* [50] übersteigen. [51] äußerst. [52] sing. [53] *say*, the. [54] ländlich. [55] Herrenhaus, *n.* [56] aufsteigen. [57] Grund, *m.* [58] rauh. [59] einsam. [60] herabsehen auf. [61] niedrig. [62] Landstrich. [63] zuweilen. [64] überschwemmen.

was born, and it was a birth-place worthy[65] of a poet; for, by[66] all accounts, it was haunted ground.[67] A tradition[68] handed down among the neighbouring[69] peasantry[70] states[71], that, in after[72] years, the house remaining for some time untenanted[73], went to decay[74], the roof[75] fell in[76], and it became so lonely and forlorn[77] as to be[78] a resort[79] for the "good people[80]," or fairies[81]; who, in Ireland[82], are supposed[83] to delight[84] in old, crazy[85], deserted[86] mansions for[87] their midnight[88] revels.[89] All attempts to repair[90] it were in vain; the fairies battled[91] stoutly[92] to maintain[93] (*say* the) possession. A large mis-shapen[94] hobgoblin[95] used to bestride[96] the house every evening with an immense[97] pair of jack-boots[98], which, in[99] his efforts[100] at[101] hard[102] riding, he would[103] thrust[104] through the roof, kicking[105] to pieces all the work of the preceding[106] day. The house was therefore left[107] to its fate, and went[108] to ruin.[109] Such is the popular[110] tradition about[111] Goldsmith's birthplace.

About[112] two years after his birth a change[113] came

---

[65] würdig. [66] nach. [67] *say*, it was not quite in order, *or* right there; right geheuer. [68] Sage. [69] benachbart. [70] Landvolk, *n.* [71] melden. [72] ſpäter. [73] unverpachtet. [74] in Verfall gerathen. [75] Dach, *n.* [76] einfallen. [77] öde. [78] *say*, that it was chosen as erwählen zu. [79] Aufenthalt, *m.* [80] Völkchen, *n.*, sing. [81] Fee, *f.* [82] *say*, as is supposed in Ireland. [83] annehmen. [84] Freude haben an. [85] gebrechlich. [86] verlaſſen. [87] wegen. [88] mitternächtlich. [89] Gelag, *n.* (*pl.*—e). [90] ausbeſſern. [91] ſtreiten. [92] tapfer. [93] behaupten. [94] mißgeſtaltet. [95] Kobold, *m.* [96] beſteigen. [97] ungeheuer. [98] Kanonenſtiefel, *m.* [99] bei. [100] Anſtrengung, sing. [1] *say*, in the im. [2] ſcharf. [3] Imperfect of mögen, Indic. [4] ſchleudern. [5] zerſchlagen, and *say*, and thus kick. [6] vorhergehen. [7] überlaſſen. [8] *say*, fell in ruins. [9] Trümmer, only used in plural. [10] volksthümlich. [11] von. [12] ungefähr. [13] Veränderung.

over[114] the circumstances of his father; by[115] the death of his wife's uncle he succeeded to[116] the rectory[117] of Kilkenny West; and, abandoning[118] the old goblin mansion[119], he removed[120] to Lissoy, in the county of Westmeath, where he occupied[121] a farm[122] of seventy acres, situated on[123] the skirts[124] of that pretty little village. This was the scene[125] of Goldsmith's boyhood[126], the little world whence[127] he drew[128] many of those pictures, rural[129] and domestic, whimsical[130] and touching[131], which abound[132] throughout (*say* in) his works, and which appeal[133] so eloquently[134], both to[135] the fancy[136] and the heart.

XII. Goldsmith's Father.

Lissoy is confidently[1] cited[2] as the original[3] of his "Auburn" in the "Deserted Village;" his father's establishment[4], a mixture[5] of farm[6] and parsonage[7], furnished[8] hints[9], it is said, for the rural[10] economy[11] of the Vicar of Wakefield; and his father himself, with his learned[12] simplicity[13], his guileless[14] wisdom, his amiable piety, and utter[15] ignorance[16] of the world, has been exquisitely[17] portrayed[18] in the worthy[19] Dr. Primrose.

---

[114]in. [115]in Folge. [116]gelangen zu. [117]Oberpfarre, *f.* [118]aufgeben. [119]Koboldwohnung. [120]ziehen. [121]pachten. [122]Landwirthſchaft, *f.* [123]an. [124]Saum, *m.*, sing. [125]Schau-platz, *m.* [126]Kinderjahr, *n.*, plural. [127]woraus. [128]ſchöpfen. [129]ländlich. [130]komiſch. [131]rührend. [132]ſo reichlich zerſtreut ſein. [133]ſprechen. [134]beredt. [135]zu. [136]Einbildungskraft.

[1]zuverſichtlich. [2]angeben. [3]Urbild, *n.* [4]Haushalt. [5]Miſchung. [6]Meierei. [7]Pfarre, *f.* [8]liefern. [9]Wink, *m.* [10]ländlich. [11]Einrichtung. [12]gelehrt. [13]Einfachheit. [14]arglos. [15]völlig. [16]Unkenntniß. [17]vortrefflich. [18]abſchildern. [19]würdig.

Let us pause[20] for a moment, and draw from Goldsmith's writings one or two of those pictures which, under feigned[21] names, represent[22] his father and his family, and the happy fireside[23] of his childish days.[24]

"My father," says the man in black[25], who, in some respects[26], is a counterpart[27] of Goldsmith himself, "My father, the younger son of a good family, was possessed of[28] a small living[29] in the church. His education was[30] above his fortune, and his generosity[31] greater than his education. Poor as he was, he had his flatterers[32] poorer than himself: for every dinner he gave them, they returned[33] him an equivalent[34] in[35] praise; and this was all he wanted.[36] His pleasure increased[37] in[38] proportion[39] to the pleasure he gave: he loved all the world, so he fancied[40] all the world loved him.

"As his fortune was but small, he lived[41] up to the very extent of it: he had no intention[42] of leaving[43] his children money, for that was dross[44], he resolved they should have learning, for learning, he used[45] to observe[46], was better than silver and gold. For[47] this purpose[48] he undertook[49] to instruct[50] us himself, and took[51] as much care[52] to form[53] our morals[54] as to improve[55] our understanding[56]; and we were perfectly instructed[57]

---

[20] einhalten. [21] erdichten. [22] darſtellen. [23] Kreis, *m.* [24] Kindertag, *m.* [25] *say*, in the black dress, sing. [26] Hinſicht. [27] Gegenſtück, *n.* [28] beſitzen. [29] Pfründe, *f.* [30] *say*, went. [31] Edelmuth, and add *was*. [32] Schmeichler. [33] bezahlen. [34] Vergütung. [35] an. [36] wünſchen. [37] ſich vergrößern. [38] *say*, in the. [39] Verhältniß, *n.* [40] ſich einbilden. [41] *say*, he spent every penny of it; to spend verzehren. [42] Abſicht. [43] hinterlaſſen. [44] Schlacke, *f.* [45] pflegen. [46] bemerken. [47] zu. [48] Zweck, *m.* [49] *say*, he undertook it. [50] unterrichten. [51] tragen. [52] Sorge. [53] bilden. [54] Sitte, *f.* [55] verbeſſern. [56] Verſtand, but mark, you must say in German, *to improve our morals, and to form our understanding.* [57] unterweiſen.

in the art[58] of giving away thousands before we were taught[59] the necessary[60] qualification[61] of getting[62] a farthing.[63]"

XIII. Goldsmith rejected[1] by the Bishop.[2]

The time was now arrived for Goldsmith to apply for[3] orders[4], and he presented himself[5] accordingly[6] before[7] the Bishop of Elfin for ordination.[8] We have stated[9] his objection[10] to clerical[11] life, the obligation[12] to wear a black coat; and whimsical[13] as it may appear, dress[14] seems, in fact[15], to have formed[16] an obstacle[17] to his entrance[18] into the church. He had ever a passion[19] for[20] clothing his sturdy[21] but awkward[22] little person in gay[23] colours; and on[24] this solemn[25] occasion, when it was to be supposed[26] his garb[27] would be of suitable[28] gravity[29], he appeared luminously[30] arrayed[31] in scarlet[32] breeches.[33] He was rejected by the bishop; some say for[34] want[35] of[36] sufficient studious[37] preparation[38], his rambles[39] and frolics[40] having been[41] much in the way of[42] his theological[43] studies; others attribute[44]

---

[58] Kunſt from können. [59] *say*, before we learned. [60] nöthig. [61] Tüchtigkeit. [62] erwerben. [63] Heller, *m.*

[1] *say*, is rejected abweiſen. [2] Biſchof. [3] einkommen wegen. [4] prieſterliche Beſtallung. [5] ſich melden. [6] demgemäß. [7] bei. [8] *say*, in order to obtain the same. [9] erwähnen. [10] Einwand gegen. [11] geiſtlich. [12] Verpflichtung; *say*, namely nämlich before *the*. [13] ſeltſam. [14] Anzug, with the Definite Article. [15] in der That. [16] bilden. [17] Hinderniß, *n.*, gegen. [18] Eintritt. [19] Leidenſchaft. [20] dafür, and express *clothing* with the Infinitive and zu. [21] ſtämmig. [22] ſchwerfällig. [23] lebhaft. [24] bei. [25] feierlich. [26] *say*, when one ought to suppose vermuthen. [27] Gewand, *n.* [28] gehörig. [29] Würde, *f.* [30] glänzend. [31] ſchmücken. [32] ſcharlachen. [33] Beinkleid, *n.* (*pl.*—er). [34] wegen. [35] Mangel, *m.* [36] an. [37] gelehrt. [38] Vorbereitung. [39] Wanderung. [40] luſtiger Streich frolic. [41] ſtehen. [42] put the dat. [43] theologiſch. [44] zu'ſchreiben.

his rejection[45] to reports[46] of[47] his college irregularities[48], which the bishop had received from his old tyrant, Wilder; but those who look into the matter with more knowing[49] eyes, pronounce[50] the scarlet breeches to have been the fundamental[51] objection.[52]

XIV. Goldsmith's Letter to[1] his Mother.

My dear Mother, — If you will sit down[2] and calmly listen to[3] what I say, you shall be fully resolved[4] in[5] every one of those many questions[6] you have asked[7] me. I went to Cork, and converted[8] my horse, which you prize[9] so highly, into cash[10], took my passage[11] in a ship bound[12] for America, and, at the same time, paid the captain for my freight[13], and all (the) other expenses[14] of my voyage; but it so happened[15], that the wind did not answer[16] for three weeks; and you know (insert ja), mother, that I could not command[17] the elements.[18] My misfortune was (*say*, would it), that, when the wind served[19], I happened[20] to be with a party in the country, and my friend, the captain, never[21] enquired[22] after me, but set sail[23] with as[24] much[25] indifference[26] as if I had been on

---

[45] Abweiſung. [46] Gerücht, *n.* (*pl.*—e). [47] von, and *say*, his irregularities in college; *in college* is auf der Univerſität. [48] unregelmäßiges Leben, sing. [49] ſcharf. [50] erklären. [51] eigentlich. [52] Einwurf.

[1] an. [2] ſich niederſetzen. [3] hören auf. [4] vollſtändige Antworten erhalten, lit., get complete answers. [5] auf. [6] Frage. [7] *say*, you have addressed to me richten an. [8] machen. [9] ſchätzen. [10] zu Geld. [11] Platz, *m.* [12] beſtimmt ſein to be bound. [13] Fracht, *f.* [14] Unkoſten only used in plural. [15] ſich treffen. [16] uns entgegen ſein. [17] gebieten, with Dat. [18] Elemente. [19] günſtig werden. [20] express by an Adverb, gerade. [21] durchaus nicht. [22] Nachfrage thun, *and say*, no enquiry at all durchaus keine Nachfrage. [23] unter Segel gehen. [24] eben ſo. [25] groß. [26] Gleichgültigkeit.

board.[27] The remainder[28] of my time I employed[29] in the city and its environs[30], viewing[31] everything curious[32], and you know no one can starve[33] when he has money in his pocket. Reduced[34], however, to[35] my last two guineas, I began to think of[36] my dear mother and friends whom I had left behind me; and so bought that generous[37] beast, Fiddle-back[38], and bade adieu to Cork with only five shillings in my pocket. This, to be sure[39], was but a scanty[40] allowance[41] for man and horse towards[42] a journey of above[43] a hundred miles; but I did not despair[44], for I knew I must find friends on (an) the road. I recollected[45], particularly[46], an old and faithful[47] acquaintance[48] I made at college, and who had often and earnestly[49] pressed[50] me to spend[51] a summer with him, and he lived but eight miles from Cork. The circumstance of vicinity[52] he would[53] expatiate to[54] me with peculiar[55] emphasis.[56] "We shall," says he, "enjoy the delights[57] of both city and country, and you shall command[58] my stable and my purse."[59] However, upon the way I met[60] a poor woman all[61] in tears, who told me her husband[62] had been arrested[63] for a debt[64] he was not able to pay, and that his eight children must now starve, bereaved[65] as[66] they were of his industry, which had been their only support.[67]

---

[27] am Bord. [28] übrige Theil. [29] zubringen. [30] Umgebung. [31] ſich (Dat.) anſehen. [32] merkwürdig, *say*, that was curious. [33] vor Hunger ſterben. [34] herunterbringen. [35] auf. [36] an. [37] edelmüthig. [38] Fiedelrücken. [39] allerdings. [40] dürftig. [41] Zehrgeld, *n.* [42] auf, Acc. [43] ungefähr. [44] verzweifeln. [45] ſich erinnern, with Gen. [46] beſonders. [47] treu. [48] *say*, friend whose acquaintance I made; Bekanntſchaft acquaintance. [49] dringend. [50] einladen. [51] zubringen. [52] große Nähe, and *say*, concerning betreffend the vicinity. [53] pflegen. [54] ſich weitläufig auslaſſen vor. [55] eigenthümlich. [56] Nachdruck. [57] Freude. [58] Herr ſein über. [59] Beutel, *m.* [60] treffen. [61] ganz. [62] Mann. [63] ins Gefängniß führen. [64] Schuld. [65] berauben. [66] *say*, as they were bereaved. [67] Stütze.

I thought myself[68] at home, being not far from my friend's house, and therefore parted[69] with[70] a moiety[71] of all[72] my store[73]; and pray, Mother, ought I not to have given her the other half-crown, for what she got[74] would be of little[75] use[76] to her? However, I soon arrived at the mansion of my affectionate friend, guarded[77] by the vigilance[78] of a huge[79] mastiff[80], who flew[81] at[82] me, and would have torn[83] me to pieces but for[84] the assistance of a woman, whose countenance was not less grim[85] than that of the dog; yet she, with great humanity[86], relieved[87] me from the jaws[88] of this Cerberus, and was prevailed on[89] to carry up[90] my name to her master. Without suffering[91] me to wait long, my old friend, who was then recovering[92] from a severe[93] fit of sickness[94] came down in his night-cap[95], night-gown[96], and slippers[97], and embraced[98] me with the most cordial[99] welcome[100], showed[101] me in, and, after giving me a history of his indisposition[102], assured me that he considered[103] himself peculiarly fortunate in having under his roof the man he most loved on earth, and whose stay[104] with him must, above[105] all things, contribute[106] to his perfect[107] recovery.[108]

I now repented[109] sorely[110] I had not given the poor woman the other half-crown, as I thought all my bills[111]

---

[68] *say*, that I was. [69] ſcheiden. [70] von. [71] Hälfte. [72] *say*, my whole store. [73] Vorrath. [74] erhalten. [75] gering. [76] Nutzen, *m.* [77] beſchützen. [78] Wachſamkeit. [79] ungeheuer. [80] Kettenhund, *m.* [81] zufliegen. [82] auf. [83] reißen. [84] *say*, without. [85] grimmig. [86] Menſchenfreundlichkeit. [87] befreien. [88] Rachen, *m.*, sing. [89] vermögen, Verb Active, Part. vermocht. [90] melden. [91] laſſen. [92] ſich erholen. [93] ſchwer. [94] Krankheitsanfall. [95] Nachtmütze, *f.* [96] Schlafrock, *m.* [97] Pantoffel, *m.* (*pl.*—). [98] umarmen. [99] warm. [100] Bewillkommung. [1] hineinführen. [2] Unwohlſein, *n.* [3] halten für. [4] Verweilen. [5] vor. [6] beitragen. [7] völlig. [8] Geneſung. [9] bereuen. [10] ſchmerzlich. [11] Wechſel, *m*

of (auf, Acc.) humanity [112] would be punctually [113] answered [114] by this worthy man. I revealed [115] to him my whole soul; I opened [116] to him all my distresses [117]; and freely [118] owned [119] that I had but one half-crown in my pocket, but that now, like a ship after weathering out [120] the storm, I considered myself secure [121] in a safe [122] and hospitable harbour. [123] He made no answer [124], but walked about [125] (*say* in) the room, rubbing [126] his hands as one in deep study. [127] This I imputed [128] to the sympathetic [129] feelings [130] of a tender [131] heart, which increased [132] my esteem [133] for him, and, as that increased [134], I gave the most favourable [135] interpretation [136] to his silence. [137] I construed it into [138] delicacy [139] of sentiment [140], as if he dreaded [141] to wound my pride by expressing [142] his commiseration [143] in words, leaving [144] his generous conduct [145] to speak for itself.

It now approached six o'clock in the [146] evening; and as I had eaten no breakfast [147], and as my spirits [148] were raised [149], my appetite [150] for [151] dinner [152] grew uncommonly [153] keen. [154] At length the old woman came into the room with two plates [155], one spoon, and a dirty [156]

---

[112] Menſchlichkeit. [113] pünktlich. [114] einlöſen. [115] offenbaren. [116] darlegen. [117] Noth, sing. [118] freimüthig. [119] geſtehen. [120] beſtehen. [121] geborgen. [122] ſicher. [123] Hafen, *m.* [124] *say*, he answered nothing erwiedern. [125] umher. [126] reiben. [127] Nachdenken. [128] zurechnen. [129] theilnehmend. [130] Empfindung. [131] zärtlich. [132] erhöhen. [133] Achtung. [134] mark this, *increased* is *neuter*, and must be expressed, in German, by the *reflective* form. [135] günſtig. [136] Deutung. [137] Stillſchweigen. [138] auslegen als, lit. to interpret as. [139] Feinheit. [140] Gefühl, *n.* [141] Subjunctive Imperfect. [142] ausdrücken. [143] Mitleiden. [144] überlaſſen, *say*, leaving it to his, etc. [145] Verfahren. [146] *say*, of the. [147] *say*, as I had eaten nothing for, etc. da ich Nichts zum, u. ſ. w. [148] Lebensgeiſt, *m.* [149] aufregen. [150] Appetit, *m.* [151] zum. [152] Mittagseſſen. [153] ungewöhnlich. [154] ſcharf. [155] Teller, *m.* [156] ſchmutzig.

cloth, which she laid upon the table. This appearance[157], without increasing[158] my spirits, did not diminish[159] my appetite. My protectress[160] soon returned with a bowl[161] of sago, a small porringer[162] of sour milk, a loaf[163] of stale[164] brown bread, and the heel[165] of an old cheese, all over[166] crawling[167] with[168] mites.[169] My friend apologised[170] that his illness obliged[171] him to live on[172] slops[173], and that better fare was not in the house; observing, at the same time, that a milk diet[174] was certainly the most healthful[175]; and at eight o'clock he again recommended a regular[176] life, declaring that, for his part[177], he *would lie down*[178] *with the lamb and rise*[179] *with the lark.*

My hunger was at[180] this time so exceedingly[181] sharp[182], that I wished for[183] another slice[184] of the loaf, but was obliged to go to bed without even that refreshment.[185] This lenten[186] entertainment[187] I had received, made[188] me resolve[189] to depart as soon as possible. Accordingly, next morning, when I spoke of going, he did not oppose[190] my resolution, — he rather[191] commended[192] my design[193]; adding[194] some very sage[195] counsel[196] upon[197] the occasion. "To be sure," said he, "the longer you stay away[198] from your mother, the more you will grieve[199] her and your friends; and possibly[200] they

---

[157] Erſcheinung. [158] erhöhen. [159] vermindern. [160] Beſchützerin. [161] Schale, *f.*, and add *full* voll. [162] Napf, *m.* [163] Laib, *m.* [164] altbacken. [165] Rinde, *f.* [166] durch und durch. [167] wimmeln. [168] von. [169] Made, *f.* [170] ſich entſchuldigen. [171] zwingen. [172] von. [173] dünne Speiſen. [174] Milchdiät, *f.* [175] geſund. [176] regelmäßig. [177] ſeinerſeits. [178] ſich niederlegen. [179] aufſtehen. [180] zu. [181] außerordentlich. [182] beißend. [183] *say*, to have. [184] Schnitte, *f.* [185] Labſal, *n.* [186] faſtenmäßig. [187] Bewirthung. [188] laſſen. [189] den Entſchluß faſſen. [190] nichts außetzen gegen. [191] eher. [192] billigen. [193] Plan, *m.* [194] hinzufügen. [195] altklug. [196] Rath. [197] bei. [198] fortbleiben. [199] mit Gram erfüllen. [200] vielleicht.

are already afflicted[201] at[202] hearing of this foolish[203] expedition[204] you have made." Notwithstanding[205] all this, and without any hope of softening[206] his sordid[207] heart, I again renewed[208] the tale of my distress; and, asking how he thought I could travel about a hundred miles upon[209] one half-crown, I begged[210] to borrow[211] a single guinea, which I assured him should be repaid with thanks. "And you know, Sir," said I, "it is no more than I have done for you." To which[212] he firmly[213] answered, "Why[214] look you, Mr. Goldsmith, that is neither here nor there[215]: I have paid you all you ever lent me; and this sickness of mine[216] has left me bare of cash.[217] But I have bethought myself[218] of a conveyance[219] for you: sell your horse, and I will furnish[220] you a much better one to ride on." I readily[221] grasped at[222] his proposal[223], and begged[224] to see the nag[225]: on which he led me to his bed chamber[226], and from[227] under the bed he pulled out[228] a stout[229] oak-stick.[230] "Here he is," said he, "take this in your hand, and it will carry you to your mother's with more[231] safety than such a horse as you ride." I was in doubt when I got[232] it into my hand, whether I should not, in the first place[233], apply[234] it to his pate[235], but a rap[236] at[237] the street door[238] made the wretch[239]

---

[1]betrüben. [2]*say*, when they hear. [3]thöricht. [4]Ausflug, *m.* [5]trotz. [6]erweichen. [7]geizig. [8]wiederholen. [9]mit. [10]*say*, I begged him. [11]*say*, to lend me leihen. [12]worauf. [13]feſt. [14]nun. [15]weder hier noch da. [16]this my sickness. [17]*say*, without (any) money. [18]denken an. [19]Fuhrwerk, *n.* [20]verſehen, Acc. of the *person*, and mit, Dat. of the *thing*. [21]gierig. [22]ergreifen. [23]Vorſchlag. [24]*say*, and wished. [25]Klepper, *m.* [26]Schlafzimmer, *n.* [27]not translated. [28]hervorziehen. [29]dick. [30]Eichenſtock. [31]größer. [32]bekommen. [33]*say*, before all things. [34]tüchtig anlegen an. [35]Kopf, *m.* [36]Pochen. [37]an. [38]Hausthüre. [39]Elend, to be used as a Substantive.

fly to it[240]; and when I returned to the parlour[241], he introduced[242] me, as if nothing of the kind[243] had happened[244], to the gentleman who entered[245], as[246] Mr. Goldsmith, his most ingenious[247] and worthy friend, of whom he had so often heard him speak with rapture.[248] I could scarcely compose[249] myself, and must have betrayed indignation[250] in my mien[251] to the stranger[252], who was a counsellor-at-law[253] in the neighbourhood, a man of engaging[254] aspect[255] and polite[256] address.[257] After spending an hour, he asked[258] my friend and me to dine[259] with[260] him at his house. This I declined[261] at first, as I wished to have no further communication[262] with my hospitable friend; but[263] at[264] the solicitation[265] of both, I at last consented[266]; determined[267] as I was by two motives[268]: one, that I was prejudiced[269] in favour[270] of the looks[271] and manners[272] of the counsellor; and the other, that I stood in need[273] of a comfortable[274] dinner. And there, indeed, I found everything I could wish, — abundance[275] without profusion[276], and elegance[277] without affectation.[278] In the evening, when my old friend, who had eaten very plentifully[279] at[280] his neighbour's table, but talked again of lying down with the lamb, made a motion[281] to me of retiring[282], our generous host[283] re-

[240]dahin. [241]Beſuchszimmer, *n.* [242]vorſtellen. [243]Art, *f.* [244]vorfallen. [245]eintreten. [246]als. [247]geiſtreich. [248]Entzücken. [249]ſich ſammeln. [250]a feature of indignation Zug des Unwillens. [251]Miene, *f.* [252]Fremd, to be treated as a Substantive. [253]Gerichtsrath. [254]einnehmen. [255]Geſicht, *n.* [256]höflich. [257]Benehmen. [258]einladen. [259]ſpeiſen. [260]bei. [261]ablehnen. [262]and *say*, no more to do nichts mehr zu thun. [263]allein. [264]auf. [265]das dringende Bitten. [266]einwilligen. [267]beſtimmen. [268]Beweggrund, *m.* [269]einnehmen. [270]zu Gunſten. [271]das Aeußere. [272]Weſen. [273]I stand in need mir thut Noth. [274]behaglich. [275]Fülle. [276]Ueberladung. [277]Anmuth, *f.* [278]Ziererei. [279]reichlich. [280]an. [281]vorſchlagen. [282]ſich zurückziehen. [283]Wirth.

quested[284] I should take a bed[285] with him[286]; upon which, I plainly[287] told my friend that he might go home and take care of[288] the horse he had given me, but that I should never re-enter his doors.[289] He went away with a laugh[290]; leaving[291] me to add[292] this to the other little things the counsellor already knew of his plausible[293] neighbour. And now, my dear mother, I found sufficient[294] to reconcile[295] me to[296] all my follies[297], for here I spent three whole days. The counsellor had two daughters, who played enchantingly[298] on the harpsichord[299], and yet it was but[300] a melancholy[301] pleasure I felt the first time I heard them; for that being the first time also that either of them[302] had touched[303] the instrument[304] since their mother's death, I saw the tears in silence[305] trickle down[306] their father's cheeks.[307] I every day endeavoured[308] to go away, but every day was pressed[309] and obliged[310] to stay.[311] On my going, the counsellor offered[312] me his purse[313], with a horse and servant to convey[314] me home[315], but the latter I declined[316], and only took a guinea to bear[317] my necessary[318] expenses[319] on the road.

OLIVER GOLDSMITH.

(*Washington Irving's Life of Oliver Goldsmith.*)

---

[284] bitten. [285] mit einem Bette fürlieb nehmen, *lit.* to be content with a bed. [286] *say*, in his house. [287] gerade heraus. [288] Sorge tragen für. [289] *say*, threshold ſeine Schwelle wieder betreten. [290] *say*, laughing. [291] zurücklaſſen, introduced by indem. [292] hinzufügen. [293] *say*, of his friend who talked with so plausible reasons mit ſolchen Scheingründen. [294] hinreichend, and *add* entertainment, Unterhaltung. [295] ausſöhnen. [296] mit. [297] thörichte Streiche. [298] reizend. [299] Flügel, *m.* [300] nur. [301] wehmüthig. [302] eine von beiden. [303] berühren. [304] Inſtrument, *n.* [305] ſtill. [306] herabträufeln. [307] Wange, *f.* [308] verſuchen. [309] dringend einladen. [310] nöthigen. [311] bleiben. [312] anbieten. [313] Börſe, *f.* [314] ſchaffen. [315] nach Hauſe. [316] *say*, for the latter I thanked, by which is implied in German that he did not accept them. [317] beſtreiten. [318] nothwendig. [319] Ausgabe, take Plural.

XV.

My dear Friend,

For so much undeserved[1] kindness[2] and partiality[3] as you have always shown[4] me, and for the dear little gift[5] which you have now sent me, what return[6] can I make[7] you? Only that of my very grateful[8] thanks, and most sincere[9] affection.[10] But as you always possessed the latter, I have now nothing new to offer[11] you but[12] meagre[13] thanks. I admire my new pencil very much, and think[14] the device[15] on the seal[16] both pretty and elegant.[17] I hope very soon to see you and your family: till then and ever, I remain.[18]

Your very affectionate friend, N. N.

The 5th August, 1850.

XVI. Wolves[1] in Courland.[2]

In perambulating[3] the woods, the idea[4] would[5] sometimes cross us, that the wolves, the print[6] of whose footsteps[7], intercepted[8] by the dotted[9] track[10] of the hare[11] and slenderly[12] defined[13] claws[14] of numerous birds, is seen in different directions[15], and even beneath[16] the windows of our house, might prowl[17] by day as well as by night. One day when, fortunately[18] perhaps, unescorted[19]

[1] unverdient. [2] Freundlichkeit. [3] Vorliebe. [4] beweiſen. [5] Geſchenk, *n.* [6] *say*, what can I as return Erwiederung. [7] *say*, offer anbieten. [8] *say*, hearty herzlich. [9] aufrichtig. [10] Zuneigung. [11] *say*, to give. [12] als. [13] mager. [14] halten für. [15] Figur, *f.* [16] Siegel, *n.* [17] geſchmackvoll. [18] verbleiben.

[1] Wolf, *m.* [2] Curland. [3] durchwandern. [4] the idea crosses me der Gedanke begegnet mir. [5] mögen, Imperf. [6] Fährte, *f.* [7] Fußſtapfe, *f.* [8] unterbrechen. [9] punktiren. [10] Spur, *f.* [11] Haſe, *m.* [12] unmerklich. [13] bezeichnen. [14] Klaue, *f.* [15] Richtung. [16] unter. [17] auf Raub ausgehen. [18] zum Glück. [19] unbegleitet.

by the huge[20] dogs, we were mounting[21] a hill to a neighbouring[22] mill[23], my companion[24] suddenly halted[25], and laying her hand on mine, silently[26] pointed to[27] a moving[28] object within fifty yards[29] of us. It was a great brute[30] of a wolf stalking leisurely[31] along[32] — its high bristly[33] back[34] set up[35] — its head prowling down[36] — who took no notice[37] of us, but slowly pursued the same path[38] into the wood which we had quitted a few minutes before. We must both plead guilty[39] to blanched cheeks[40], but beyond this[41] to no signs[42] of cowardice[43]; and, in truth, the instances are so rare of their attacking[44] human beings, even the most defenceless[45] children, that we had no cause for[46] fear. They war not on[47] men unless[48] under excessive[49] pressure[50] of hunger, or when, as in the case of a butcher[51], his clothes are impregnated[52] with the smell[53] of fresh blood. This is so certain an attraction[54] that peasants carrying butchers'-meat[55] are followed[56] by wolves, and often obliged to compound for[57] their own safety by flinging[58] the dangerous commodity[59] amongst them; or, if in a sledge[60], three or four of these ravenous[61] animals will[62] spring upon the basket of meat[63], and tear it open[64] before their eyes. Wherever an animal falls, there, though

---

[20] gewaltig. [21] hinaufſteigen. [22] benachbart. [23] Mühle, *f.* [24] Geſellſchafterin. [25] ſtehen bleiben. [26] ſchweigend. [27] hinweiſen auf. [28] ſich regen. [29] Elle, *f.* [30] Beſtie, *f.* [31] gemach. [32] to stalk along dahin ſchreiten. [33] borſtig. [34] Rücken, *m.* [35] aufrichten. [36] niederwärts ſuchen. [37] ſich bekümmern um. [38] Fußweg, *m.* [39] *say*, so far in ſo fern declare ourselves guilty für ſchuldig erklären. [40] *say*, that our cheeks blanched ſich entfärben. [41] ſonſt. [42] *say*, that we betrayed no signs Zeichen verrathen. [43] Feigheit. [44] anfallen. [45] wehrlos. [46] Urſache zu, and add the def. Art. [47] bekriegen. [48] es ſei denn. [49] äußerſt. [50] Drang. [51] Schlächter. [52] ſättigen. [53] Geruch, *m.* [54] Anlockungsmittel, *n.* [55] friſches Fleiſch. [56] verfolgen. [57] erkaufen. [58] ſchleudern. [59] Waare, *f* [60] Schlitten, *m.* [61] reißend. [62] wohl mögen. [63] Fleiſchkorb, *m* [64] aufreißen.

to all appearance[65] no cover[66] nor sign of a wolf be visible[67] for miles[68] round[69], several will be found[70] congregated[71] in half an hour's time. Such is their horrid[72] thirst for blood[73], that a wounded wolf knows[74] that only by the strictest[75] concealment[76] can he escape[77] being[78] torn in pieces by his companions.[79] As for[80] the dogs, it is heartrending[81] to think of the numbers[82] which pay for their fidelity with their lives.[83] If a couple of wolves prowl[84] round a house or fold[85] at[86] night, a dozen dogs, with every[87] variety[88] of tone, from the sharp yap[89] of the shepherd's terrier[90] to the hoarse[91] bay[92] of the cattle-hound[93], will plunge[94] after[95] them, and put them to flight.[96] But if one, more zealous[97], venture[98] beyond[99] his companions, the cunning[100] brutes face about[101], seize him, and before three minutes are over[102] there is nothing left[103] of[104] poor *Carrier Pois*[105], or sheep-boy[106], a common name[107] for these great mastiffs[108],

---

[65] *say*, according to all appearance; nach, which is to be put after the Substantive Anſchein. [66] Lager, *n.* [67] ſichtbar. [68] Meilen weit. [69] *say*, in the round Runde. [70] take the reflective form. [71] zuſammenſchaaren. [72] ſchrecklich. [73] Blutdurſt, *m.* [74] insert *it* after *knows*. [75] ſcharf. [76] Verſteck, *n.* [77] entgehen, with the Dative; and insert *it* after *escape*; but you must then take the Dative of the Definite Article, used as Pronoun Demonstrative. [78] *say*, that he be not torn. [79] Gefährte, *m.* [80] *say*, what concerns anbetreffen. [81] herzzerreißend. [82] *say*, the great number (Anzahl, *f.*) of those. [83] Leben, only used in the singular. [84] ſchleichen. [85] Hürde, *f.* [86] bei, or *say*, at the time of night zur Nachtzeit. [87] *say*, every only possible. [88] Mannigfaltigkeit. [89] Gebell, *n.* [90] Schäferhund. [91] heiſer. [92] Klaffen. [93] Rinderhund, *m.* [94] ſich drein ſtürzen. [95] hinter. [96] in die Flucht ſchlagen. [97] *say*, with more zeal Eifer, *m.* [98] ſich wagen, and *say*, should venture. [99] vor, and put besides voraus after companions. [100] ſchlau. [1] herumſchwenken. [2] vorbei. [3] übrig laſſen. [4] von, with the Definite Article. [5] a Russian expression. [6] Schafjunge, *m.* [7] Gemeinname, *m.* [8] Bullenbeißer, *m.*

but (als) a few tufts[109] of bloody hair.[110] The cattle[111] themselves valiantly[112], and the horses, and the mares[113] especially who have a foal[114] at[115] their side, put themselves in an attitude of defence[116], and parry off[117] the enemy with their fore feet[118], their iron hoofs[119] often taking[120] great effect.[121] But, woe[122] be to them, if the wolf, breaking through the shower of blows[123], spring at[124] the throat[125], or stealing[126] behind his prey[127] fasten[128] on[129] his flank[130] —once down[131] all is over[132], though there be but one wolf. Sometimes in a sudden wheelround[133] the wolf will seize upon[134] a cow's tail[135], on[136] which he hangs[137] with his jaws[138] of ten-horse power[139] while the poor animal drags[140] him round[141] the field, and finally[142] leaves the unfortunate member in his grasp[143], too happy to escape[144] with a stump.[145] At[146] one time these animals increased[147] so frightfully[148] in number, that the assembly of knights[149], by which name the internal[150] senate of this province is designated[151], appointed[152] a reward[153] of five roubles[154] for every pair of ears brought to the

---

[109]Büſchel, *m.* [110]Haar, *n.* (*pl.*—e), take the plural. [111]Rind, *n.* (*pl.* —er). [112]gar tapfer. [113]Stute. [114]Füllen, *n.* [115]an. [116]eine Vertheidigungsſtellung annehmen. [117]zurückſchlagen. [118]Vorderfuß, *m.* [119]Huf, *m.* (*pl.*—Hufe). [120]thun. [121]Wirkung. [122]wehe, and leave out *be.* [123]Schauer, *m.*, shower; Schlag blow. [124]an. [125]Kehle, *f.* [126]ſich ſtehlen. [127]Beute, *f.* [128]*say*, seize it by the flank; seize anpacken. [129]bei. [130]Weiche, *f.* [131]auf dem Boden. [132]vorbei. [133]Schwenkung. [134]ergreifen. [135]*say*, the tail of a cow; tail Schweif, *m.* [136]an. [137]ſich hängen. [138]Kinnlade, *f.* [139]*say*, with the power, Kraft, of ten horses. [140]ſchleppen. [141]um, and put besides herum after *field.* [142]zuletzt. [143]Griff. [144]davonkommen. [145]Stummel, *m.* [146]zu. [147]to increase in number an Zahl ſich vermehren. [148]furchtbar. [149]Ritterſchaft. [150]inner. [151]bezeichnen. [152]feſt ſetzen. [153]Belohnung. [154]Rubel, *m.*

magistrate[155] of the district.[156] This worked[157] some change[158], and in proportion as[159] the wolves have fallen off[160], the assembly of knights has dropped[161] its price[162], though an opposite[163] policy[164] would perhaps have been more politic[165]; and now a pair of ears, generally[166] secured[167] from the destruction of a nest of young ones[168] does not fetch[169] more than a silver-rouble[170], or three roubles and a half.[171] Nevertheless[172] a thousand wolves upon the average[173] are killed in a year. An old plan to attract[174] them was to tie[175] a pig in a sack, squeaking[176] of course[177], upon a cart[178], and drive[179] him rapidly[180] through a wood or morass.[181] Any[182] cry of an animal is a gathering sound[183] for the wolf, but the voice of man, made in[184] his Creator's[185] image[186], will hold him aloof.[187] The blast[188] of a horn greatly[189] annoys[190], a fiddle[191] makes them fly[192], and the jingling[193] of bells[194] is also a means of scaring[195] them, which, besides the expedience[196] of proclaiming[197] your approach[198] in dark nights on these

---

[155] Beamte, *m.* [156] Bezirk, *m.* [157] hervorbringen. [158] Veränderung. [159] je nachdem, or im Verhältniß wie. [160] ſich vermindern. [161] ermäßigen. [162] Preis, *m.* [163] entgegengeſetzt. [164] Verfahren. [165] weiſe. [166] gewöhnlich. [167] gewinnen. [168] Junge, *n.*, declined as an Adjective. [169] einbringen. [170] Silberrubel, *m.* [171] three and a half is either drei und ein halb, or *say*, three entire and the fourth half drei ganze, und das Vierte halb, but this phrase is shortened by only using the two last words as one Viertehalb, and understanding the rest. [172] nichts deſto weniger. [173] im Durchſchnitte. [174] herbeilocken. [175] binden. [176] quiken. [177] natürlich. [178] Leiterwagen, *m.*, lit. a waggon, the sides of wich look like ladders. [179] fahren. [180] raſch. [181] Moraſt, *m.* [182] jeder. [183] Verſammlungszeichen. [184] nach. [185] Schöpfer. [186] Ebenbild, *n.* [187] fernhalten. [188] Schmettern. [189] ſehr. [190] beunruhigen. [191] Violine, *f.* [192] in die Flucht treiben. [193] Klingeln. [194] Schelle, *f.* [195] verſcheuchen. [196] Nutzen, *m.* [197] *say*, that one proclaims one's approach; to proclaim kund machen. [198] Nahen.

noiseless[199] sledge-roads[200], is one reason why all winter equipages[201] are fitted up[202] with bells. — *Letters from the Baltic.*

XVII. The Spectator's[1] Introduction.[2]

I have observed, that a reader seldom peruses[3] a book with pleasure till he knows whether the writer[4] of it[5] be a black[6] or a fair[7] man, of a mild or choleric[8] disposition[9], married[10] or a bachelor[11], with[12] other particulars[13] of the like[14] nature[15], that conduce[16] very much to the right understanding[17] of an author.[18] To gratify[19] this curiosity[20], which is so natural to a reader, I design[21] this paper[22] and my next, as prefatory[23] discourses[24] to[25] my following writings[26], and shall give some account[27] in them of the several persons that are engaged[28] in[29] this work. As the chief trouble[30] of compiling[31], digesting[32], and correcting[33], will fall to my share[34], I must do[35] myself the justice[36] to open[37] with my own history. I was born to[38] a small hereditary estate[39], which, according to the tradition of the

---

[199] geräuſchlos. [200] Schlittenbahn, *f.* [201] Winterfuhrwerk, *n.* [202] verzieren.

[1] Zuſchauer. [2] Einleitung. [3] durchblättern. [4] Verfaſſer. [5] as the cases of the neuter of the Personal Pronoun are not used with Prepositions, you must translate *of the same*. [6] dunkel, and say, *of dark*, or *fair complexion*. [7] hell, and *complexion* is Geſichtsfarbe, *f.* [8] zornig. [9] Gemüthsſtimmung. [10] verheirathen. [11] Junggeſelle. [12] nebſt. [13] Beſonderheit. [14] ähnlich, without the preceding Def. Art. [15] Art, *f.* [16] beitragen zu. [17] Verſtändniß. [18] Schriftſteller. [19] befriedigen. [20] Neugier, *f.* [21] beſtimmen. [22] Blatt, *n.* [23] bevorwortend. [24] Anſprache, sing. [25] für. [26] Schrift. [27] Bericht. [28] beſchäftigen. [29] bei. [30] Hauptmühe, *f.* [31] Zuſammentragen, *say*, of the compiling. [32] Verarbeiten. [33] Verbeſſern. [34] it falls to my share es wird mir zu Theil, or es fällt mir zu. [35] widerfahren laſſen. [36] Gerechtigkeit. [37] eröffnen. [38] *say*, as heir als Erbe. [39] Familiengut.

village where it lies, was bounded[40] by the same hedges[41] and ditches[42] in William the Conqueror's[43] time that[44] it is at present, and has been delivered down[45] from father to[46] son, whole[47] and entire[48], without the loss[49] or acquisition[50] of a single field or meadow[51] during the space[52] of six hundred years. The gravity[53] of my behaviour[54] in my infancy[55], seemed to favour[56] my mother's dream, in which she saw me as one of the judges of the land; for, as she has often told me, I threw away[57] my rattle[58] before I was two months old, and would not[59] make use[60] of[61] my coral[62] until they had taken away[63] the bells[64] from it. As for[65] the rest[66] of my infancy, there being nothing in it remarkable[67], I shall pass it over[68] in[69] silence.[70] I find that, during my nonage[71], I had the reputation[72] of a very sullen[73] youth[74], but was always a favourite of[75] my master, who used to say, that my parts[76] were solid[77], and would wear well.[78] I had not been long at the university, before[79] I distinguished myself[80] by a most[81] profound[82] silence; for during the space of eight years, excepting[83] in[84] the public exercises of[85] the college[86], I scarce uttered[87] the quantity[88] of a hundred words; and, indeed, do not

[40] begränzen. [41] Hecke, *f.* [42] Graben, *m.*, with a modification in pl. [43] Eroberer. [44] *say*, with which. [45] *say*, inherited ſich forterben. [46] auf. [47] ganz. [48] vollſtändig. [49] Verluſt, *m.* [50] Erwerbung. [51] Wieſengrund, *m.* [52] Zeitraum, *m.* [53] Feierlichkeit. [54] Weſen. [55] erſte Kindheit. [56] begünſtigen. [57] fortwerfen. [58] Klapper, *f.* [59] *say*, no use. [60] Gebrauch. [61] von. [62] Koralle, *f.* [63] wegnehmen. [64] Glöckchen, *n.* [65] *say*, what concerns betreffen. [66] *say*, the remaining part; remaining übrig. [67] merkwürdig. [68] to passover übergehen. [69] mit. [70] Schweigen. [71] Minderjährigkeit. [72] Ruf. [73] mürriſch. [74] Junge. [75] Liebling. [76] Anlage. [77] gediegen. [78] *say*, perform something good etwas Tüchtiges leiſten. [79] als ſchon, and divide them by the Pronoun Personal. [80] ſich auszeichnen. [81] höchſt. [82] tief. [83] *say*, it be then. [84] bei. [85] Uebung. [86] Collegium. [87] äußern. [88] Menge, *f.*

remember that I ever spoke three sentences[89] together[90] in my whole life. Whilst I was in this learned body, I applied myself[91] with so much diligence[92] to my studies[93], that there are[94] very few celebrated[95] books, either[96] in the learned[97] or the modern[98] tongues[99], which I am not acquainted with. Upon[100] the death of my father, I was resolved[101] to travel into foreign[102] countries; and therefore left the university with the character af an odd[103], unaccountable[104] fellow[105], that had[106] a great deal[107] of learning[108], if I would but show[109] it. An insatiable[110] thirst after knowledge[111], carried[112] me into all the[113] countries of Europe, in which there was anything new or strange[114] to be seen. Nay[115], to[116] such a degree was my curiosity raised[117], that, having read the controversies[118] of some great men concerning[119] the antiquities of[120] Egypt[121], I made a voyage to Grand Cairo[122] on purpose[123] to take the measure of[124] a pyramid[125]; and, as soon as I had set myself right[126] in that particular[127], returned to my native country[128] with great satisfaction.[129] I have passed[130] my latter[131] years in this city, where I am most

---

[89] Satz. [90] im Zuſammenhang. [91] ſich befleißen, with the Gen. [92] Emſigkeit. [93] Studium, the plural of which, and similar Substantives, is formed by changing um in en. [94] es giebt. [95] berühmt. [96] *say*, be it. [97] gelehrt. [98] neuer. [99] Sprache. [100] bei. [1] beſchließen. [2] fremd. [3] ſonderbar. [4] unerklärlich. [5] Geſell (G.—en). [6] beſitzen, and it ought to stand in the Subjunctive. [7] Schatz, *m.* [8] Gelehrſamkeit. [9] zeigen. [10] unerſättlich. [11] Wiſſensdurſt, *m.* [12] führen. [13] it not translated after all. [14] ſeltſam. [15] ja. [16] bis zu. [17] ſteigern. [18] Streitſchrift. [19] in Rückſicht. [20] Alterthum, *n.* (*pl.*—thümer). [21] Aegypten. [22] Groß Cairo. [23] abſichtlich. [24] meſſen. [25] Pyramide, *f.* [26] ſich unterrichten. [27] beſonderer Punkt. [28] *native country* is Heimath, *f.*, in social language, and Vaterland, *n.*, in poetry. [29] Befriedigung. [30] verleben. [31] ſpäter.

frequently[132] seen in[133] most[134] public[135] places[136], though there are not above half a[137] dozen of my select[138] friends that know me; of whom my next paper shall give a more particular[139] account.

There is no place of general resort[140] wherein[141] I do not often make my appearance.[142] Sometimes I am seen[143] thrusting[144] my head into a round[145] of politicians[146] at Wills'[147] and listening[148] with great attention to[149] the narratives[150] that are made[151] in those little circular audiences.[152] Sometimes I smoke a pipe at Child's; and whilst I seem attentive to[153] nothing but the postman[154], overhear[155] the conversation[156] of every table in the room. I appear on[157] Sunday nights at St. James's coffee-house, and sometimes join[158] the little committee[159] of politics[160] in the inner[161] room, as one who comes there to hear and improve.[162] My face is likewise well known at the Cocoatree[163], and in the theatres[164], both of Drury Lane and the Haymarket. I have been taken for a merchant upon the Exchange[165] for above these[166] ten years, and sometimes pass[167] for a Jew[168] in the assembly[169] of stock-jobbers[170] at[171] Jonathan's. In short[172], wherever I see a cluster of people[173]

---

[132]häufig. [133]an. [134]*say*, the most. [135]öffentlich. [136]Ort (*pl.* Orte). [137]ein halb. [138]auserlesen.. [139]nah. [140]*say*, generally frequented gewöhnlich besucht. [141]an welchem, or wo. [142]erscheinen to make one's appearance. [143]*say*, one sees me. [144]stecken, and *say*, as I thrust. [145]Zirkel, *m.* [146]Politiker. [147]in Will's Caffeehause. [148]hören. [149]auf. [150]Geschichte. [151]erzählen. [152]Zuhörerkreis, *m.* [153]aufmerken auf, lit. to be attentive to. [154]Briefträger. [155]überhören. [156]Unterhaltung. [157]am Sountag Abend. [158]sich anschließen, with Dat. [159]Ausschuß. [160]*say*. political committee politisch. [161]inner. [162]sich belehren. [163]im Cocobaum. [164]Schauspielhaus. [165]Börse, *f.* [166]*say*, during more than the last. [167]gelten. [168]Jude. [169]Versammlung. [170]Papiermäkler. [171]bei. [172]kurz. [173]Häuflein Menschen.

I always mix with[174] them, though I never open my lips but[175] in my own club.[176] Thus I live in the world rather[177] as a spectator of mankind, than[178] as one of the species[179], by which means[180], I have made myself a speculative[181] statesman[182], soldier, merchant, and artisan[183], without ever meddling[184] with any practical[185] part[186] in life. I am very well versed in[187] the theory[188] of a husband[189], or a father, and can discern[190] the errors in the economy[191], business, and diversion[192] of others, better than those who are engaged[193] in them; as standersby[194] discover blots[195], which are apt to escape[196] those who are in[197] the game.[198] I never espoused[199] any party[200] with violence[201], and am resolved to observe an exact[202] neutrality[203] between the Whigs and the Tories, unless[204] I shall be forced[205] to declare[206] myself by the hostilities[207] of either[208] side. In short, I have acted in all the parts of my life as a looker on[209], which[210] is the character I intend[211] to preserve[212] in this paper.[213]

I have given the reader just[214] so much of my history and character as[215] to let him see I am not altogether[216]

---

[74]ſich miſchen unter. [75]außer. [76]Klub, *m*.. [77]eher. [78]denn, in order to avoid the two als following immediately upon each other. [79]Geſchlecht, *n*. [80]*say*, and thereby dadurch. [81]ſpekulativ. [82]Staatsmann. [83]Handwerker. [84]ſich einlaſſen. [85]praktiſch. [86]part in life Lebensthätigkeit. [87]eingeweiht in. [88]Theorie, *f*. [89]Ehemann. [90]unterſcheiden. [91]Haushalt. [92]Beluſtigung. [93]betheiligt. [94]Umſtehend. [95]Fehler, *m*. [96]it is apt to escape me es entgeht mir leicht. [97]bei. [98]Spiel, *n*. [99]ergreifen. [100]Partei; *f*. [1]Heftigkeit. [2]ſtreng. [3]Unparteilichkeit. [4]*say*, it be then that. [5]zwingen, and take the Present. [6]erklären. [7]Feindſeligkeit. [8]*say*, of one of both. [9]Zuſchauer. [10]*which* is something indefinite, and therefore to be translated by the Neuter. [11]beabſichtigen. [12]bewahren. [13]Blatt, *n*. [14]gerade. [15]*say*, as is enough. [16]ganz.

unqualified[217] for the business I have undertaken. As for other particulars in my life and adventures[218], I shall insert[219] them in the following papers, as I shall see[220] occasion. In the mean time[221], when I consider[222] how much I have seen, read, and heard, I begin to blame my own taciturnity[223]; and since I have neither time nor inclination[224] to communicate[225] the fulness[226] of my heart in speech[227], I am resolved to do it in writing, and to print myself out[228], if possible, before I die. I have been often told by my friends, that it is a pity[229] so many useful discoveries[230] which I have made should be in the possession[231] of a silent man. For[232] this reason, therefore, I shall publish[233] a sheet[234] full of thoughts every morning for the benefit[235] of my contemporaries[236]; and if I can in any way contribute[237] to the diversion[238] or improvement[239] of the country in which I live, I shall leave it, when I am summoned out of it[240], with the secret[241] satisfaction[242] of thinking[243] that I have not lived in vain. There are three very material[244] points[245] which I have not spoken to[246] in this paper, and which, for several important[247] reasons, I must keep[248] to[249] myself, at least for some time[250], I mean an account[251] of my name, my age,

---

[217]unbefähigt. [218]Abenteuer, *n.* [219]einweben. [220]erſehen. [221]inzwiſchen. [222]bedenken, and leave the *conditional conjunction* away. [223]Schweigſamkeit. [224]Neigung. [225]mittheilen. [226]Fülle. [227]*say*, in speaking. [228]ſich ausdrucken. [229]Schade, *m.* [230]Entdeckung. [231]Beſitz. [232]aus; reason Grund. [233]veröffentlichen. [234]Bogen, *m.* [235]zum Frommen. [236]Zeitgenoſſe, *m.* [237]beitragen zu. [238]Unterhaltung. [239]Verbeſſerung. [240]hinwegrufen is *to summon away*, by which the whole English phrase is expressed. [241]geheim. [242]Befriedigung. [243]is not to be translated. [244]weſentlich. [245]Punkt, *m.* [246]über. [247]wichtig. [248]behalten. [249]für. [250]eine Zeit lang, or auf einige Zeit. [251]Bericht.

and my lodgings. I must confess[252], I would gratify[253] my reader in anything that is reasonable[254]; but as far as these three particulars, though I am sensible[255] they might[256] tend[257] very much to the embellishment[258] of my paper, I cannot yet come to a resolution[259] of communicating them to the public.[260] They would indeed draw me out of that obscurity[261] which I have enjoyed for[262] many years, and expose[263] me in public places to several salutes[264] and civilities[265], which have been always very disagreeable[266] to me; for the greatest pain[267] I can suffer, is the being talked to[268], and being stared at.[269] It is for this reason, likewise[270], that I keep[271] my complexion[272] and dress[273] a very great secret[274], though it is not impossible but[275] I may make discoveries of[276] both in the progress[277] of the work I have undertaken. — *Addison.*

XVIII. The Vanity[1] of a Great Man.

Colonel[2] O'Moore, of[3] Cloghan Castle[4] in Ireland, told[5] me an amusing[6] instance[7] of the mingled[8] vanity and simplicity[9] of Goldsmith, which[10], though perhaps

---

[252]geſtehen. [253]willfahren, with Dat. [254]vernünftig. [255]fühlen. [256]können. [257]dahin zielen. [258]*say*, to embellish verſchönern. [259]Entſchluß. [260]Publicum. [261]Dunkelheit. [262]ſeit. [263]ausſetzen. [264]Begrüßung. [265]Höflichkeit. [266]unangenehm. [267]Schmerz, *m.* [268]anreden. [269]anſtarren. [270]gleichfalls. [271]halten. [272]Geſichtsfarbe, *f.* [273]Tracht, *f.* [274]*say*, very secret geheim. [275]*say*, *that* instead of *but*. [276]*say*, discover. [277]Verfolg.

[1]Eitelkeit. [2]Obriſt, with Def. Art. [3]von. [4]Schloß, *n.* [5]erzählen. [6]unterhaltend. [7]Beiſpiel, *n.* [8]miſchen, and *say*, of the with simplicity mixed vanity. [9]Einfalt. [10]begin here a new period, and say, *although this is perhaps*, and *although* express by gleich.

coloured[11] a little, as[12] anecdotes[13] too often are, is characteristic[14], at least, of[15] the opinion which his best friends entertained[16] of Goldsmith. One[17] afternoon, as Colonel O'Moore and Mr. Burke were going[18] to dine with[19] Sir Joshua Reynolds, they observed Goldsmith[20] (also[21] on his way to Sir Joshua's) standing near[22] a crowd[23] of people, who were staring at[24] a puppet-show[25], exhibited[26] near one of the houses in Leicester Square. "Observe[27] Goldsmith," said Mr. Burke to O'Moore, "and mark[28] what passes[29] between him and me by and by[30] at[31] Sir Joshua's." They passed on[32], and arrived[33] before Goldsmith, who came soon after[34]; and Mr. Burke affected[35] to receive[36] him very coolly.[37] This seemed to vex[38] poor Goldsmith, who[39] begged Mr. Burke would[40] tell him how he had had[41] the misfortune to offend[42] him. Burke appeared very reluctant[43] to speak; but, after a good deal[44] of pressing[45], said, that[46] he was really[47] ashamed[48] to keep up an intimacy[49] with one who could be guilty of[50] such monstrous[51] indiscretions[52] as Goldsmith had just[53] exhibited[54] in the square. Goldsmith, with great earnestness, protested[55] he was unconscious[56] of what was meant.

---

[11] färben. [12] *say*, as it. [13] Anekdote, *f.* [14] bezeichnend. [15] für. [16] hegen. [17] Genitive. [18] *say*, were going together in order. [19] bei. [20] *say*, as Goldsmith stood. [21] gleichfalls, and *say*, who also was. [22] unweit. [23] Menge, *f.* [24] zuſchauen, with Dat. [25] Puppenſpiel, *n.* [26] aufführen. [27] ſich (Dat.) anſehen. [28] beachten. [29] vorgehen. [30] gelegentlich. [31] bei. [32] weiter gehen. [33] anlangen. [34] nachher. [35] ſich ſtellen. [36] aufnehmen, and construe *as if he received*, but try not to translate *if*. [37] kühl. [38] kränken. [39] *say*, and he begged. [40] *say*, that he would, without translating *that*. [41] ſich zuziehen. [42] beleidigen. [43] ungeneigt. [44] viel. [45] Nöthigen. [46] omit *that*. [47] wirklich. [48] beſchämt. [49] vertraulich umgehen. [50] ſich zu Schulden kommen laſſen. [51] ungeheuer. [52] Unſchicklichkeit. [53] eben. [54] begehen. [55] verſichern. [56] unbewußt, and say, *of that what*.

"Why[57]," said Burke, "did you not exclaim[58], as you were looking at[59] those puppets[60], what[61] stupid beasts[62] the crowd must be, for[63] staring[64] with such admiration at[65] those painted[66], inanimate[67] things, while a man of your talents passed by[68] unnoticed.[69]" Goldsmith was horror-stricken[70], and said, "Surely[71], surely, my dear friend, I did not say so." "Nay," replied Burke, "if you had not said so, how should I have known it?" "That's true," answered Goldsmith, with great humility. "I am very sorry[72]: it was very foolish. I do recollect that something of the kind passed through[73] my mind[74], but I did not think I had uttered[75] it."

(*From the Half Hours*).

XIX. On[1] Popular Superstition.[2]

Going yesterday to dine with an old acquaintance, I had the misfortune to find his whole family very much dejected.[3] Upon asking him the occasion[4] of it, he told me that his wife had dreamt[5] a very strange[6] dream[7] the night before[8], which[9] they were afraid[10] portended[11] some misfortune to themselves or to their children. At her coming into the room, I observed a settled[12] melancholy[13] in her countenance[14], which[15] I should have been troubled[16] for, had I not

---

[57]wie. [58]laut rufen. [59]auf. [60]Puppe, *f.* [61]was für. [62]Geſchöpf, *n.* [63]*say*, since it stared. [64]anſtaunen. [65]bemalt. [66]leblos. [67]vorbeigehen. [68]unbeachtet. [69]*say*, seized by terror von Schrecken ergriffen. [70]wahrlich. [71]Demüthigkeit. [72]es thut mir ſehr leid. [73]durchkreuzen. [74]Kopf, *m.* [75]äußern.

[1]über. [2]Volksaberglauben, *m.* [3]beſtürzt, or niedergeſchlagen. [4]to ask the occasion nach der Urſache fragen. [5]träumen. [6]ſeltſam. [7]Traum, *m.* [8]vorher. [9]*say*, as they were. [10]fürchten. [11]vorbedeuten. [12]feſt ausgeprägt. [13]Schwermuth, *f.* [14]Geſicht, *n.* [15]for which worüber. [16]betrübt.

heard from whence it proceeded.[17] We were no sooner[18] sat down[19], but[20], after having looked upon me a little while, "My dear," says she, turning to her husband, "you may now see the stranger that was in the candle last night." Soon after this, they began to talk of family affairs.[21] A little boy at the lower[22] end of the table told her, that he was to go into Join-hand[23] on Thursday. "Thursday!" says she; "No, child, if it please[24] God, you shall not begin upon[25] Childermas-day[26]: tell your writing-master[27] that Friday will be soon[28] enough." I was reflecting[29] with[30] myself on[31] the oddness[32] of her fancy[33], and wondering[34] that any one would establish[35] it as a rule[36] to lose a day in every week. In the midst of these my musings[37], she desired me to reach[38] her a little[39] salt upon the top[40] of my knife, which I did in[41] such a trepidation[42] and hurry[43] of obedience, that I let it drop[44] by[45] the way; at which[46] she immediately startled[47], and said it fell towards her. Upon this, I looked very blank[48], and, observing the concern[49] of the whole table, began to consider[50] myself, with some confusion[51], as a person[52] that had brought a disaster[53] upon[54] the family. The lady, however,

---

[17] kommen. [18] sobald. [19] sich setzen. [20] als. [21] Familienangelegenheit. [22] unter, a comparative, of which there is no positive, except the Preposition unten; thus also, ober from oben. [23] *say*, into the class where they begin to join hand; class Klasse; to join hand die Grundstriche zusammenfügen. [24] gefallen. [25] an, with the Def. Art. [26] Kindertag, *m.* [27] Schreibelehrer. [28] früh. [29] zu sinnen anfangen. [30] bei. [31] über. [32] Sonderbarkeit. [33] Grille, *f.* [34] sich wundern. [35] festsetzen. [36] Regel. [37] Gedanke, *m.* [38] reichen. [39] wenig. [40] Spitze, *f.* [41] mit. [42] Beben. [43] Eilfertigkeit. [44] to let drop verschütten. [45] unter, with the Gen. only in this combination. [46] worüber. [47] erschrecken. [48] sehr verwirrt aussehen. [49] Bestürzung. [50] betrachten. [51] Beschämung. [52] Mensch. [53] Unheil anstiften. [54] in.

recovering herself[55] after a little space, said to her husband, with a sigh[56], "My dear, misfortunes[57] never come singly.[58]" My friend, I found, acted[59] but[60] an under[61] part[62] at his table; and, being a man of more good-nature[63] than understanding[64], thinks[65] himself obliged[66] to fall in with[67] all the passions[68] and humours[69] of his yoke-fellow.[70] "Do not you remember, child," says she, "that the pigeon-house[71] fell[72] the very[73] afternoon that[74] our careless[75] wench[76] spilt[77] the salt upon the table?" "Yes, my dear," says he; "and the next post brought us the account of the battle of Almanza." The reader may guess at[78] the figure[79] I made[80] after having done[81] all this mischief.[82] I dispatched[83] my dinner as soon[84] as I could, with my usual taciturnity[85], when, to my utter confusion, the lady seeing me quitting[86] my knife and fork, and laying them across one another[87] upon my plate[88], desired me that I would humour[89] her so far as[90] to take them out of that figure[91], and place them side by side.[92] What the absurdity[93] was which I had committed[94], I did not know, but I suppose[95] there was some traditionary[96] superstition in it; and therefore, in[97] obedience[98] to[99] the

---

[55] sich erholen. [56] Seufzer, *m.* [57] Unglück, *n.*, the plural of which is taken from the compound Unglücksfall. [58] allein. [59] spielen. [60] nur. [61] untergeordnet. [62] Rolle, *f.* [63] Gutmüthigkeit. [64] Verstand. [65] halten für. [66] verpflichtet. [67] nachgeben, with Dat. [68] Leidenschaft. [69] Laune, *f.* [70] Ehehälfte. [71] Taubenhaus, *n.* [72] herabfallen. [73] *say*, same. [74] *say*, when. [75] unbehutsam. [76] Mädchen. [77] verschütten. [78] errathen. [79] Bild, *n.* [80] darstellen. [81] anrichten. [82] Elend. [83] verzehren. [84] *say*, as quick. [85] Schweigsamkeit. [86] aus den Händen lassen. [87] kreuzweis über. [88] Teller, *m.* [89] willfahren, with Dat. [90] *say*, and. [91] Lage. [92] *say*, near each other. [93] Abgeschmacktheit. [94] *say*, made myself guilty of sich schuldig machen, with Gen. [95] vermuthen. [96] überliefert. [97] aus. [98] Willfährigkeit. [99] gegen.

lady of the house, I disposed of[100] my knife and fork in two parallel[101] lines, which is the figure I shall always lay them in for[102] the future[103], though I do not know any reason for it. It is not difficult for a man to see that a person has conceived[104] an aversion[105] to[106] him. For my own part[107], I quickly found[108] by[109] the lady's looks, that she regarded me as a very odd[110] kind of fellow, with an unfortunate aspect[111]; for which reason, I took my leave[112] immediately after dinner, and withdrew[113] to my own lodgings. Upon my return[114] home, I fell[115] into a profound contemplation[116] on[117] the evils that attend[118] these superstitious[119] follies[120] of mankind; how they subject[121] us to the imaginary[122] afflictions[123], and additional[124] sorrows[125], that do not properly[126] come within our lot.[127]

As if the natural calamities[128] of life were not sufficient for it, we turn[129] the most indifferent[130] circumstances into misfortunes, and suffer as much from trifling[131] accidents[132] as from real evil. I have known the shooting[133] of a star[134] spoil[135] a night's rest[136]; and have seen a man in love[137] grow pale[138], and lose his appetite, upon[139] the plucking[140] of a merry-

---

[100] ordnen. [1] parallel, which can be joined to *lines* without declension, or declined as an Adjective [2] in. [3] Zukunft. [4] faſſen. [5] Widerwille, *m.* [6] gegen. [7] *say*, what concerns myself. [8] erſehen. [9] aus. [10] ſonderbar. [11] Miene, *f.* [12] Abſchied, and omit *my*. [13] ſich begeben. [14] *say*, the home return Heimweg, *m.* [15] ſinken. [16] Betrachtung. [17] über. [18] begleiten. [19] abergläubiſch. [20] Thorheit. [21] unterwerfen. [22] eingebildet. [23] Leiden. [24] unnöthig. [25] Sorge. [26] eigentlich. [27] einem zugetheilt ſein to come within one's lot. [28] Trübſal, *f.* (*pl.*—e). [29] verwandeln. [30] gleichgültig. [31] geringfügig. [32] Zufall. [33] Herabſchießen. [34] Sternſchnuppe, *f.* [35] verderben. [36] *say*, the sleep of a night. [37] *man in love* express by verliebt, used as a Substantive. [38] erbleichen. [39] bei. [40] zerreißen.

thought.[141] A screech-owl[142] at midnight has alarmed[143] a family more than a band of robbers[144]; nay, the voice of a cricket[145] has struck[146] more terror[147] than the roaring[148] of a lion. There is nothing so inconsiderable[149], which may not appear dreadful to an imagination that is filled with omens[150] and prognostics[151]: a rusty nail or a crooked[152] pin shoot up[153] into[154] prodigies.[155] I remember I was once in a mixed assembly, that was full of noise and mirth, when on a sudden[156] an old lady unluckily[157] observed there were thirteen of us[158] in company. This remark struck[159] a panic[160] terror into several who were present[161], insomuch[162] that one or two of the ladies were going to leave the room. I know but one way of fortifying[163] my soul against these gloomy[164] presages[165] and terrors of mind; and that is (zwar), by securing[166] to myself the friendship and protection[167] of that Being who disposes[168] of[169] events[170] and governs futurity.[171] He sees, at[172] one view[173], the whole thread[174] of my existence[175], — not only that part of it which I have already passed through[176], but that which runs forward[177] into all the depths of eternity. When I lay me down to sleep, I recommend myself to his care[178], — when I awake[179] I give myself up[180] to His direction.[181] Amidst all the evils that threaten[182] me, I will look up[183] to Him for[184]

---

[141] Bruſtbeinchen. [142] Nachteule, *f.* [143] erſchrecken. [144] Räuberbande, *f.* [145] Heimchen. [146] einjagen. [147] Schreck. [148] Brüllen. [149] unbedeutend. [150] Anzeichen. [151] Vorbedeutung. [152] krümmen. [153] aufſchwellen. [154] zu. [155] Ungeheuer, *n.* [156] plötzlich. [157] zum Unglück. [158] put *of* us before thirteen. [159] erregen. [160] gewaltig. [161] zugegen. [162] bis zu dem Grade. [163] ſtählen. [164] düſter. [165] Ahnung. [166] zuſichern. [167] Schutz, *m.* [168] verfügen. [169] über. [170] Ereigniß, *n.* [171] Zukunft. [172] auf. [173] Blick. [174] Kette, *f.* [175] Daſein. [176] verleben. [177] ſich hinziehen. [178] Obhut, *f.* [179] erwachen. [180] ſich hingeben. [181] Leitung. [182] drohen, with Dat. [183] hinaufblicken. [184] nach.

help; and question[185] not but[186] He will either avert[187] them, or turn[188] them to my advantage.[189] Though I know neither the time nor the manner of the death I am to die, I am not at all solicitous[190] about[191] it; because I am sure that He knows them both; and that He will not fail[192] to comfort[193] and support[194] me under them. — *Addison.*

XX. — On Stories of Ghosts.[1]

At my coming to London it was some time before[2] I could settle myself[3] in a house to[4] my liking.[5] I was forced to quit my first lodgings by reason of[6] an officious[7] landlady[8], that would be asking me every morning how I slept. I then fell[9] into an honest family, and lived very happily for above a week, when my landlord, who was a jolly[10] goodnatured[11] man, took it into his head[12] that I wanted company, and therefore would frequently come into[13] my chamber[14] to keep[15] me from being alone. This I bore for two or three days, but telling me one day that he was afraid I was melancholy[16], I thought it was high time for me to be gone[17], and accordingly took[18] new lodgings that very night. About a week after, I found my jolly landlord, who, as I said before, was an honest hearty[19] man, had put[20]

---

[185] *say*, doubt zweifeln. [186] *say*, that. [187] abwenden. [188] lenken. [189] Wohl, *n.*, or Frommen. [190] bekümmert. [191] um. [192] unterlaſſen. [193] tröſten. [194] ſtützen.

[1] Geiſtergeſchichte. [2] ehe. [3] ſich niederlaſſen. [4] nach. [5] Wunſch, *m.* [6] in Folge. [7] dienſtfertig. [8] Wirthin. [9] gerathen. [10] heiter. [11] gutmüthig. [12] es ſich einfallen laſſen. [13] auf. [14] Zimmer, *n.* [15] verhindern, and *say*, that I should not be alone. [16] ſchwermüthig. [17] ſich davon machen. [18] ſich (Dat.) miethen. [19] herzlich gut. [20] einrücken, and *say*, about me an advertisement.

me into an advertisement[21] of[22] the *Daily Courant*, in[23] the following words: "Whereas (da), a melancholy man left his lodgings on Thursday last in[24] the afternoon, and was afterwards seen going to Islington; if any one can give notice[25] of him to R. B., fishmonger[26] in the Strand, he shall be very well rewarded[27] for his pains."[28] As I am the best man in the world to keep my own counsel[29], and my landlord, the fishmonger, not knowing my name, this incident[30] of my life was never discovered to[31] this[32] day. I am now settled[33] with[34] a widow woman, who has a great many children, and complies[35] with[36] my humour[37] in everything. I do not remember that we have exchanged[38] a word together these five years. My coffee comes into my chamber every morning without my asking for[39] it; if I want fire, I point[40] to[41] my chimney; if water, to my basin[42]; upon which my landlady nods[43], as much as to say[44], she takes[45] my meaning[46], and immediately obeys[47] my signals.[48] She has likewise modelled[49] her family so well, that when her little boy offers[50] to pull[51] me by the coat, or prattle[52] in my face, his eldest sister immediately calls him off[53], and bids[54] him not to disturb[55] the gentleman. At my first entering into the family, I was troubled[56] with the[57] ci-

---

[21] Anzeige. [22] *say*, into. [23] mit without Art. [24] take the Gen. of time. [25] Nachricht. [26] bei dem Fischhändler R. B. [27] belohnen. [28] Mühe, sing. [29] sein Geheimniß wahren. [30] Vorfall. [31] bis auf. [32] heutig, with the Definite Article. [33] angesiedelt. [34] bei. [35] sich richten. [36] nach. [37] Laune, *f.*; take plural. [38] wechseln. [39] bitten um. [40] weisen. [41] auf. [42] Waschbecken, *n.* [43] nicken. [44] *say*, if she wished to say. [45] *say*, understands. [46] *say*, my wish. [47] gehorchen, with Dat. [48] Zeichen, and *say*, given signal. [49] modeln. [50] sich anschicken. [51] zupfen. [52] schwatzen. [53] wegrufen. [54] heißen. [55] stören. [56] belästigen. [57] *say*, their.

vility of their rising up to[58] me every time I came into the room; but my landlady observing that upon[59] these occasions I always cried "Pish,"[60] and went out again, has forbidden[61] any[62] such ceremony[63] to be used in the house; so that at present I walk into the kitchen or parlour without being taken notice of[64], or giving[65] any interruption[66] to[67] the business or discourse[68] of the family. The maid will[69] ask her mistress, though I am by[70], whether the gentleman is ready[71] to go to dinner[72], and the mistress (who is indeed an excellent housewife) scolds[73] at[74] the servants[75] as heartily before my face as behind my back. In short, I move[76] up and down[77] the[78] house, and enter into all companies with the same liberty as a cat or any other domestic animal[79], and am[80] as[81] little suspected[82] of telling anything that I hear or see. I remember last winter there[83] were several[84] young girls of[85] the neighbourhood sitting about the fire with my landlady's[86] daughters, and telling stories of spirits[87] and apparitions.[88] Upon my opening the door, the young women[89] broke off[90] their discourse[91], but my landlady's daughters telling them that it was nobody but the gentleman (for that is the name which I go by[92] in the neighbourhood as well as in the family), they went on[93]

---

[58]*say*, as they rose up aufſtehen vor. [59]bei. [60]pfui. [61]verbieten, with the Infin. Act. [62]all. [63]Höflichkeitsformen. [64]berückſichtigen. [65]machen. [66]Unterbrechung. [67]in. [68]Geſpräch, *n.* [69]also in German expressed by the Future. [70]zugegen. [71]bereit. [72]zu Tiſche gehen. [73]ſchelten. [74]auf. [75]Dienſtbote, *m.* [76]ſich bewegen. [77]auf und ab. [78]*say*, in the. [79]Hausthier, *n.* [80]ſtehen. [81]eben ſo. [82]*say*, in suspicion Verdacht, *m.* [83]not expressed. [84]mehrere. [85]aus. [86]*say better*, with the daughters of, etc. [87]Geiſt, *m.* (*pl.*—er). [88]Erſcheinung. [89]Dirne. [90]abbrechen. [91]Unterredung. [92]unter. [93]fortfahren.

without minding[94] me. I seated myself by[95] the candle that stood on a table at[96] one end of the room; and, pretending[97] to read a book that I took out of my pocket, heard several dreadful stories of ghosts[98] as pale[99] as ashes[100] that had stood at[101] the feet[102] of a bed, or walked over a churchyard[103] by[104] moonlight[105]; and of others that had been conjured[106] into the Red Sea[107], for disturbing[108] people's rest, and drawing[109] their curtains[110] at[111] midnight. As one spirit raised[112] another, I observed[113] that at the end of every story the whole company closed[114] their ranks, and crowded[115] about the fire. I took notice[116] in particular[117] of a little boy, who was[118] so attentive[119] to every story, that I am mistaken[120] if he ventures[121] to go to bed by himself[122] this twelvemonth.[123] Indeed, they talked so long, that the imaginations[124] of the whole assembly were manifestly crazed[125], and I am sure will be the worse[126] for it[127] as long as they live. I heard one of the girls, that had looked upon me over her shoulder, asking the company how long I had been in the room, and whether I did

---

[94] ſich bekümmern um. [95] an. [96] an. [97] ſich die Miene geben als ob, lit., to give one's self the appearance as if. [98] Geſpenſt, *n.* (*pl.*—er.) [99] weiß. [100] Aſche, *f.*, sing. [1] an. [2] take singular. [3] Kirchhof, *m.* [4] bei, with the Definite Article. [5] Mondſchein. [6] bannen. [7] Meer, *n.* [8] *say*, because they had disturbed people in their sleep, and drawn. [9] fortziehen. [10] Vorhang. [11] um. [12] erſtehen laſſen. [13] treat *I observed that*, etc., as an adverbial sentence, led by *as* wie; and let *the whole company*, etc., be the chief sentence. [14] to close their ranks ſich enger zuſammenſchließen. [15] ſich näher drängen. [16] bemerken. [17] beſonders. [18] *say*, who followed verfolgen. [19] *say*, attentively aufmerkſam. [20] ſich irren. [21] wagen. [22] allein. [23] *say*, during the next year. [24] take the singular. [25] to be crazy verwildern. [26] I am the worse ich habe zu leiden. [27] darum.

not look[128] paler[129] than I used[130] to do. This put me under some apprehensions[131] that I should be forced to explain[132] myself if I did not retire[133]; for which reason I took my candle in my hand and went up into my chamber, not without wondering[134] at[135] this unaccountable[136] weakness[137] in reasonable creatures, that they should love[138] to astonish and terrify[139] one another. Were I a father, I should take[140] a[141] particular[142] care[143] to preserve[144] my children from[145] these little horrors[146] of imagination[147] which they are apt[148] to contract[149] when they are young, and are not able[150] to shake off[151] when they are in[152] years. I have known a soldier that has entered a breach[153] affrighted[154] at[155] his own shadow, and look pale[156] upon a little scratching[157] at[158] his door, who[159] the day before had marched up[160] against a battery[161] of cannon.[162] There are instances of persons who have been terrified, even to distraction[163], at the figure[164] of a tree, or the shaking[165] of a bulrush.[166] The truth of it is, I look upon[167] a sound imagination as the greatest blessing of life, next to[168] a clear judgment[169] and a good conscience.[170] In the mean time, since there are very few whose minds[171] are not more or less subject[172]

[128]ausſehen. [129]blaß, the Comparative of which takes no modification of the Vowel. [130]pflegen, and omit *to do*. [131]fürchten laſſen. [132]erklären. [133]ſich zurückziehen. [134]ſich wundern. [135]über. [136]unerklärbar. [137]Schwachheit. [138]add *it*. [139]in Erſtaunen und Furcht ſetzen. [140]tragen. [141]not expressed. [142]*say*, adverbially beſonders. [143]Sorge. [144]bewahren. [145]vor. [146]Schreckniß, *n*. [147]Phantaſie. [148]geneigt. [149]ſich einprägen. [150]vermögen. [151]los werden. [152]bei. [153]ſich in eine Breſche ſtürzen. [154]erſchrecken. [155]über. [156]bleich werden. [157]Kratzen. [158]an. [159]*say*, although he. [160]hinaufſtürmen. [161]Batterie, *f*. [162]Kanone, *f*.. take the plural. [163]Wahnſinn. [164]Geſtalt. [165]Schwanken. [166]Binſe, *f*. [167]betrachten. [168]nach. [169]Verſtand. [170]Gewiſſen. [171]Gemüth, *n*. (*pl*. —er). [172]unterworfen.

to these dreadful thoughts and apprehensions[173], we ought to arm[174] ourselves against them by the dictates[175] of reason[176] and religion, "to pull[177] the old woman out of our hearts," as Persius expresses it, and extinguish[178] those impertinent[179] notions[180] which we imbibed[181] at a time that we were not able to judge of[182] their absurdity.[183] Or, if we believe, as many wise and good men have done, that there are such phantoms[184] and apparitions as[185] those I have been speaking of, let us endeavour[186] to etablish to[187] ourselves an interest[188] in[189] Him who holds the reins[190] of the whole creation in His hand, and moderates[191] them after[192] such a manner, that it is impossible for one being to break loose[193] upon another without His knowledge and permission. For my own part, I am apt to join[194] in opinion[195] with those who believe that all the regions[196] of nature swarm[197] with[198] spirits, and that we have multitudes[199] of spectators on[200] all our actions, when we think ourselves most alone; but instead of terrifying[201] myself with[202] such a notion[203] I am wonderfully pleased[204] to think that I am always engaged[205] with such an innumerable[206] society, in searching out[207] the wonders of the creation, and joining in[208] the same concert[209] of[210] praise[211] and adoration.[212] — *Addison.*

---

[73]Beſorgniß, *f.* (*pl.*—e.) [74]waffnen. [75]Gebot, *n.* (*pl.*—e). [76]Vernunft. [77]ziehen. [78]hinwegtilgen. [79]ſinnlos. [80]Begriff. [81]einſaugen. [82]beurtheilen. [83]Abgeſchmacktheit. [84]Gebild, *n.* (*pl.*—e). [85]gleich, with Dat. [86]verſuchen. [87]ſichern für. [88]günſtige Theilnahme. [89]bei. [90]Zügel, *m.* [91]lenken. [92]auf. [93]ſich los ſtürzen. [94]to join with ſich anſchließen, with Dat. [95]Glaube, *m.*, and add the Definite Article. [96]Raum, *m.* [97]ſchwärmen. [98]von. [99]*say*, millions. [200]bei. [1]ängſtigen. [2]über. [3]Anſicht. [4]erfreut. [5]beſchäftigen. [6]zahllos. [7]erforſchen. [8]mit einſtimmen in. [9]Geſang, *m.* [10]voll. [11]Preis, *m.* [12]Anbetung.

XXI.

My dear Friend,

Having received no answer to[1] all the letters which I wrote you a month ago, I must confess I am a little uneasy. I should almost believe you had forgotten me, if I did not know that such a thing (ſo etwas) was quite impossible. I suppose you have left home[2] for[3] some time, in order to pay visits[4] to your friends and relations; I therefore hope to hear from you as soon as you have returned.[5] In my preceding[6] letters, I have given you an account of[7] the many new things which I saw during[8] my journey in this foreign country. I will now go on[9] with my narrative. After passing[10] a few days with our friends in E., I rode northwards[11], accompanied by (*say* in company of) a young man whose acquaintance I had made in that small town. We arrived here safely about ten days ago. The last part of our journey was marked[12] by an accident[13] which would have made it the last part of our life, if Heaven had not protected us. My companion had taken with him a little dog, of which he was very fond.[14] I did not say anything against it, although I wished in my heart that he had left it at home. Now, this young man sometimes allowed[15] the little dog to spring out of the carriage, that it might run by the side of us.[16] Once, when he had let it out[17], we were driving up[18] a steep[19] road; on one side was a great wood, and on the other a deep precipice.[20] It was noonday, and the

---

[1] auf. [2] von Hauſe abreiſen. [3] ſeit. [4] Beſuche abſtatten. [5] zurückkehren. [6] vorig. [7] berichten. [8] auf. [9] fortfahren. [10] zubringen. [11] nordwärts. [12] bezeichnen. [13] Zufall. [14] ſehr gern haben. [15] laſſen. [16] neben uns her. [17] hinauslaſſen. [18] hinauffahren. [19] ſteil. [20] Abgrund, *m.*

sun shone bright[21], when all[22] of a sudden, from the woodside[23], out rushed[24] a great wolf, seized[25] the dog by the throat[26], and rushed up[27] the hill again with him in his mouth. This was done in less than a quarter of a minute. We all saw it; yet neither we nor the servants had the presence of mind[28] nor the time to draw our pistols, or to do anything to save the dog. The horses had got frightened[29], but they went on[30] pretty[31] well for some time, until they became so restless[32] that they could not be managed.[33] They threw our carriage upon one side, within[34] two feet of the brink[35] of a precipice thirty yards deep. Here we lay for a few moments, whilst our horses flounced[36] and tried to go on. At last our servants, by[37] the help of the coachman, succeeded[38] in disengaging[39] them from the carriage, and they went off[40] at full speed.[41] A gentleman on horseback[42], who came[43] the[44] same way, and saw our distress, immediately rode up[45], and in the kindest manner inquired whether he could assist us; and having seen us fairly[46] rescued[47] from our broken vehicle[48], remounted[49] his horse, rode back to the inn[50], and soon returned with another carriage.

XXII. Paoli and Napoleon.

General Paoli, who had lived in England ever since the termination[1] of that civil war[2] in which Charles

---

[21]hell. [22]ganz. [23]vom Walde her. [24]hervorstürzen. [25]ergreifen. [26]Kehle, *f.* [27]hinaufeilen. [28]Geistesgegenwart, *f.* [29]erschrecken. [30]entlang gehen. [31]ziemlich. [32]unstät. [33]zügeln. [34]innerhalb. [35]Rand *m.* [36]um sich schlagen. [37]mit, and leave out the Article. [38]I succeed es gelingt mir. [39]losmachen. [40]dahin laufen. [41]in vollem Galopp. [42]zu Pferde. [43]daher kommen. [44]take the Gen. [45]auf uns zu reiten. [46]sicher. [47]befreien. [48]Fuhrwerk, *n.* [49]wieder besteigen. [50]Wirthshaus, *n.*

[1]Beendigung. [2]Bürgerkrieg, *m.*

Buonaparte served under his banner[3], was cheered[4], when the great French Revolution first broke out, with[5] the hope that liberty was about to be restored[6] to Corsica. He came to Paris, was received with applause[7] as a tried[8] friend of freedom, and appointed[9] governor[10] of his native island[11], which for some time he ruled[12] wisely and happily. But as the revolution advanced[13], Paoli, like most other wise men, became satisfied[14] that license[15] was more likely[16] to be established[17] by its leaders[18], than law and rational liberty; and, avowing[19] his aversion to[20] the growing[21] principles[22] of Jacobinism[23], and the scenes[24] of (voll) tumult[25] and bloodshed[26] to which they gave rise[27], he was denounced[28] in the National Assembly[29] as the enemy of France. An expedition[30] was sent to deprive him of his government[31], under the command[32] of La Combe, Michel, and Salicetti, one of the Corsican deputies[33] to[34] the Convention[35]; and Paoli called on[36] his countrymen to take[37] arms in his and their own defence.[38]

Buonaparte happened[39] at that time (1793) to have leave of absence[40] from his regiment, and to be[41] in Corsica on[42] a visit[43] to[44] his mother. He had fitted

---

[3]Panier, *n.* [4]erheitern. [5]durch. [6]wiedergeben. [7]Beifall. [8]verſuchen. [9]ernennen zu. [10]Statthalter. [11]Geburtsinſel, *f.* [12]regieren. [13]fortſchreiten. [14]überzeugen. [15]Frechheit. [16]wahrſcheinlich. [17]einführen. [18]Führer. [19]offen geſtehen. [20]Widerwille, *m.*, gegen. [21]zunehmen. [22]Grundſatz. [23]Jacobinismus, *m.* [24]Auftritt. [25]Tumult, *m.* (Gen. —es). [26]Blutvergießen. [27]Veranlaſſung geben zu. [28]verſchreien. [29]National-Verſammlung. [30]Kriegsheer, *n.* [31]Statthalterſchaft. [32]Oberbefehl. [33]Bevollmächtigt. [34]*say*, of. [35]Convent, *m.* [36]auffordern. [37]ergreifen. [38]zu. [39]express by the Adverb gerade. [40]Urlaub haben. [41]ſich befinden. [42]zu with the Def. Art. [43]Beſuch. [44]bei.

up[45] a little reading-room[46] at the top[47] of the house as the quietest part of it, and was spending his mornings in[48] study[49], and his evenings among his family and old acquaintances, when the arrival of the expedition threw the island into convulsion.[50] Paoli, who knew him well, did all he could to enlist[51] him in[52] his cause.[53] He used, among other flatteries[54], to clap[55] him on the back, and tell him he was "one of Plutarch's men." But Napoleon had satisfied himself that Corsica was too small a country to maintain[56] independence[57] — that she must fall under the rule[58] either of France or England; and that her interests[59] would be best served[60] by adhering to[61] the former. He therefore resisted all Paoli's offers[62], and tendered[63] his sword to the service[64] of Salicetti. He was appointed[65] provisionally[66] to[67] the command[68] of a battalion[69] of national guards[70]; and the first military service[71] on[72] which he was employed[73] was the reduction[74] of a small fortress, called the Torre di Capitello, near Ajaccio. He took[75] it, but was soon besieged[76] in it, and he and his garrison[77], after a gallant[78] defence, and living for some time on[79] horseflesh[80], were glad[81] to evacuate[82] the tower[83] and escape[84] to the sea. The English government[85] now began to reinforce[86] Paoli; and the cause of the French party[87] seemed for the moment to

[45] einrichten. [46] Lesezimmer, *n.* [47] unter dem Giebel. [48] mit. [49] Studiren. [50] im Innersten erschüttern. [51] gewinnen. [52] für. [53] Sache, *f.* [54] Schmeichelei. [55] klopfen. [56] behaupten. [57] Unabhängigkeit. [58] Herrschaft. [59] Vortheil, *m.* [60] fördern. [61] Anhänglichkeit an. [62] Antrag. [63] anbieten zu. [64] Dienst, take pl. [65] bestellen. [66] vorläufig. [67] zu. [68] Befehl. [69] Bataillon, *n.* [70] Volksgarde, *f.* [71] Kriegsdienst. [72] in. [73] beschäftigen. [74] Eroberung. [75] einnehmen. [76] belagern. [77] Besatzung. [78] tapfer. [79] von. [80] Pferdefleisch, *n.* [81] froh. [82] räumen. [83] Thurm, *m.* [84] sich flüchten. [85] Regierung. [86] verstärken. [87] Partei, *f.*

be desperate.[88] The Buonapartes were banished[89] from Corsica; and their mother and sisters took refuge[90] first at Nice[91], and afterwards at Marseilles, where for some time they suffered all the inconveniences[92] of exile[93] and poverty. Napoleon rejoined[94] his regiment. He had chosen France for[95] his country[96]; and seems, in truth, to have preserved[97] little or no affection[98] for his native soil.[99] — *Lockhart's Life of Napoleon.*

XXIII. Napoleon at Toulon.

Buonaparte's first military service occurred[1] in the summer of 1793. The king of France had been put to death[2] on the 21st of January in that year; and in less than a month afterwards, the Convention had declared war against England. The murder[3] of the king, alike imprudent and atrocious[4], had, in fact, united the princes of Europe against the revolutionary cause[5]; and within[6] France itself, a strong reaction[7] took place.[8] The people of Toulon, the great port and arsenal of France on[9] the Mediterranean, partook[10] these sentiments[11]; and invited the English and Spanish fleets off[12] their coast to come to their assistance[13], and garrison[14] their city. The allied admirals took possession[15] accordingly of Toulon; and a motley[16] force[17] of English, Spaniards, and Neapolitans, prepared[18] to defend the

[88] hoffnungslos. [89] verbannen. [90] Zuflucht with the Pronoun Possessive. [91] Nizza. [92] Beschwerde. [93] Verbannung. [94] sich wieder begeben zu. [95] zu. [96] Heimath. [97] bewahren. [98] Zuneigung. [99] Geburtsland, *n.*

[1] *say*, fell into fallen in. [2] hinrichten. [3] Ermordung. [4] gräßlich. [5] *say*, the cause of the revolution. [6] in. [7] Rückwirkung. [8] Statt finden. [9] an. [10] theilen. [11] Ansicht. [12] vor. [13] er kommt mir zu Hülfe he comes to my assistance. [14] Besatzung werfen in. [15] Besitz. [16] bunt. [17] Macht. [18] Anstalten treffen.

place. In the harbour and roads[19], there were about twenty-five ships of the line[20], and the city contained immense naval and military stores[21] of every description[22], so that the defection[23] of Toulon was regarged as a calamity[24] of the first order[25] by the revolutionary government.

This event occourred in the midst of that period which has received the name of *the reign of terror*.[26] The streets of Paris were streaming with[27] innocent blood. Robespierre was glutting[28] himself with murder. Fear and rage[29] were the passions that divided mankind; and their struggles[30] produced[31] on either side[32] the likeness[33] of some epidemic[34] frenzy.[35] Whatever else the government wanted, vigour to repel[36] aggressions[37] from without[38], was displayed[39] in abundance.[40] Two armies[41] immediately marched[42] upon[43] Toulon; and after a series[44] of actions[45], in which the passes[46] in the hills behind the town were forced[47], the place was at last invested[48] and a memorable[49] siege[50] commenced.

It was conducted[51] with little skill[52], first by Cartaux, a vain coxcomb[53], who had been a painter, and then by Doppet, an ex-physician[54] and a coward.[55] To watch[56] and report[57] on[58] the proceedings[59] of these

---

[19] Rhede, *f.*, used in sing. [20] Linienſchiff, *n.* [21] *say*, stores (Vorräthe) for the navy, etc. [22] Art, *f.* [23] Abfall. [24] Unglück, *n.* [25] *say*, of the highest signification Bedeutung. [26] Schreckensherrſchaft. [27] von. [28] überladen. [29] Wuth, *f.* [30] Kampf, *m.* [31] erzeugen. [32] *say*, on both sides. [33] Bild, *n.* [34] anſteckend. [35] Wahnſinn: [36] zurücktreiben. [37] Anfall. [38] außen. [39] entfalten. [40] Fülle, *f.* [41] Heer, *n.* (*pl.*—e). [42] ziehen. [43] auf. [44] Reihe, *f.* [45] Gefecht, *n.* [46] Paß, *m.* [47] erſtürmen. [48] einſchließen. [49] denkwürdig. [50] Belagerung. [51] leiten. [52] Geſchick, *n.* [53] Geck, *m.* (Gen.—en). [54] Arzt außer Praxis. [55] Feigling. [56] wachen. [57] berichten. [58] über. [59] Verfahren, sing.

chiefs[60], there were present in the camp several representatives[61] of the people, as they were called, — persons holding[62] no military character or rank, but acting as honourable[63] spies for the government at Paris. The interference[64] of these personages on this, as on many other occasions, was productive of[65] delays[66], blunders[67], and misfortunes; but the terror which their ready[68] access[69] to the despotic government inspired[70], was often, on the other hand[71], useful in stimulating[72] the exertions of the military.[73] The younger Robespierre was one of the deputies at Toulon, and his name was enough to make his presence formidable.

Cartaux had not yet been superseded[74] when Napoleon Buonaparte made his appearance[75] at head quarters[76], with a commission[77] to assume[78] the command of the artillery.[79] It has been said that he owed[80] his appointment[81] to the private[82] regard[83] of Salicetti; but the high testimonials[84] he had received from the Military Academy[85] were more likely[86] to have served him; nor is it possible to suppose that he had been so long in the regiment of La Fere without being appreciated[87] by some of his superiors.[88] He had, besides, shortly before this time, excited attention by a pamphlet[89], called the "Supper of Beaucaire," in which the politics of the Jacobin party were spiritedly[90] supported; and of which he was afterwards so ashamed[91], that he

[60] Haupt, *n.* [61] Stellvertreter. [62] bekleiden. [63] ehrenwerth. [64] Einmischung. [65] verursachen. [66] Verzögerung. [67] Fehler, *m.* [68] schnell. [69] Zutritt. [70] einflößen. [71] andrerseits. [72] anspornen. [73] Militär, *n.* [74] abrufen. [75] erscheinen. [76] im Hauptquartier. [77] Auftrag. [78] übernehmen. [79] Geschütz, *n.* [80] verdanken. [81] Bestallung. [82] persönlich. [83] Achtung. [84] Zeugniß, *n.* [85] Schule. [86] *say*, have, as is more likely, served. [87] würdigen. [88] Vorgesetzt. [89] Flugschrift. [90] geistvoll. [91] sich schämen, with Gen.

took great pains[92] to suppress it. However this may have been, he was received almost with insolence[93] by Cartaux, who, strutting about[94] in a uniform[95] covered with gold lace[96], told him his assistance was not wanted[97], but he was welkome to partake[98] in his glory.

The commandant[99] of the artillery, on examining[100] the state of affairs[101], found much to complain of. They were still disputing which extremity[102] of the town should be the chief object[103] of attak, though at the one there were two strong and regular fortifications, and at the other only a small and imperfect fort[104], called Malbosquet. On inspecting[105] their batteries[106], he found that the guns[107] were placed[108] about two gunshots[109] from the walls[110]; and that it was the custom to heat[111] the shot[112] at a distance from the place where they were to be discharged[113], in other words, to heat them to no purpose. Choosing officers of his own acquaintance to act under him, and exerting himself to collect[114] guns from all quarters[115], Buonaparte soon remedied[116] these disorders[117], and found himself master of an efficient[118] train[119] of 200 pieces[120]; and he then urged[121] the general to adopt[122] a wholly new plan of operations[123] in the future conduct of the siege.

---

[92] ſich Mühe geben. [93] unverſchämter Hochmuth. [94] umher ſtolziren. [95] Uniform, *f.* [96] Borte, *f.*, take the plural. [97] verlangen. [98] Theil nehmen an. [99] Befehlshaber. [100] unterſuchen. [1] Ding, *n.* (*pl.*—e). [2] Ende, *n.* [3] Hauptziel, *n.* [4] Fort, *n.* [5] beſichtigen. [6] Batterie, *f.* [7] Kanone, *f.* [8] ſtellen. [9] Flintenſchuß. [10] Wall, *m.* [11] glühend machen. [12] Kugel, *f.*, take the plural. [13] abfeuern. [14] zuſammen bringen. [15] Seite, *f.* [16] abhelfen, with Dat. [17] Unordnung. [18] wirkſam. [19] Artilleriepark, *m.* [20] Stück, *n.*, and why must the singular be used? [21] bringen in. [22] befolgen. [23] Operationsplan, *m.*

The plan of Buonaparte appears now the simplest and most obvious[124] that could have been suggested[125]; yet it was not without great difficulty that he could obtain the approbation of the doctor, who had by this time superseded[126] the painter. "Your object[127]," said he, "is to make the English evacuate[128] Toulon. Instead of attacking them in the town, which must involve[129] a long series of operations[130], endeavour to establish[131] batteries so as to sweep[132] the harbour and roadstead.[133] If you can do this, the English ships must take their departure, and the English troops will certainly not remain behind them." He pointed out[134] a promontory nearly opposite the town, by getting the command[135] of which he was sure the desired effect must be accomplished.[136] "Gain La Grasse," said he, "and in two days Toulon falls." His reasoning[137] at length forced[138] conviction[139], and he was permitted to follow his own plan. A month before nothing could have been more easy; but within that time the enemy had perceived the importance of the promontory, which commands[140] the narrow passage[141] between the port and the Mediterranean, and fortified it so strongly, that it passed by[142] the name of the Little Gibraltar. It was necessary, therefore, to form extensive[143] batteries in the rear[144] of La Grasse, before there could be a prospect[145] of seizing[146] it. Buonaparte laboured[147] hard[148] all day, and slept every night in his cloak by

---

[124]augenfällig. [125]vorſchlagen. [126]erſetzen. [127]Abſicht. [128]räumen. [129]zur Folge haben. [130]Unternehmung. [131]hinſtellen. [132]beſtreichen. [133]Rhede, *f.* [134]bezeichnen. [135]Beſitz. [136]erreichen. [137]Ueberredung. [138]erzwingen. [139]Ueberzeugung. [140]beherrſchen. [141]Engpaß, *m.* [142]gehen unter. [143]weitläufig. [144]Rücken, *m.* [145]Ausſicht. [146]ſich bemächtigen, with Gen. [147]arbeiten. [148]ſchwer.

the guns, until his works approached perfection. He also formed a large battery behind Malbosquet; but this he carefully concealed from[149] the enemy. It was covered[150] by a plantation of olives, and he designed[151] to distract[152] their attention by opening its fire for the first time when he should be about to make his great effort[153] against Little Gibraltar. But the representatives of the people had nearly spoiled everything. These gentlemen walking[154] their rounds[155], discovered the battery behind the olives, and inquiring how long it had been ready, were told for eight days. Not guessing with[156] what view[157] so many guns had been kept[158] so long idle[159], they ordered an immediate cannonade.[160] The English made a vigorous sally[161], and spiked[162] the guns before Buonaparte could reach the spot. On his arrival at[163] the eminence[164] behind[165], he perceived a long deep ditch fringed[166] with brambles[167] and willows[168], which he[169] thought might be turned to advantage.[170] He ordered a regiment of foot[171] to creep along the ditch, which they did without being discovered until they were close[172] upon[173] the enemy. General O'Hara, the English commander, mistook[174] them for[175] some of his own allies[176], and rushing out[177] to give them some directions[178], was wounded and made prisoner.[179] The English were dispirited[180] when they lost their general; they retreated[181], and the

[149]vor. [150]decken. [151]beabſichtigen. [152]ablenken. [153]Hauptangriff. [154]machen. [155]Runde, *f.* [156]in. [157]Abſicht. [158]halten. [159]unbeſchäftigt. [160]Kanonade, *f.* [161]Ausfall. [162]vernageln. [163]auf. [164]Anhöhe. [165]von der Rückſeite. [166]bewachſen. [167]Brombeerſtrauch, *m.* [168]Weide, *f.* [169]*say*, as he. [170]vortheilhaft benutzen. [171]Fußvolk, *n.* [172]dicht. [173]an. [174]verkennen. [175]als. [176]Verbündet. [177]hervoreilen. [178]Anweiſung. [179]zu, with the Def. Art.; gefangen, treated as a Substantive. [180]entmuthigen. [181]ſich zurückziehen.

French were at liberty[182] to set about[183] the repair[184] of their battery. In this affair[185] much blood was shed. Napoleon himself received a bayonet thrust[186] in his thigh[187], and fell into the arms of Muiron, who carried him off[188] the field. Such was the commencement of their brotherly friendship. His wound, however, did not prevent him from continuing his labours behind Little Gibraltar.

That fort had very nearly been seized[189] by a sort of accident[190] some time before his preparations were completed; a casual[191] insult[192] excited a sudden quarrel between the men in Buonaparte's trenches[193] and the Spaniards in Little Gibraltar. The French soldiers, without waiting for[194] orders, seized their arms, and rushed[195] to the assault[196] with fury. Napoleon coming up[197] perceived that the moment was favourable, and persuaded Doppet to support the troops with more regiments; but the doctor, marching at the head of his columns, was seized with[198] a panic[199] on seeing a man killed by his side, and ordered a retreat, before anything could be effected. A few days after, this poltroon[200] was in his turn[201] superseded[202] by a brave veteran[203], General Dugommier, and Napoleon could at last count on having his efforts backed.[204] But, for the second time, the representatives did their best (ihr Möglichſtes) to ruin[205] his undertaking. The siege had now lasted four months: provisions were scarce in the camp; and

---

[182]ungehindert. [183]ſich machen an. [184]Ausbeſſerung. [185]Gefecht, *n.* [186]Bayonettſtich. [187]Schenkel, *m.* [188]*say*, from the. [189]nehmen. [190]Zufall. [191]gelegentlich. [192]Beleidigung. [193]Schanzgraben, *m.* [194]abwarten. [195]eilen. [196]Sturm, *m.* [197]herankommen. [198]von. [199]paniſcher Schreck. [200]Memme, *f.* [1]ſeinerſeits. [2]erſetzen. [3]*say*, old soldier. [4]unterſtützen. [5]zu Schanden machen.

these civilians[206], never being able to comprehend what was meant by bestowing[207] all this care[208] on a place so far below the city as Little Gibraltar, wrote to Paris that they saw no chance[209] of success[210], and hoped the government would agree with them that the siege ought to be abandoned.[211] Two days before this letter reached Paris, Toulon had fallen, and the representatives gave out that the despatch[212] was a forgery.[213] The moment had at last come when Buonaparte judged[214] it right[215] to make his grand attempt. During the night of the 17th of December, he threw 8,000 bombs[216] and shells[217] into Little Gibraltar, and the works being thus shattered[218], at daybreak, Dugommier commanded the assault. The French, headed[219] by the brave Muiron, rushed with impetuous[220] valour through the embrazures[221], and put[222] the whole garrison to the sword. The day was spent in arranging[223] the batteries, so as to command[224] the shipping[225], and next morning, so true had been Buonaparte's prophecy, when the French stood to[226] their posts[227], the English fleet was discovered to be already under weigh.[228]

Then followed a fearful scene. The English would not quit Toulon without destroying the French ships and arsenals that had fallen into their possession; nor could they refuse[229] to carry with them[230] the Antijacobin inhabitants, who knew that their lives would be instantly sacrificed if they should fall into the hands of the vic-

[6]der bürgerliche Beamte. [7]verwenden. [8]Sorgfalt. [9]Aussicht. [10]ein glücklicher Erfolg. [11]aufheben. [12]Botschaft. [13]*say*, forged, verfälschen. [14]halten für. [15]*say*, the right time. [16]Bombe, *f.* [17]Feuerkugel, *f.* [18]erschüttern. [19]anführen. [20]ungestüm. [21]Schießscharte, *f.* [22]to put to the sword über die Klinge springen lassen. [23]ordnen. [24]beherrschen. [25]Rhederei. [26]an. [27]Posten, *m.* [28]unter Segel gehen. [29]es verweigern. [30]mitnehmen.

torious Republicans, and who now flocked[234] to the beach[232] to[233] the number of 14,000, praying for[234] the means of escape.[235] The burning of ships, the explosion[236] of magazines[237], the roar[238] of artillery, and the cries of these fugitives, filled up[239] many hours. At last, the men-of-war[240] were followed[241] by a flotilla[242] bearing these miserable exiles[243], — the walls were abandoned, and Dugommier took possession of the place. The Republicans found that all persons of condition[244], who had taken part[245] against them, had escaped; and their rage was to be contented[246] with meaner victims. A day or two having been suffered[247] to pass in quiet, a proclamation[248], apparently friendly, exhorted the workmen, who had been employed on the batteries of the besieged town, to muster[249] at headquarters. One hundred and fifty poor men, who expected to be employed again in repairing the same fortifications[250], obeyed this summons[251], were instantly marched into a field, and shot in cold blood. Not less than a thousand were massacred[252] under circumstances equally atrocious. Buonaparte himself repelled[253] with indignation[254] the charge[255] of having had a hand in this butchery.[256] Even if he had, he was not the chief in command[257], and durst not have disobeyed[258] orders but[259] at[260] the sacrifice of his own life. It is on all

---

[231] ſich drängen. [232] Strand, *m.* [233] *say*, in the number of in der Anzahl von. [234] um. [235] Flucht. [236] das in die Luft Sprengen. [237] Pulverkammer, *f.* [238] Brüllen. [239] ausfüllen. [240] Kriegsſchiff, *n.* [241] *say*, a flotilla followed. [242] kleine Flotte. [243] Verbannt. [244] Stand. [245] Partei. [246] befriedigen. [247] after they had suffered. [248] Bekanntmachung. [249] ſich einfinden. [250] Feſtungswerk, *n.* [251] Aufruf, take sing. [252] niederhauen. [253] zurückweiſen. [254] Unwille, *m.* [255] Vorwurf. [256] Metzelei. [257] Hauptbefehlshaber. [258] zuwider handeln, with Dat. [259] *say*, it be then. [260] mit.

sides[261] admitted that a family of royalists[262], being shipwrecked[263] on the coast near Toulon a few days after, were rescued from the hands of the ferocious[264] Republicans, solely[265] by his interference[266] and address.[267] Putting[268] himself at the head of some of his gunners[269], he obtained possession of the unhappy prisoners, quieted[270] the mob[271] by assuring them that they should all be publicly executed the next morning, and meanwhile sent them off during the night in artillery waggons, supposed to be conveying[272] stores. The recovery[273] of Toulon was a service of the first[274] importance to the government. It suppressed all insurrectionary[275] spirit[276] in the south of France; and placed[277] a whole army at[278] their disposal[279] elsewhere. But he to whose genius the success was due, did not at first obtain the credit[280] of his important achievement[281] at Paris. The representatives of the people never (nicht eher) made their appearance on the eventful[282] morning at the Little Gibraltar until three hours after the troops were in possession of the best part of the fortifications. Then, indeed, they were seen, sword in hand, in the trenches, blustering[283] and swaggering[284] in safety. Yet these men did not blush to represent[285] themselves as having headed[286] the assault, while, in their account of the conflict, even the name of Buonaparte did not find a place. The truth could not, however, be con-

---

[261] allerseits. [262] königlich gesinnt. [263] Schiffbruch leiden. [264] wüthend. [265] einzig. [266] Vermittelung. [267] Klugheit. [268] setzen. [269] Kanonier, *m.* [270] beschwichtigen. [271] Pöbel, *m.* [272] fortschaffen. [273] Wiedereinnahme. [274] *say*, of the highest. [275] aufrührerisch. [276] Bewegung. [277] stellen. [278] zu. [279] Verfügung. [280] die gebührende Anerkennung für. [281] Heldenthat. [282] bedeutungsvoll; until, als; and put *three hours* after *troops*. [283] toben. [284] lärmen. [285] vorgeben, followed by *as if they had.* [286] anführen.

cealed effectually[287]; and he was appointed to survey and arrange the whole line of fortifications on the Mediterranean coast of France.

It was during the siege of Toulon, that Napoleon, while constructing[288] a battery under the enemy's fire, had occasion to prepare[289] a despatch, and called out[290] for[291] some one who could use[292] a pen. A young sergeant, named Junot, leapt out[293], and, leaning on the breastwork, wrote as he dictated. As he finished, a shot struck[294] the ground by[295] his side, scattering[296] dust in abundance over him and everything near him. "Good," said the soldier, laughing, "this time we shall spare our sand." The cool gaiety[297] of this pleased Buonaparte: he kept[298] his eye on the man; and Junot came[299] in the sequel[300] to be marshal of France and duke of Abrantes. — *Lockhart's Life of Napoleon.*

XXIV. Josephine de Beauharnois.

Buonaparte, holding[1] the chief military command[2] in the capital, and daily rising[3] in[4] importance[5], from[6] the zeal and firmness of his conduct in this high post, had now passed[7] into the order[8] of marked[9] and distinguished men. He continued[10], nevertheless, to lead in private[11] a quiet and modest life, studying as hard as ever, and but little seen in the circles of gaiety. An accident[12] which occurred[13] one morning at[14] his

---

[287]am Ende. [288]errichten. [289]ausfertigen. [290]rufen. [291]nach. [292]führen. [293]hervorſpringen. [294]ſchlagen in. [295]an. [296]ſtreuen. [297]Fröhlichkeit. [298]behalten. [299]das Glück haben. [300]ſpäter.

[1]in Händen haben. [2]Oberbefehl. [3]ſteigen. [4]an. [5]Bedeutung. [6]in Folge. [7]gelangen. [8]Reihe, *f.* [9]bemerken. [10]fortfahren. [11]zu Hauſe. [12]Vorfall. [13]ſich ereignen. [14]während.

military levee[15], gave at once a new turn[16] to his mode of life[17], and a fresh impetus[18] to the advance[19] of his fortunes.[20]

A fine boy, of[21] ten or twelve years of age[22], presented[23] himself, — stated[24] to the general that his name was Eugene Beauharnois, son of Viscount[25] Beauharnois, who had served as a general officer[26] in the republican armies on the Rhine, and been murdered by Robespierre, and said his errand[27] was to recover[28] the sword of his father. Buonaparte caused[29] the request[30] to be complied with[31]; and the tears[32] of the boy, as[33] he received[34] and kissed[35] the relic[36], excited[37] his interest.[38] He treated Eugene so kindly, that next day his mother, Josephine Beauharnois, came to thank him; and her beauty and singular[39] gracefulness[40] of address[41] made a strong impression.

This charming[42] lady, the daughter of a planter, by name[43] Tascher de la Pagerie, was born in the Island of Martinico[44], June 24th, 1763. While yet an infant, according to a story which she afterwards repeated, a negro sorceress[45] had prophesied that she should one day be greater than a queen, and yet outlive[46] her dignity.

The widow of Beauharnois had herself been imprisoned until the downfall[47] of Robespierre. In that

---

[15] Lever, *n.* [16] Wendung. [17] Lebensweise, *f.* [18] Antrieb zu. [19] Hebung. [20] take sing. [21] omit *of.* [22] *say*, old. [23] vorstellen, take the Passive form. [24] *say*, he stated er sagte. [25] Vicegraf (Gen.—en). [26] Ober-officier. [27] Auftrag. [28] wiedererlangen. [29] befehlen, and *say*, that the request, etc. [30] Gesuch, *n.* [31] bewilligen. [32] Thräne, *f.* [33] als. [34] empfangen. [35] küssen. [36] Ueberbleibsel, *n.* [37] erregen. [38] Theilnahme. [39] besonder. [40] Anmuth, *f.* [41] Rede. [42] reizend. [43] Gen. of Name, *m.* [44] Martinique. [45] Negerhexe. [46] überleben, [47] Sturz, *m.*

confinement[48], she had formed[49] a strict friendship[50] with another lady, who was now married to[51] Tallien, one of the most eminent[52] of[53] the leaders[54] of the Convention. Madame[55] Tallien had introduced[56] Josephine to her husband's friends; and Barras, the first director, having now begun to hold a sort of court at the Luxembourg, these two beautiful women were the chief ornaments[57] of his society. Buonaparte offered Josephine his hand: she, after some hesitation[58], accepted[59] it; and the young general by this marriage (9th March, 1796), cemented[60] his connexion[61] with the society of the Luxembourg, and, in particular, with Barras and Tallien, at that moment the most powerful[62] men in France. Napoleon had a strong tendency[63] to the superstition[64] of fatalism[65], and he always believed that his fortunes[66] were bound up[67] in some mysterious[68] manner with those of this graceful woman. She loved him warmly[69], and served him well. Her influence over[70] him was great, and it was always exerted[71] on the side[72] of humanity. She, and she alone, could overrule[73], by gentleness[74], the excesses[75] of passion to which he was liable[76], and her subsequent[77] fate will always form one of the darkest[78] pages[79] of the history of her lord.[80] — *Lockhart's Life of Napoleon.*

---

[48] Gewahrſam, *m.* [49] ſchließen. [50] innig. [51] an. [52] ausgezeichnet. [53] *say*, among. [54] Wortführer. [55] Frau. [56] einführen bei. [57] Hauptzierde. [58] Zögern. [59] annehmen. [60] befeſtigen. [61] Verbindung. [62] mächtig. [63] Anlage. [64] Glaube, *m.*, an. [65] *say*, of a fate, Schickſal, *n.* [66] sing. [67] innig verweben. [68] geheimnißvoll. [69] herzlich. [70] auf. [71] benutzen. [72] auf Seiten. [73] zügeln. [74] Sanftmuth. [75] *say*, the passionate excesses leidenſchaftlich Anfall. [76] unterworfen. [77] ſpäter. [78] düſter. [79] Seite, *f.* [80] Eheherr.

XXV. The Battles[1] of the Pyramids[2] and of Aboukir.

On the twenty-first of July the army came within sight of[3] the Pyramids, which, but for[4] the regularity of the outline[5], might have been taken for a distant ridge of rocky mountains. While every eye was fixed on these hoary[6] monuments of the past, they gained the brow[7] of a gentle[8] eminence, and saw at length spread out[9] before them the vast army of the Beys[10], its right posted[11] on an intrenched[12] camp by[13] the Nile, its centre[14] and left composed[15] of that brilliant cavalry[16] with which they were by this time[17] acquainted. Napoleon, riding forwards[18] to reconnoitre[19], perceived, (what escaped the observation of all his staff[20]), that the guns on the intrenched camp were not provided with carriages, and instantly decided on[21] his plan of attack.[22] He prepared[23] to throw his force[24] on[25] the left, where the guns could not be available.[26] Mourad Bey, who commanded in chief[27], speedily penetrated[28] his design, and the Mamelukes[29] advanced[30] gallantly to the encounter.[31] "Soldiers," said Napoleon, "from the summit[32] of yonder (jene) pyramids forty ages[33] behold[34] you;" and the battle began.

The French formed[35] into separate[36] squares[37], and

---

[1] Schlacht. [2] Pyramide, *f.* [3] zu Geſicht bekommen. [4] *say*, had there not been. [5] Umriß. [6] grau. [7] Spitze, *f.* [8] mäßig. [9] ausbreiten. [10] Bey, *pl.* Beys. [11] lehnen an. [12] verſchanzen. [13] an. [14] die Mitte. [15] bilden aus. [16] Reiterei. [17] nunmehr. [18] vorreiten. [19] beſichtigen, and add *the camp*. [20] Stab, *m.* [21] entwerfen. [22] Angriffsplan, *m.* [23] Anſtalten treffen. [24] Macht. [25] auf. [26] benutzt werden. [27] den Oberbefehl haben. [28] errathen; design Abſicht. [29] Mameluck, *m.* (G.—en). [30] rücken in. [31] Treffen. [32] Gipfel, *m.* [33] Jahrhundert, *n.* [34] herabſehen auf. [35] ſich ordnen. [36] einzeln. [37] Quarré, *n.* (*pl.*—s).

awaited[38] the assaults[39] of the Mamelukes. These came on with impetuous speed and wild cries[40], and practised[41] every means to force[42] their passage[43] into the serried[44] ranks[45] of their new opponents.[46] They rushed[47] on the line of bayonets, backed[48] their horses upon them, and at last, maddened[49] by the firmness which they could not shake[50], dashed[51] their pistols and carabines[52] into the faces of the men.[53] They who had fallen wounded from their seats, would[54] crawl[55] along the sand, and hew at[56] the legs of their enemies with their scymitars.[57] Nothing could move the French: the bayonet, and the continued[58] roll[59] of musketry[60], by degrees[61] thinned[62] the host[63] around them; and Buonaparte at last advanced.[64] Such were the confusion and terror of the enemy when he came near[65] the camp, that they abandoned their works, and flung[66] themselves by[67] hundreds into the Nile. The carnage[68] was prodigious.[69] Multitudes[70] more[71] were drowned.[72] Mourad and a remnant[73] of his Mamelukes retreated on[74] Upper Egypt.[75] Cairo surrendered[76]: Lower[77] Egypt was entirely conquered.

Such were the immediate consequences of "The Battle of the Pyramids." The name of Buonaparte now

---

[38]erwarten. [39]Angriff. [40]Geſchrei, *n.*, only in sing [41]verſuchen. [42]erzwingen. [43]Bruch. [44]geſchloſſen. [45]Reihe, *f.* [46]Gegner. [47]ſich ſtürzen; bayonet das Bayonett (*pl.*—e). [48]rücklings treiben. [49]zur Verzweiflung bringen. [50]erſchüttern. [51]ſchleudern. [52]Karabiner, *m.* [53]*say*, to the men into the face; and *man* is here Soldat. [54]mögen. [55]kriechen. [56]hauen nach. [57]krummer Säbel. [58]fortſetzen. [59]Rollen. [60]Musketenfeuer, *n.* [61]allmählig. [62]lichten. [63]Schaar, *f.* [64]vorrücken. [65]ſich nähern, with Dat. [66]ſtürzen. [67]zu. [68]Blutbad, *n.* [69]ungeheuer. [70]Maſſe, *f.* [71]*say*, besides, außerdem noch. [72]ertrinken. [73]Ueberbleibſel. [74]nach. [75]Ober-Aegypten. [76]ſich ergeben. [77]Unter

spread[78] panic through the East; and the "Sultan Kebir" (or king of fire[79], as he was called from[80] the deadly effects[81] of the musketry in this engagement[82]), was considered as the destined[83] scourge[84] of God, whom it was hopeless to resist.

The French now had recompense[85] for the toils[86] they had undergone.[87] The bodies of the slain[88] and drowned Mamelukes were rifled[89], and it being the custom for these warriors to carry their wealth[90] about[91] them, a single corpse[92] often made a soldier's fortune. In the deserted[93] harems[94] of the chiefs at Cairo, and in the neighbouring villages, men at length formed[95] proofs that "eastern luxury"[96] is no empty[97] name. The Savans[98] ransacked[99] the monuments[100] of antiquity, and founded collections which will ever reflect[101] honour[102] on their zeal and skill. Napoleon himself visited the interior of the great Pyramid, and on entering the secret chamber, in which, 3,000 years before, some Pharaoh had been inurned[103], repeated once more his confession of faith[104] — "There is no God but God, and Mahomet is his prophet." The bearded Orientals[105], who accompanied him, concealed their doubts[106] of his orthodoxy[107], and responded[108] very solemnly: "God is merciful.[109] Thou hast spoken like the most learned of the prophets." While Napoleon was thus pursuing[110]

---

[78]verbreiten. [79]Feuerkönig. [80]wegen. [81]Wirkung, sing. [82]Kampf, *m.* [83]beſtimmen. [84]Geißel, *f.* [85]belohnt ſein. [86]Anſtrengung. [87]ſich unterziehen, with Dat. [88]erſchlagen. [89]berauben. [90]Reichthum, *m.* [91]um, with the Pronoun reflective. [92]Leichnam, *m.* [93]verlaſſen. [94]Frauengemach, *n.* (*pl.*—ächer). [95]erhalten, Beweis. [96]morgenländiſche Pracht. [97]leer. [98]Gelehrt. [99]plündern. [100]Denkmal, *n.* [1]werfen. [2]ein ehrenvolles Licht. [3]einſargen. [4]Glaubensbekenntniß, *n.* [5]Orientale, *m.* [6]Zweifel, *m.*, an, with Dat. [7]Rechtgläubigkeit. [8]antworten. [9]barmherzig. [10]verfolgen.

his career[111] of victory[112] in the interior[113], Nelson, having scoured[114] the Mediterranean in quest of him[115], once more returned to the coast of Egypt. He arrived within sight[116] of the towers of Alexandria on the first of August — ten days after the battle of the Pyramids had been fought[117] and won — and found Brueyes still at his moorings[118] in the Bay of Abukir. Nothing seems to be more clear than that the French admiral ought to have made the best of his way[119] to France, or at least to Malta, the moment[120] the army had taken possession of Alexandria. Napoleon constantly asserted that he had urged[121] Brueyes to do so. Brueyes himself lived not to give his testimony, but Gantheaume, the vice-admiral, always persisted[122] in stating[123], in direct[124] contradiction[125] to Buonaparte, that the fleet remained by[126] the general's express[127] desire. The testimonials being thus balanced[128], it is necessary to consult[129] other materials[130] of judgment[131]; and it appears extremely difficult to doubt (bezweifeln) that the French admiral, who, it[132] is acknowledged on all hands, dreaded the encounter[133] of Nelson, remained off[134] Alexandria for the sole purpose[135] of aiding[136] the motions[137] of the army, and in consequence of[138] what he at least conceived[139] to be the wish of its general. However this might have been[140], the results of his delay[141] were terrible.

---

[111] Laufbahn, *f.* [112] *say*, victorious siegreich. [113] das Innere. [114] durchstreifen. [115] *say*, after him. [116] ins Bereich kommen. [117] kämpfen. [118] vor Anker. [119] *say*, returned as soon as possible. [120] *say*, as soon as. [121] drängen. [122] bestehen auf. [123] Aussage. [124] gerade. [125] Widerspruch, mit. [126] auf. [127] ausdrücklich. [128] sich die Wage halten. [129] um Rath fragen. [130] Quelle, *f.* [131] *say*, in order to form a judgment; Urtheil fällen. [132] *say*, as it is. [133] Zusammentreffen mit. [134] vor. [135] einzig um. [136] unterstützen. [137] Bewegung. [138] *say*, of that in Gemäßheit mit dem. [139] halten für. [140] wie dem auch gewesen sei, die Folgen ꝛc. [141] Verzug.

The French fleet were moored[142] in a semicircle[143] in the bay of Abukir, so near the shore, that, as their admiral believed, it was impossible for the enemy to come between him and the land. He expected, therefore, to be attacked on one side only, and thought himself sure[144], that the English could not renew[145] their favourite manœuvre[146] of breaking the line, and so at once dividing the opposed[147] fleet, and placing[148] the ships individually[149] between two fires. But[150] Nelson daringly[151] judged[152] that his ships might force a passage[153] between the French and the land, and succeeding in this attempt, instantly brought on[154] the conflict[155] in the same dreaded[156] form[157] which Brueyes had believed impossible. The details[158] of this great seafight[159] belong to the history of the English hero. The battle was obstinate[160]; it lasted more than twenty hours, including[161] the whole night. A solitary[162] pause[163] occurred[164] at midnight, when the French admiral's ship[165], L'Orient, a superb[166] vessel of one hundred and twenty guns, took fire[167], and blew up[168] in the heart[169] of the conflicting squadrons[170], with an explosion[171] that for a moment silenced[172] rage in awe. The admiral himself perished. Next morning two shattered[173] ships, out of all the French fleet, with difficulty made their escape[174] to the open sea. The rest

---

[142]vor Anker liegen. [143]Halbkreis, *m.* [144]es für gewiß halten. [145]wiederholen. [146]Lieblingsverfahren. [147]feindlich. [148]ſetzen. [149]einzeln. [150]indeſſen. [151]voller Kühnheit. [152]dafür halten. [153]Weg, *m.* [154]veranlaſſen. [155]Kampf. [156]furchtbar. [157]Weiſe, *f.* [158]beſonderer Umſtand. [159]Seeſchlacht. [160]hartnäckig. [161]einſchließen; use the Past Part., and put it after *night*. [162]einzig. [163]Pauſe, *f.* [164]Statt finden. [165]Admiralſchiff, *n.* [166]herrlich. [167]in Feuer gerathen. [168]in die Luft ſpringen. [169]Mitte, *f.* [170]Geſchwader, *n.* [171]Knall, *m.* [172]*say*, turned rage into silent awe; to turn verwandeln, awe Ehrfurchtsſtaunen. [173]zertrümmert. [174]entkommen.

of all that magnificent array[175] had been utterly[176] destroyed, or remained in the hands of the English. Such was the battle of Abukir, in which Nelson achieved[177], with a force much inferior[178] to the French, what he himself called "not a victory but a conquest." Three thousand French seamen reached the shore: a greater number died. Had the English admiral possessed frigates[179], he must have forced his way into the harbour of Alexandria, and seized the whole stores and transports[180] of the army. As things were[181], the best fleet of the republic had ceased[182] to be; the blockade[183] of the coast was established[184]: and the invader[185] completely isolated[186] from France, must be content[187] to rely[188] on his own arms and the resources[189] of Egypt.

Before Nelson's arrival, Buonaparte is said to have meditated[190] returning to France, for the purpose of[191] extorting[192] from the government those supplies[193] of various kinds, which on actual[194] examination[195] he had perceived to be indispensible[196] to the permanent[197] occupation[198] of Egypt, and which he well knew the Directors would refuse to any voice but his own. He intended, it is also said, to urge on[199] the Directory the propriety[200] of resuming[201] the project[202] of a descent[203] on England itself at the moment when the mind[204] of that government might be supposed[205] to

---

[175]Ausrüſtung. [176]völlig. [177]erlangen. [178]geringer als. [179]Fregatte, *f.* [180]Ueberfahrtsſchiff, *n.* [181]ſtehen. [182]aufhören. [183]Blockade, *f.* [184]feſtſetzen. [185]der einfallende Eroberer. [186]abſchneiden. [187]ſich begnügen. [188]ſich verlaſſen auf. [189]Hülfsquelle, *f.* [190]im Sinne haben. [191]*say*, in order to. [192]erzwingen. [193]Ergänzung. [194]wirklich. [195]Unterſuchung. [196]unumgänglich nothwendig. [197]dauernd. [198]Beſetzung. [199]dringend vorſtellen. [200]Nothwendigkeit. [1]wieder aufnehmen. [2]Entwurf. [3]Landung in. [4]Gemüth, *n.* [5]*say*, *adverbially*, probably.

be engrossed[206] with the news[207] of his dazzling[208] successes in Egypt. All these proud visions[209] died[210] with Brueyes. On hearing of the battle of Abukir, a solitary sigh escaped from[211] Napoleon. "To France," said he, "the fates[212] have decreed[213] the empire[214] of the land — to England that of the sea."

He endured[215] this great calamity with the equanimity[216] of a masculine spirit. He gave orders that the seamen landed at Alexandria should be formed into a marine brigade[217], and thus gained a valuable[218] addition[219] to his army; and proceeded[220] himself to organise[221] a system of government[222], under which the great natural resources of the country might be turned to the best advantage.[223] — *Lockhart's Life of Napoleon.*

XXVI. The Voyage.[1]

To[2] an American[3] visiting Europe, the long voyage he has to make is an excellent preparative.[4] The temporary[5] absence[6] of worldly[7] scenes[8] and employments[9] produces[10] a state of mind peculiarly fitted[11] to receive[12] new and vivid[13] impressions. The vast[14] space[15] of waters that separates the hemispheres[16] is like a blank[17] page[18] in[19] existence. There is no gra-

---

[6]beſchäftigen. [7]Nachricht. [8]glänzend. [9]Bild, *n.* [10]entſchwinden. [11]entſchlüpfen. [12]ſing. [13]beſtimmen. [14]Herrſchaft über. [15]ertragen. [16]Gleichmuth, *m.* [17]Seebrigade, *f.* [18]wichtig. [19]Zuwachs. [20]daran gehen. [21]begründen. [22]Regierungsſyſtem, *n.* [23]*say*, employed in the most advantageous way; to employ benutzen; advantageous vortheilhaft.

[1]Seereiſe, *f.* [2]für. [3]Amerikaner. [4]Vorbereitung. [5]zeitweilig. [6]Abweſenheit. [7]weltlich. [8]Ereigniß, *n.* [9]Beſchäftigung. [10]*say*, puts the mind into a state, verſetzen, Stimmung. [11]geeignet. [12]empfangen. [13]lebhaft. [14]weit. [15]Ausdehnung. [16]*say*, the two worlds. [17]unbeſchrieben. [18]Blatt, *n.* [19]*say*, in our.

dual[20] transition[21] by which, as in Europe, the features[22] and population[23] of one country blend[24] almost imperceptibly[25] with[26] those of another. From the moment you lose sight of[27] the land you have left, all is vacancy[28] until you step on[29] the opposite[30] shore, and are launched[31] at once into the bustle[32] and novelties[33] of another world.

In[34] travelling by[35] land there is[36] a continuity of scene[37], and a connected[38] succession[39] of persons[40] and incidents[41], that carry on[42] the story[43] of life, and lessen the effect of absence and separation.[44] We drag[45], it is true[46], a lengthening[47] chain at[48] each remove[49] of[50] our pilgrimage[51]; but the chain is unbroken: we can trace it back[52], link[53] by[54] link; and we feel that the last of them still[55] grapples[56] to[57] home. But a wide sea-voyage severs[58] us at once. It makes us conscious[59] of being (*say* that we are) cast loose[60] from the secure anchorage[61] of settled[62] life, and sent adrift[63] upon[64] a doubtful[65] world. It interposes[66] a gulf[67] not merely imaginary[68] but real between us and our homes[69], — a gulf subject[70] to tempest[71] and fear

---

[20] allmählig. [21] Uebergang. [22] Charakter, *m.*, sing. [23] Bevölkerung. [24] verschwimmen. [25] unmerklich. [26] in. [27] aus dem Gesicht verlieren. [28] Leere, with the Indef. Art. [29] betreten. [30] gegenüberliegend. [31] versetzen. [32] Getriebe, *n.* [33] *say*, the new phenomena Erscheinung. [34] wenn. [35] zu. [36] *say*, one finds. [37] *say*, a continued landscape-picture fortsetzen, Landschaftsbild, *n.* [38] zusammenhängend. [39] Aufeinanderfolge. [40] Mensch. [41] Begebenheit. [42] fortspinnen. [43] Erzählung. [44] Trennung. [45] schleppen. [46] freilich. [47] länger sich hinziehend. [48] bei. [49] Fortschritt. [50] in. [51] Wallfahrt. [52] *say*, we can trace the track back die Spur rückwärts verfolgen. [53] Glied, *n.* [54] vor, [55] doch immer. [56] sich anschließen. [57] an. [58] abschneiden. [59] *say*, excites the consciousness in us das Bewußtsein erregen. [60] ablösen. [61] Ankergrund, *m.* [62] regeln. [63] hinausstoßen. [64] in. [65] ungewiß. [66] dazwischen legen. [67] Golf, *m.* [68] eingebildet. [69] sing. [70] unterworfen. [71] Sturm, *m.*, take pl.

and uncertainty, that makes distance palpable[72], and return[73] precarious.[74]

Such, at least, was the case with[75] myself. As I saw the last blue line of my native land fade away[76] like a cloud in[77] the horizon, it seemed as if I had closed[78] one volume of the world and its concerns[79], and had time for meditation[80] before I opened another. That land, too, now vanishing from[81] my view[82], which contained all that was most dear to me in life; what vicissitudes[83] might occur[84] in it! what changes might take place[85] in me before I should visit it again! Who can tell, when he sets forth to wander[86] whither he may be driven by the uncertain currents[87] of existence; or when he may return; or whether it may ever be his lot[88] to revisit[89] the scenes[90] of his childhood?

I said that at[91] sea all is vacancy; I should correct[92] the expression. To one given[93] to day-dreamings[94], and fond of losing himself[95] in reveries[96], a sea voyage is full of subjects for meditation; but then[97] they are the wonders of the deep, and of the air, and rather tend[98] to abstract[99] the mind from worldly themes.[100] I delighted[101] to loll[102] over the quarter-railing[103], or climb to[104] the main-top[105] on[106] a calm day, and muse[107]

---

[72] fühlbar. [73] die Rückkehr. [74] zweifelhaft. [75] bei. [76] verſchweben. [77] an. [78] beenden. [79] Angelegenheit. [80] Betrachtung, take pl. [81] entſchwinden, with Dat. [82] Blick. [83] Schickſalswechſel, *m.* [84] Statt finden, and insert *not* after *might*. [85] vorgehen. [86] ſich auf die Wanderſchaft begeben. [87] Strömung. [88] Beſtimmung. [89] wiederſehen. [90] Schauplatz, *m.*, sing. [91] auf with the Def. Art. [92] *say*, choose another. [93] ſich ergeben. [94] *say*, to build castles in the air. [95] ſich gern verlieren. [96] Träumerei. [97] freilich. [98] dahin ſtreben. [99] abziehen. [100] Sache, *f.* [1] *say*, it delighted me glücklich machen. [2] hangen. [3] das Geländer des Verdeckes. [4] auf. [5] der große Maſt. [6] an. [7] ſinnen.

for hours together[108] on[109] the tranquil bosom of a summer's sea, — to gaze[110] upon the piles[111] of golden clouds just[112] piercing[113] above the horizon, fancy[114] them some fairy realms[115], and people[116] them with a creation[117] of my own[118], — to watch[119] the gentle[120] undulating[121] billows[122], rolling[123] their silver volumes[124], as[125] if to die away[126] on these happy shores. —

Washington Irving's Sketchbook.

XXVII. Character of Lorenzo de' Medici.

The days of Dante, of Boccacio, and of Petrarca, were indeed past[1]; but under the auspices[2] of the house of Medici, and particularly through the ardour[3] and example of Lorenzo, the empire of science and true taste was again restored.[4]

After the death of Boccacio, the survivor of[5] that celebrated triumvirate[6] who had carried[7] their native tongue[8] to a high pitch[9] of refinement[10], and endeavoured, not without success, to introduce the study of the ancient languages into Italy, a general degradation[11] of letters[12] again took place[13]; and the Italian tongue in particular was so far deteriorated[14] and debased[15] as[16], by (nach) the acknowledgment[17] of the best crit-

---

[108] Stunden lang. [109] über. [110] *say*, to fix the gazing look, heften, staunend. [111] Maſſe, *f.* [112] gerade. [113] emporſteigen. [114] denken, and *say*, fancy them to me as so many. [115] Feenreich, *n.* [116] bevölkern. [117] Schöpfung. [118] *say*, of my own imagination Phantaſie. [119] beobachten. [120] ſanft. [121] wogen. [122] Welle, *f.* [123] dahinrollen. [124] Silbermaſſe. [125] *say*, as if they would. [126] erſterben.

[1] dahin. [2] Schutz, sing. [3] Eifer, *m.* [4] wieder herſtellen. [5] *say*, who survived überleben. [6] Triumvirat, *n.* [7] erheben. [8] Landesſprache. [9] Gipfel, *m.* [10] Verfeinerung. [11] Verfall. [12] Literatur, in sing. [13] hereinbrechen. [14] ausarten. [15] verderben. [16] *say*, that it has. [17] Geſtändniß, *n.*

tics[18], to have become scarcely intelligible.[19] The first symptoms[20] of improvement appeared about the middle of the fifteenth century, when Cosmo de' Medici, after having established[21] his authority[22] in Florence[23], devoted[24] the latter years of a long and honourable life to the encouragement[25] and even the study of philosophy and polite[26] letters.[27] He died in 1464; and the infirm[28] state of health[29] of his son Piero, who was severely[30] afflicted[31] by the gout[32], did not permit[33] him to make that progress[34] in the path which his father had pointed out[35], that his natural disposition[36] would otherwise have effected. After surviving him only about five years, the greater part of which time he was confined[37] to a sick bed[38] he died, leaving[39] two sons: to the elder of whom, Lorenzo, the praise of having restored[40] to literature its ancient honours[41] is[42] principally[43] due. In succeeding[44] times indeed[45] that praise has been almost exclusively[46] bestowed on[47] Giovanni de' Medici, afterwards[48] Leo the tenth, the second son of Lorenzo, who undoubtedly promoted[49] the views[50], but never in any degree[51] rivalled[52] the talents of his father. Certain it is that no man was ever more admired and venerated[53] by his contemporaries[54], or has been more defrauded[55] of his

---

[18] Kunſtrichter. [19] verſtändlich. [20] Anzeichen, *n.*, of improvement eines beſſern Zuſtandes. [21] begründen. [22] Anſehen. [23] Florenz. [24] widmen. [25] Ermunterung. [26] ſchön. [27] Wiſſenſchaft. [28] ſchwach. [29] Geſundheits-zuſtand. [30] ſchwer. [31] behaftet mit. [32] Gicht, *f.* [33] geſtatten. [34] Plur. [35] andeuten. [36] Gemüthsart, *f.* [37] feſſeln an. [38] Krankenbett, *n.* [39] hinterlaſſen. [40] wieder verleihen. [41] sing. [42] gebühren to be due. [43] hauptſächlich. [44] ſpäter. [45] freilich. [46] ausſchließlich. [47] ertheilen. [48] *say*, to the afterwards nachherig, which is an Adjective. [49] befördern. [50] Abſicht. [51] Umfang. [52] gleichkommen, with Dat. [53] verehren. [54] Zeitgenoſſe, *m.* [55] betrügen um.

just fame by posterity[56], than Lorenzo de' Medici. Possessed[57] of a genius[58] more original[59] and versatile[60] than perhaps any of his countrymen[61], he has led[62] the way[63] in some of the most estimable[64] species[65] of poetic composition, and some of his productions[66] stand (daſtehen) unrivalled[67] amongst those of his countrymen to[68] the present day. Yet such[69] has been the admiration paid[70] by the Italians to a few favourite authors[71], that they have almost closed[72] their eyes to[73] the various excellencies with[74] which his works abound.[75] From the time of his death no general collection was made of his writings for upwards of[76] sixty years, and after their first publication[77] by Aldus in 1554, upwards of[78] two centuries elapsed[79] without a new edition.[80] Neglected in Italy, they seem to have been unknown to the rest of[81] Europe. A French historian[82], Varillas, in whose narrative Lorenzo makes[83] a conspicuous[84] figure[85], assures his readers, that the writings of this great man, as well in verse as in prose, are irrevocably[86] lost; and that he would no longer be known as an author, were it not from[87] the commendations[88] bestowed upon[89] him by his friends, and the attention[90] paid[91] to him by Paulus Jovius, who has assigned[92]

---

[56]Nachwelt, *f.* [57]begabt mit. [58]Geiſt, *m.* [59]ſchöpferiſch. [60]vielſeitig. [61]Landsmann, and say *had* beſitzen. [62]brechen. [63]Bahn, *f.* [64]ſchätzbar. [65]Dichtungsart is species of poetic composition. [66]Leiſtung. [67]unvergleichlich. [68]bis zum heutigen Tage. [69]ſo groß. [70]zollen. [71]Lieblingsſchriftſteller. [72]ſchließen. [73]vor. [74]an. [75]ſo reich ſein. [76]for upwards of wohl, and put lang after *years*. [77]Veröffentlichung. [78]ungefähr. [79]vergehen. [80]Ausgabe. [81]übrig. [82]Geſchichtſchreiber. [83]ſpielen. [84]bedeutend. [85]Rolle, *f.* [86]unwiederbringlich. [87]*say*, without. [88]Anpreiſung. [89]zu ſeinen Gunſten erheben. [90]Aufmerkſamkeit. [91]ſchenken. [92]anweiſen.

a place[93] to his memory[94] in his eulogies on[95] the modern writers of Italy.

But we are[96] not to consider Lorenzo de' Medici merely in the character of an author, and a patron[97] of learning. As a statesman, he was without doubt the most extraordinary person[98] of his own or perhaps of any[99] time. Though a private citizen[100] and a merchant of Florence, he not only obtained the decided[101] control[102] of that state, at[103] a period[104] when it abounded with[105] men of the greatest talents and acuteness[106], but raised himself to the rank[107] of sole arbiter[108] of Italy, and operated[109] with considerable effect[110] upon the politics[111] of Europe. Without attempting to subjugate[112] his native place[113], he laid the foundation[114] of the future greatness of his family. His son and his nephew were, at a short interval[115], successively[116] raised to the pontifical[117] dignity[118]; and in the succeeding[119] centuries, his descendants[120] became connected[121] by marriage[122] with the first European sovereigns. The protection[123] afforded[124] by him to all the polite[125] arts[126] gave them a permanent[127] foundation[128] in Italy. In the establishment[129] of public libraries, schools, and seminaries of learning[130], he was equally[131] munificent[132], indefatigable[133], and

---

[93]Platz, *m.* [94]Andenken. [95]Lobrede zu Ehren. [96]müſſen. [97]Beſchützer. [98]Mann. [99]irgend ein. [100]Privatmann. [1]entſchieden. [2]Leitung. [3]zu. [4]Zeit, *f.* [5]an Fülle beſitzen. [6]Scharfſinn. [7]Rang, *m.* [8]Schiedsrichter. [9]wirken. [10]Erfolg. [11]Staatsleben. [12]unterjochen. [13]Geburtsort, *m.* [14]Grundlage. [15]Zwiſchenraum, *m.* [16]nach einander. [17]päpſtlich. [18]Würde. [19]folgend. [20]Nachkomme, *m.* [21]verbinden. [22]Heirath. [23]Schutz, *m.* [24]*say*, which he afforded angedeihen laſſen. [25]ſchön. [26]Kunſt. [27]dauernd. [28]Stellung. [29]Errichtung. [30]gelehrte Anſtalt. [31]gleich. [32]freigebig. [33]unermüdlich.

successful[134]; and these objects[135] were all accomplished[136] by a man who died at[137] the early age of forty-four years. — *Roscoe's Life of Lorenzo de' Medici.*

XXVIII. Influence[1] of Liberty[2] on the Florentines.[3]

The great[4] degree of freedom, enjoyed[5] by the citizens of Florence, had the most favourable effects[6] on their character, and gave them a decided[7] superiority[8] over[9] the inhabitants of the rest of Italy. The popular nature of the government[10], not subjected to the will of an individual as in many of the surrounding[11] states, not restricted[12] like that of Venice[13] to[14] a particular class, was a constant incitement[15] to exertion. Nor[16] was it on the great body[17] of the people only that the good effects of this system[18] were apparent[19]; even those who claimed[20] the privileges[21] of ancestry[22] felt the advantages of a rivalship[23], which prevented their sinking[24] into indolence[25], and called upon[26] them to support by their own talents the rank and influence which they had derived[27] from[28] those of their ancestors.[29] Where the business[30] of government is con-

---

[34]glücklich. [35]Ding, *n.* [36]zu Stande bringen. [37]in.

[1]Einfluß. [2]auf. [3]Florentiner. [4]hoch. [5]*say*, which the citizens enjoyed; to enjoy genießen, with Gen. [6]günstig wirken auf. [7]entschieden. [8]Ueberlegenheit. [9]vor; the rest of *express by* übrig. [10]volksmäßige Regierungsweise. [11]umgränzend. [12]beschränken. [13]Venedig. [14]auf. [15]Sporn, *m.* [16]auch nicht, and leave out *was it* and *that*, and put *were* between auch and nicht. [17]Masse, *f.* [18]Staatssystem, *n.* [19]sichtbar. [20]Anspruch machen auf. [21]Vorrecht. [22]Ahnenreihe, *f.*, with Indef. Art. [23]Wetteifer, *m.* [24]versinken. [25]Trägheit. [26]auffordern. [27]gewinnen. [28]durch. [29]Vorältern. [30]Geschäft, *n.*, take pl.

fined[31] to a few, the faculties[32] of the many[33] become torpid[34] for[35] want of[36] exercise; but in Florence, every citizen was conversant with[37], and might hope, at least, to partake in[38] the government: and hence was derived[39] that spirit of industry which, in the pursuit[40] of[41] wealth, and the extension[42] of commerce[43], was, amidst all their intestine broils[44], so conspicuous[45] and so successful.[46] The fatigues[47] of public life, and the cares[48] of mercantile[49] avocations[50], were alleviated[51] at times[52] by the study of literature or the speculations[53] of[54] philosophy. A rational[55] and dignified[56] employment engaged[57] those moments of leisure[58] not necessarily devoted to more important concerns, and the mind was relaxed[59] without being debilitated[60], and amused[61] without being depraved.[62] The superiority which the Florentines thus acquired, was universally acknowledged; and they became the historians, the poets, the orators, and the preceptors of Europe. — *Roscoe's Life of Lorenzo de' Medici.*

XXIX. On Dr. Johnson's Lives[1] of the Poets.

The life of Pope[2] by Dr. Johnson has been considered as one of the best of[3] that series[4] which, unfor-

---

[31] einſchränken auf. [32] Fähigkeit. [33] *say*, the great multitude Menge. [34] verdumpfen to become torpid. [35] aus. [36] an. [37] *say*, had knowledge of the government (Regierungsweſen), and might — to partake (Theil nehmen) in it. [38] an. [39] kommen. [40] Streben. [41] nach. [42] Ausbreitung. [43] Handel, *m.* [44] innere Zwiſtigkeiten. [45] in die Augen ſpringend. [46] erfolgreich. [47] Beſchwerde. [48] Mühſeligkeit. [49] kaufmänniſch. [50] Geſchäft. [51] mildern. [52] zu Zeiten. [53] Verſenkung, sing. [54] in. [55] vernünftig. [56] würdevoll. [57] ausfüllen. [58] Muße, *f.* [59] ſich erholen. [60] ſich abſchwächen. [61] unterhalten. [62] verderben.

[1] Leben, which has no plural, and when it is as much as *description of life*, the plural is taken from Lebensbeſchreibung. [2] *say*, Pope's life. [3] in. [4] Reihe.

tunately for the memory of our national poets[5] and the character of our national poetry[6], he was induced[7] to undertake. Throughout[8] the whole[9] of those lives there appears an assumption[10] of superiority[11] in the biographer[12] over the subjects[13] of his labours[14], which diminishes[15] the idea[16] of their talents[17], and leaves[18] an unfavourable impression[19] on their moral character. It could only be[20] from[21] the representation[22] of Johnson, that so amiable a man as Cowper[23] could thus close[24] his remarks on[25] reading the lives of the British poets: "After all[26], it is a melancholy[27] observation[28], which it is impossible not to make[29], after having run through[30] this series of poetic lives, that where there were such shining talents, there should be so little virtue. These luminaries[31] of our country seem to have been kindled[32] into a brighter[33] blaze[34] than others, only that their spots[35] might be more noticed[36]; so much can nature do for our intellectual[37] part[38], and so little for our moral." — *Roscoe's Life of Pope.*

XXX. Study of Ancient Literature in Italy.

The extreme[1] avidity[2] for[3] the works of the ancient writers which distinguished[4] the early part of the fif-

---

[5]Volksdichter. [6]Volkspoeſie. [7]bewegen. [8]durch, and put hindurch after the Acc. [9]*say*, all these. [10]Anmaßung. [11]Ueberlegenheit. [12]Lebensbeſchreiber. [13]Gegenſtand, sing. [14]take the sing. [15]verringern. [16]Begriff. [17]Talent, *n.* [18]zurücklaſſen. [19]Mahl, *n.* [20]*say*, come. [21]durch. [22]Darſtellung. [23]add *was*. [24]beſchließen. [25]*say*, after he had read. [26]am Ende, and insert doch after *it*. [27]traurig. [28]Gedanke. [29]*say*, arrive at. [30]durchlaufen. [31]Sternlicht, *n.*(*pl.*—er). [32]entflammen. [33]hell. [34]Glanz, *f.* [35]Fleck, *m.* [36]*say*, strike the eye ins Auge fallen. [37]geiſtig. [38]Kraft, and take plural.

[1]höchſt. [2]Begierde. [3]nach. [4]auszeichnen.

teenth century, announced[5] the near approach[6] of more enlightened[7] times. Whatever were the causes that determined[8] men of wealth and learning to exert themselves so strenuously[9] in this pursuit[10], certain it is that their interference[11] was of the highest importance to the interests[12] of posterity; and that if it had been much longer delayed[13], the loss would have been in a great[14] degree irreparable[15], such of the manuscripts as then existed[16] of the ancient Greek and Roman authors, being mouldered[17] in obscure[18] corners[19] a prey to oblivion and neglect.[20] It was therefore a circumstance productive of[21] the happiest consequences[22], that the pursuits[23], of the opulent[24] were at this time directed[25] rather towards the recovery[26] of the works of the ancients, than to the encouragement[27] of contemporary[28] merit[29]; a fact that may serve in some degree[30] to account for[31] the dearth[32] of original[33] literary[34] productions[35] during this interval. Induced[36] by the rewards that invariably[37] attended a successful inquiry[38], those men who possessed any considerable share[39] of[40] learning, devoted themselves to this occupation, and to such a degree of enthusiasm[41] was it carried[42], that the discovery of an ancient manuscript was regarded almost equivalent[43] to[44] the conquest of a kingdom. — *Roscoe's Life of Lorenzo de' Medici.*

---

[5]verkündigen. [6]Dämmerung, lit. dawn. [7]aufgeklärt. [8]beſtimmen. [9]eifrig. [10]Streben. [11]Dazwiſchenkunft. [12]Wohl, sing. [13]verſchieben. [14]hoch. [15]unerſetzlich. [16]vorhanden ſein. [17]to be mouldered vermodern. [18]finſter. [19]Winkel, *m.* [20]Vernachläſſigung. [21]erzeugend. [22]Folge. [23]Beſtrebung. [24]Wohlhabend. [25]richten. [26]Wiedererlangung. [27]Ermunterung. [28]gleichzeitig. [29]Verdienſt, *n.* [30]einiger Maßen. [31]erklären. [32]Armuth, an. [33]freigeſchaffen. [34]literariſch. [35]Leiſtung. [36]bewegen. [37]unwandelbar. [38]Forſchung. [39]Schatz, *m.* [40]an. [41]Begeiſterung. [42]treiben. [43]von gleichem Werthe achten. [44]als.

XXXI. Character of the Earl of Strafford.

Thomas Wentworth, successively[1] created[2] Lord Wentworth and Earl[3] of Strafford, a man of great abilities[4], eloquence, and courage, but of a cruel and imperious[5] nature, was the counsellor[6] most trusted[7] in political and military affairs. He had been one of the most distinguished members[8] of the opposition[9], and felt towards those whom he had deserted[10] that peculiar[11] malignity[12] which has, in all ages[13], been characteristic[14] of apostates.[15] He perfectly understood the feelings, the resources, and the policy[16] of the party to which he had lately belonged, and had formed[17] a vast[18] and deeply meditated[19] scheme[20] which very nearly confounded[21] even the able[22] tactics[23] of the statesmen by whom the House of Commons[24] had been directed.[25] To this scheme, in his confidential[26] correspondence[27], he gave the expressive[28] name of "Thorough.[29]" His object[30] was to do in England all, and more than all, that Richelieu was doing in France; to make Charles a monarch as absolute[31] as any on the continent[32]; to put[33] the estates[34] and the personal liberty of the whole people at the disposal[35] of the crown; to deprive the courts of law[36] of all independent[37] authority[38], even in ordinary[39]

---

[1] hinter einander. [2] machen zu. [3] Graf (Gen.—en). [4] Fähigkeit. [5] herrschsüchtig. [6] Rathgeber. [7] vertrauen auf, and *say*, in whom they most trusted. [8] Mitglied, *n.* [9] Gegenpartei, *f.* [10] abfallen von. [11] eigenthümlich. [12] Groll, *m.* [13] *say*, at all times. [14] bezeichnend für. [15] abtrünniger Mensch. [16] Bestreben. [17] entwerfen. [18] weit umfassend. [19] erdenken. [20] Plan, *m.* [21] in Verwirrung bringen. [22] klug. [23] Verfahren. [24] Gemein, to be used as a Substantive. [25] leiten. [26] vertraut. [27] Briefwechsel, *m.* [28] ausdrucksvoll. [29] durch. [30] Ziel, *n.* [31] unumschränkt. [32] festes Land. [33] stellen. [34] Gut. [35] zur Verfügung. [36] Gerichtshof, *m.* [37] unabhängig. [38] Gewalt. [39] gewöhnlich.

questions[40] of civil right[41] between man and man (mir und dir), and to punish with merciless[42] rigour[43] all who murmured[44] at the acts[45] of the government, or who applied[46] even in the most decent[47] and regular manner, to any tribunal[48] for[49] relief[50] against those acts. — *Macaulay's History of England.*

XXXII. Christian, King of Denmark and Sweden, in Italy.

In the year 1474, under[1] the magistracy of Donato Acciajuoli, a singular visitor[2] arrived at Florence. This was Christian, king of Denmark and Sweden, who was journeying to Rome, for the purpose[3], it was alleged[4], of discharging[5] a vow.[6] He is described by the Florentine historians as[7] of grave[8] aspect[9], with a long and white beard, and although considered as a barbarian, they admit[10] that the qualities of his mind did not derogate from[11] the respectability[12] of his exterior[13] appearance.[14] Having surveyed[15] the town, and paid[16] a ceremonial visit[17] to the magistrates[18], who received their royal visitor with great splendour[19], he requested to be favoured[20] with a sight of the celebrated copy[21] of the Greek Evangelists[22], which had been obtained[23] some

---

[40] Sache. [41] Privatrecht. [42] unbarmherzig. [43] Strenge. [44] murren über. [45] Handlung. [46] sich berufen auf. [47] bescheiden. [48] Tribunal, *n.* [49] *say*, in order to obtain relief. [50] Hülfe.

[1] unter der Magistratur. [2] Gast. [3] in der Absicht. [4] vorgeben. [5] lösen. [6] Gelübde, *n.* [7] *say*, as a man. [8] würdig ernst. [9] Miene, *f.* [10] zugeben. [11] Abbruch thun, with Dat. [12] Würdigkeit. [13] äußer. [14] Ansehen. [15] besichtigen. [16] abstatten. [17] Ehrenbesuch, *m.* [18] Beamte, *m.* [19] Pracht, *f.* [20] *say*, that they might shew him the favour of letting him see. [21] Exemplar, *n.* [22] Evangelien. [23] erhalten.

years before from Constantinople, and of the Pandects[24] of Justinian brought from Amalfi to Pisa, and thence[25] to Florence. His laudable[26] curiosity was accordingly[27] gratified[28], and he expressed his satisfaction[29] by declaring through the medium of[30] his interpreter[31], that these were the real treasures of princes, alluding[32] as was supposed[33], to[34] the conduct of the Duke of Milan[35], who had attempted to dazzle[36] him with the display[37] of that treasure of which he had plundered[38] his subjects, to gratify[39] his vanity and his licentiousness[40]; on which occasion Christian had coldly[41] observed, that accumulation[42] of riches was an object below the attention[43] of a great and magnanimous[44] sovereign. Ammirato attempts to show[45] that this remark[46] is rather specious[47] than just, but the authority[48] of the Roman poet (Hor. lib. ii. Ode 2) is[49] in favour[50] of the Goth.[51] It was a spectacle[52] worthy of admiration[53], says the same historian, to see a king, peaceable[54] and unarmed[55], pass through[56], whose predecessors[57] had not only overthrown[58] the armies of that country, and harassed[59] the kingdoms[60] of France and Spain, but had even broken[61] and overturned[62] the immense[63] fabric[64] of the Roman empire itself. — *Roscoe's Life of Lorenzo de' Medici.*

---

[24] Pandekten. [25] von da. [26] lobenswerth. [27] demgemäß. [28] befriedigen. [29] Freude. [30] durch. [31] Dolmetscher. [32] anspielen. [33] vermuthen. [34] auf. [35] Mailand. [36] blenden. [37] Ausbreitung. [38] berauben. [39] Genüge leisten, with Dat. [40] Ausschweifung, take plural. [41] trocken. [42] Anhäufung. [43] *an object below the attention* is unter der Würde. [44] hochsinnig. [45] zeigen. [46] Bemerkung. [47] *say*, contains more appearance (Schein) than truth. [48] Zeugniß, *n.* [49] sprechen. [50] zu Gunsten. [51] Gothe, *m.* [52] Schauspiel, *n.* [53] bewundernswerth. [54] friedlich. [55] unbewaffnet. [56] durchreisen. [57] Vorfahr, *m.* (Gen.—en). [58] vernichten. [59] beunruhigen. [60] Königreich. [61] erschüttern. [62] stürzen. [63] ungeheuer. [64] Schöpfung.

XXXIII. William, Prince of Orange[1] — the Strength[2] of his Emotions.[3]

William was born with violent[4] passions and quick[5] sensibilities[6]; but the strength of his emotions was not suspected[7] by the world. From[8] the multitude his joy and his grief, his affection[9] and his resentment[10], were hidden by a phlegmatic[11] serenity[12], which made him pass[13] for the most coldblooded[14] of mankind. Those who brought him good news could seldom detect any sign of pleasure. Those who saw him after a defeat[15] looked[16] in vain for[17] any trace of vexation.[18] He praised and reprimanded, rewarded and punished, with the stern[19] tranquillity of a Mohawk chief[20]; but those who knew him well and saw him near were aware[21] that under all this a fierce[22] fire was constantly burning. It was seldom that anger[23] deprived him of power over himself. But when he was really enraged[24] the first outbreak of his passion was terrible. It was indeed scarcely safe to approach him. On these rare occasions, however, as soon as he regained[25] his self-command[26], he made[27] such ample[28] reparation[29] to those whom he had wronged[30] as[31] tempted them to wish[32] that he would go[33] into a fury[34] again. His affection was as impetuous[35] as his wrath.[36] Where he loved, he loved with the whole energy[37] of his strong[38] mind.[39] When death separated him

---

[1] Oranien. [2] Stärke. [3] Gemüthsbewegung. [4] heftig. [5] rasch. [6] Empfindung. [7] *say*, of the strength — the world had no notion; notion Ahnung. [8] vor. [9] Zuneigung. [10] Unwille, *m.* [11] ruhig. [12] Heiterkeit. [13] gelten lassen. [14] kaltblütig. [15] Niederlage. [16] suchen. [17] nach. [18] Verdruß, *m.* [19] streng. [20] Häuptling. [21] allzu wohl wissen. [22] wild. [23] Zorn, *m.* [24] aufbringen. [25] wiedergewinnen. [26] Selbstbeherrschung. [27] geben. [28] reichlich. [29] Entschädigung. [30] Unrecht thun, with Dat. [31] *say*, that it. [32] *say*, to the wish. [33] gerathen. [34] Wuth, *f.*, without Article. [35] ungestüm. [36] Grimm, *m.* [37] Kraft. [38] stark. [39] Gemüth, *n.*

from what he loved, the few who witnessed[40] his agonies[41] trembled for his reason and his life. To a very small circle of intimate friends, on whose fidelity and secrecy[42] he could absolutely[43] depend[44], he was a different man from the reserved[45] and stoical[46] William, whom the world supposed to be destitute[47] of human feeling. He was kind, cordial, open, even convivial[48] and jocose[49], would sit at table many hours, and would bear[50] his full[51] share[52] in[53] festive[54] conversation.

Highest in his favour stood a gentleman of[55] his household[56], named Bentinck, sprung[57] from a noble Batavian[58] race[59], and destined to be the founder[60] of one of the geat patrician[61] houses of England. The fidelity of Bentinck had been tried[62] by no common test.[63] It was while the United[64] Provinces[65] were truggling[66] for existence[67] against the French power[68], that the young prince, on whom all their hopes were fixed, was seized by the smallpox.[69] The disease[70] had been fatal[71] to many members of his family, and at first wore[72], in his case, a peculiarly malignant[73] aspect.[74] The public consternation[75] was great, the streets of the Hague[76] were covered from daybreak[77] to sunset[78] by persons anxiously asking how his highness[79] was.[80] At length his complaint[81] took a favourable turn.[82] His escape[83] was

---

[40] Zeuge ſein von. [41] Seelenſchmerz, *m.*, sing. [42] Verſchwiegenheit. [43] unbeſchränkt. [44] ſich verlaſſen. [45] verſchloſſen. [46] kalt. [47] ermangeln. [48] luſtig. [49] ſpaßhaft. [50] beitragen. [51] voll. [52] Maaß, *n.* [53] zu. [54] fröhlich. [55] von. [56] Haushalt. [57] entſpringen. [58] bataviſch. [59] Geſchlecht, *n.* [60] Gründer. [61] patriziſch. [62] verſuchen, bewähren. [63] Probe. [64] vereinigt. [65] Provinz. [66] ſtreiten. [67] Daſein, with the Pron. Poss. [68] Macht. [69] Pocke, *f.*, take plural. [70] Krankheit. [71] tödtlich. [72] zeigen. [73] bösartig. [74] Character. [75] allgemeine Beſtürzung. [76] Haag, *m.* [77] Tagesanbruch. [78] Sonnenuntergang. [79] Hoheit. [80] ſich befinden. [81] Uebel. [82] Wendung. [83] Rettung.

attributed[84] partly to his own singular equanimity[85], partly to the intrepid[86] and indefatigable friendship of Bentinck. From the hands of Bentinck alone William took food and medicine.[87] By Bentinck alone William was lifted[88] from[89] his bed, and laid down in it. "Wheter Bentinck slept or not while I was ill," said William to Temple, with great tenderness[90], "I know not. But this I know, that, through[91] sixteen days and nights, I never once called for[92] anything but[93] that Bentinck was instantly at[94] my side." Before the faithful servant had entirely performed[95] his hard task[96], he himself caught[97] the contagion. Still, however, he bore up[98] against drowsiness[99] and fever till his master was pronounced[100] convalescent.[101] Then, at length, Bentinck asked[102] leave[103] to go home; it was time, for his limbs would no longer support him. He was in great danger, but recovered[104], and, as soon as he left his bed, hastened[105] to the army, where, during many sharp campaigns, he was found, as he had been in peril of a different kind, close to[106] William's side. Such was the origin[107] of a friendship as warm and pure as any that ancient or modern history records.[108] — *Macaulay's History of England.*

XXXIV. Generosity[1] of Louis[2] the Fourteenth.

As soon as the news that the Queen of England was on the French coast had been brought to Versailles,

---

[84] zuſchreiben. [85] Gleichmüthigkeit. [86] unerſchrocken. [87] Arzenei. [88] heben. [89] aus. [90] Zärtlichkeit. [91] hindurch and put it after *nights*. [92] verlangen. [93] ohne. [94] an. [95] vollenden. [96] Arbeit. [97] angeſteckt werden to catch the contagion. [98] ſich ſtemmen. [99] Schläfrigkeit. [100] erklären als. [101] faſt geſund. [102] bitten um. [103] Urlaub, *m.* [104] geneſen. [105] eilen. [106] dicht an. [107] Urſprung. [108] erwähnen.

[1] Großmuth, *f.* [2] Ludwig.

a palace[3] was prepared[4] for her reception.[5] Carriages and troops of guards were despatched to await[6] her orders. Workmen[7] were employed to mend[8] the Calais road that her journey might be easy. Lauzun was not only assured that his past offences[9] were forgiven for her sake, but was honoured[10] with a friendly letter in the hand-writing of Louis. Mary was on the road towards[11] the French court, when news came, that her husband had, after a rough[12] voyage, landed safe at the little village of Ambleteuse. Persons of high rank were instantly despatched from Versailles to greet[13] and escort[14] him. Meanwhile Louis, attended by his family and his nobility, went forth[15] in state[16] to receive the exiled[17] queen. Before his gorgeous[18] coach went the Swiss[19] halberdiers.[20] On each side of it and behind it rode the body-guards[21] with cimbals[22] clashing[23] and trumpets[24] pealing.[25]

After him, in a hundred carriages, each drawn by six horses, came the most splendid aristocray[26] of Europe, all[27] feathers, ribands, jewels, and embroidery.[28] Before the procession[29] had gone far, it was announced that Mary was approaching. Louis alighted[30], and advanced[31] on foot to meet her. She broke forth[32] into passionate expressions of gratitude. "Madam," said her host, "it is but a melancholy service that I am rendering[33] you to day. I hope that I may be able hereafter to render you services greater and more pleasing." He

[3]Palaſt, *m.* [4]einrichten. [5]Empfang. [6]erwarten. [7]Arbeiter. [8]ausbeſſern. [9]Vergebung. [10]beehren. [11]nach. [12]ſtürmiſch. [13]begrüßen. [14]begleiten. [15]ausziehen. [16]in vollem Staat, *m.* [17]verbannt. [18]prächtig. [19]Schweizer. [20]Hellebardier, *m.* (*pl.*—e). [21]Leibgarde, *f.* [22]Zimbel, *f.* [23]klingen. [24]Trompete, *f.* [25]ſchmettern. [26]Adel, *m.* [27]ganz in. [28]Goldſtickerei. [29]Zug. [30]ausſteigen. [31]to advance to meet entgegen gehen, with Dat. [32]ſich ergießen. [33]leiſten.

embraced the little Prince of Wales, and made the queen seat herself in the state coach on[34] the right hand. The cavalcade[35] then turned towards St. Germains. At St. Germains, on the verge[36] of a forest swarming[37] with beasts of chase[38], and on the brow[39] of a hill which looks down[40] on the windings[41] of the Seine, Francis[42] the first had built a castle, and Henry[43] the fourth had constructed[44] a noble terrace.[45]

Of the residences[46] of the French kings none was built in a more salubrious air or commanded[47] a fairer prospect.[48] The huge[49] size[50] and venerable[51] age of the trees, the beauty of the gardens, the abundance[52] of the springs[53], were widely famed. Louis the Fourteenth had been born there, had, when a young man, held his court there, had added several stately[54] pavilions[55] to the mansion of Francis, and had completed[56] the terrace of Henry. Soon, however, the magnificent[57] king conceived[58] an inexplicable disgust[59] for[60] his birthplace. He quitted St. Germains[61] for Versailles, and expended[62] sums almost fabulous[63] in the vain attempt to create a paradise[64] on a spot[65] singularly sterile[66] and unwholesome, all[67] sand or mud[68], without wood[69], without water, and without game.[70] St. Germains had now been selected[71] to be the abode[72] of the royal family of England. Sumptuous[73] furniture[74]

---

[34]zur Rechten. [35]Aufzug zu Pferde. [36]Saum, *m.* [37]ſchwärmen von. [38]Jagdthier, *n.* [39]Gipfel, *m.* [40]herabſehen. [41]Krümmung. [42]Franz. [43]Heinrich. [44]aufführen. [45]Terraſſe, *f.* [46]Hoffitz. [47]beherrſchen. [48]Ausſicht. [49]gewaltig. [50]Umfang. [51]ehrwürdig. [52]Fülle. [53]Springbrunnen, *m.* [54]ſtattlich. [55]Luſthaus. [56]vollenden. [57]prachtliebend. [58]erfüllt werden von. [59]Ekel, *m.* [60]gegen. [61]*add*, and transferred his residence to; verſetzen to transfer. [62]verſchwenden. [63]fabelhaft. [64]Paradies, *n.* [65]Ort, *m.* [66]unfruchtbar. [67]ganz und gar. [68]Schmutz, *m.* [69]Waldung. [70]Wild. [71]auserſehen. [72]Aufenthalt. [73]koſtbar. [74]Hausgeräth, *n.*

had been hastily[75] sent in. The nursery[76] of the Prince of Wales had been carefully[77] furnished[78] with everything that an infant could require. One of the attendants[79] presented[80] to the queen the key of a superb[81] casket[82] which stood in her apartment.[83] She opened the casket, and found in it six thousand pistoles.

On the following day James arrived at St. Germains. Louis was already there to welcome[84] him. The unfortunate exile[85] bowed[86] so low[87] that it seemed as if he was about to embrace the knees of his protector. Louis raised[88] him, and embraced him with brotherly tenderness. The two kings then entered the queen's room. "Here is a gentleman," said Louis to Mary, "whom you will be glad[89] to see." Then, after entreating[90] his guests to visit him next day at Versailles, and to let him have the pleasure of showing them his buildings, pictures, and plantations[91], took the unceremonious[92] leave of an old friend.

In a few hours the royal pair were informed[93], that as long as they would do[94] the king the favour to accept of[95] his hospitality[96], forty-five thousand pounds sterling a-year would be paid them from[97] his treasury.[98] Ten thousand pounds sterling were sent for outfit.[99] The liberality[100] of Louis, however, was much less rare and admirable than the exquisite[101] delicacy[102] with which he laboured[103] to soothe[104] the feelings of his guests,

---

[75]in der Eile. [76]Kinderſtube. [77]ſorgfältig. [78]verzieren. [79]Hofdiener. [80]einhändigen. [81]prächtig. [82]Käſtchen. [83]Gemach, *n.* [84]bewillkommen. [85]Verbannt. [86]ſich verneigen. [87]tief. [88]aufheben. [89]express by gern. [90]erſuchen. [91]Pflanzung. [92]*say*, without ceremony—leave, ohne Umſtände Abſchied. [93]benachrichtigen. [94]erzeigen. [95]annehmen. [96]Gaſtfreundſchaft. [97]aus. [98]Schatzkammer, *f.* [99]Einrichtung, with the Pron. Possessive. [100]Freigebigkeit. [1]ausnehmend. [2]Zartheit. [3]ſich bemühen. [4]beſänftigen.

and to lighten the almost intolerable[105] weight of the obligations[106] which he laid upon[107] them. He who had hitherto[108], on[109] all questions of[110] precedence[111], been sensitive[112], litigious[113], insolent[114], who had been more than once ready[115] to plunge Europe into war rather than concede[116] the most frivolous[117] point of etiquette[118], was now punctilious[119], indeed[120], but punctilious for[121] his unfortunate friends against himself. He gave orders that Mary should receive all the marks[122] of respect that had ever been paid[123] to his own deceased[124] wife.[125]

A question was raised, whether the princes of[126] the house of Bourbon were entitled[127] to be indulged with[128] chairs in the presence of the queen. Such trifles[129] were serious matters[130] at[131] the old court of France. There were[132] precedents[133] on[134] both sides; but Louis decided the point against his own blood. Some ladies of illustrious[135] rank omitted the ceremony[136] of kissing the hem[137] of Mary's robe.[138] Louis remarked the omission, and noticed it in[139] such a voice and with such a look that the whole peerage[140] was ever after ready to kiss her shoe.[141]

When Esther, just written by Racine, was acted[142] at Saint Cyr, Mary had the seat of honour.[143] James was at her right hand. Louis modestly placed himself

---

[5]unerträglich. [6]Verpflichtung. [7]auflegen, with Dat. [8]bisher. [9]bei. [10]in Rückſicht auf. [11]Vortritt, with Def. Article. [12]empfindlich. [13]ſtreitſüchtig. [14]trotzig. [15]bereit. [16]nachgeben, Inf. [17]unbedeutend. [18]Hoffitte, *f.* [19]ängſtlich. [20]in Wahrheit. [21]zum Vortheil. [22]Zeichen, *n.* [23]erweiſen. [24]verſtorben. [25]Gattin. [26]aus. [27]ein Recht haben, and use Subj. [28]*say*, to receive. [29]Kleinigkeit. [30]Sache, *f.* [31]an. [32]es findet ſich. [33]früheres Beiſpiel. [34]für. [35]höchſt. [36]Förmlichkeit. [37]Saum, *m.* [38]Gewand, *n.* [39]mit. [40]Adel, *m.* [41]Schuh, *m.* [42]aufführen. [43]Ehrenſitz.

on her left. Nay, he was well pleased[144], that, in his own palace, an outcast[145] living on[146] his bounty[147] should assume[148] the title of[149] king of France, quarter[150] the lilies[151] with the English lions, and should, as king of France, dress[152] in violett[153] on days of court mourning.[154] — *Macaulay's History of England.*

XXXV.

My dear Friend,

We have been so wishing to see you: Can you and Ch. give us the real pleasure of your company to dinner at 6 o'clock on Saturday next? Pray come if you possibly can; if not to dinner, at least to tea at 8, with Ch. of course: but dinner is far the best arrangement. We had not a single day this week except Saturday, and feared that might not suit you; otherwise we have been wishing for a day for some time.

Many thanks for Mrs. F's most welcome note, I have received so many proofs of her affection that this one is gratifying not surprizing: very soon I hope to answer it and assure her how warmly I reciprocate what she feels for me. Indeed her thus residing abroad occasions me true grief.

Do not disappoint us unless you have some pleasanter engagement: if you have, could you give us Monday or Saturday next week? —

With Mamma's and all our cordial remembrances to you and Ch., pray believe me to remain

Yours truly

Monday 30th. C. G. R.

---

[144] es wohl zufrieden ſein. [145] Verwieſen, treated as Subst. [146] von. [147] Mildthätigkeit. [148] ſich anmaßen. [149] *say*, of a. [150] im Wappen führen. [151] Lilie, *f.* [152] ſich kleiden. [153] veilchenblau. [154] Hoftrauer, *f.*

XXXVI.

My dear Friend,

How glad I am to be able to congratulate you on Ch's convalescence; you do not tell me of G's health, so I hope that is not making you anxious. Your poor little boy must have suffered a good deal; but perhaps this attack may clear off any illness that was hanging about him; and leave him in reality better than it found him. Perhaps Dr. G's return was all the more welcome from the troubles you were undergoing: pray give him our united compliments, and to Ch. our affectionate love, accepting the same for yourself.

You are right in conjecturing that I do not bathe: it would I think be running too great a risk. M. appears gaining all we could wish. He enjoys his baths and looks much better than has latterly been the case.

To-morrow week we anticipate returning to town. By that time I think it not improbable that William will have left for his holyday: I do not know where he thinks of spending it.

Hoping my next news from you, whether conveyed by letter or by word of mouth, may be favourable: I remain, My dear friend

Your sincere

21th August 1850. C. G. R.

XXXVII.

My dear Friend,

I certainly need not have been surprized at your kind remembrance of my birthday; yet your pretty present, all the more valuable for being of your own making, did for the moment surprize as well as please me.

Pray accept for it my affectionate thanks; with the assurance that to-day, which makes me 26, beholds you as pre-eminent amongst my friends as in certain pleasant days of old.

But why do I not rather call and tell you all this? Just at present is my unfavourable walking season on account of cold &c.; moreover, I have not been very well lately. These "pains and penalties" have left me not very brisk or robust; yet before so very long I do hope to manage a visit in....

I was sorry to hear from your maid that Ch. is not well; and proportionately glad that G. is better. Pray give our love to all the little people.

Mr. C. came here the other evening, and thanked William for having introduced him to your friend, whose kindness he mentioned as regards his English version of the Psalms. I hope you like that Mr. C.: he is a great favourite with us.

Shall I inform you that a little tale of my!!! composition came out lately in an American art paper for which William writes, named the Crayon? — Shall I also give you a hint that if you deign to show the slightest curiosity on the subject, I shall be most happy to submit it to your criticism?

What a gossip! Pray remember us with utmost cordiality to Dr. F., — (us means especially Mamma and myself, Maria being not at home) — and with our genuine love to yourself believe me ever

Your very affectionate friend

6th December 1856. C. G. R.

XXXVIII. A Mother's Revenge.

As we passed through the streets of Turan, we heard loud screams, as of a person frantic with rage and grief; which drew our attention towards a miserable hovel, whence we perceived a woman issuing hastily, with a cradle containing an infant. Having placed the child upon the area before her dwelling, she as quickly ran back again. We then perceived her beating something violently, all the while filling the air with the most piercing shrieks. Running to see what was the cause of her cries, we observed an enormous serpent, which she had found near her infant, and had completely despatched before our arrival. Never were maternal feelings more strikingly pourtrayed than in the countenance of this woman. Not satisfied with having killed the animal, she continued her blows until she had reduced it to atoms, unheeding any thing that was said to her, and only abstracting her attention from its mangled body to cast, occasionally, a wild and momentary glance towards her child. *Clark's Travels in Syria.*

XXXIX. On History of Manners.

Lord Monboddo. The history of manners is the most valuable. I never set a value on any other history.

Dr. Johnson. Nor I; and therefore I esteem biography, as giving us what comes near to ourselves, what we can turn to use.

Boswell. But in the course of general history we find manners. In wars we see the dispositions of people, their degrees of humanity, and other particulars.

Dr. Johnson. Yes; but then you must take all the facts to get this, and it is but a little you get.

Lord Monboddo. And it is that little which makes history valuable. *Boswell's Life of Johnson.*

XL. A Brother Philosopher.

Retiring home one evening, Sir Humphry Davy observed an ordinary man showing the moon and a planet through a telescope placed upon the pavement. He went up and paid his pence for a look. But no such thing would they permit. "That's Sir Humphry", ran among the people; and the exhibitor, returning his money, said with an important air which exceedingly delighted him, that he could not think of taking any thing from a brother philosopher.

Lord Brougham. Lives of Philosophers.

XLI. The Queen's Thanks to the Army.

Saturday Morning, September 15. 1855.

Lord Panmure has addressed the following telegraphic despatch to General Simpson:

"War Department, Sept. 12.— The Queen has received with deep emotion the welcome intelligence of the fall of Sebastopol. Penetrated with profound gratitude to the Almighty, who has vouchsafed this triumph to the Allied Army, her Majesty has commanded me to express to yourself, and, through you, to the army, the pride with wich she regards this fresh instance of their heroism. The Queen congratulates her troops on the triumphant issue of this protracted siege, and thanks them for the cheerfulness and fortitude with which they have encountered its toils, and the valour which has led to its termination. The Queen deeply laments that this success is not without its alloy in the heavy losses which have been sustained; and while she rejoices in the victory,

[illegible] sympathizes with the noble sufferers [illegible] cause. You will be pleased to communicate [illegible] in her Majesty's name, upon the [illegible] result of the assault on the Malakoff, which proves the [illegible] as well as indomitable courage of our brave allies. *Panmure.*

[illegible] The Occupations of Alexander Severus.

The [illegible] account of the ordinary occupations exhibits a [illegible] picture of an accomplished emperor, [illegible] with some allowance for the difference of manners, [illegible] will [illegible] for imitation of modern princes. [illegible] the first moments of the day were [illegible] to private devotion, and his domestic chapel was filled with the images of those heroes who, by improving or enjoying human life, had deserved the grateful [illegible] of posterity. But as he deemed the service of mankind the most acceptable worship of the gods, the greatest part of his morning hours was employed in his council, where he discussed public affairs, and determined private causes, with a patience and discretion above his years. The fatigues of business were relieved by the charms of literature; and a portion of time was always set apart for his favourite studies of poetry, history, and philosophy. The works of Virgil and Horace, the republics of Plato and Cicero, formed his taste, enlarged his understanding, and gave him the noblest ideas of men and government. The exercises of the body succeeded to those of the mind; and Alexander, who was tall, active, and robust, surpassed most of his equals in the gymnastic arts. Refreshed by the use of the bath, and a slight dinner, he resumed with new vigour the business of the day; and till the hour of supper, the

principal meal of the Romans, he was attended by his secretaries, with whom he read and answered the multitude of letters, memorials, and petitions, that must have been addressed to the master of the greatest part of the world. His table was served with the most frugal simplicity; and whenever he was at liberty to consult his own inclination, the company consisted of a few select friends, men of learning and virtue, amongst whom Ulpian was constantly invited. Their conversation was familiar and instructive; and the pauses were occasionally enlivened by the recital of some pleasing composition, which supplied the place of the dancers, comedians, and even gladiators, so frequently summoned to the tables of the rich and luxurious Romans. The dress of Alexander was plain and modest; his demeanour courteous and affable; at the proper hours his palace was opened to all his subjects, but the voice of a crier was heard, as in the Eleusinian mysteries, pronouncing the same salutary admonition: "Let none enter these holy walls, unless he is conscious of a pure and innocent mind." *Gibbon.*

XLIII. On Howard.

I cannot name this gentleman without remarking that his labours and writings have done much to open the eyes and hearts of mankind. He has visited all Europe —not to survey the sumptuousness of palaces or the stateliness of temples; not to make accurate measurements of the remains of ancient grandeur; or to form a scale (Stufenleiter, *f.*) of the curiosity of modern art; not to collect medals, or collate manuscripts — but to dive into the depths of dungeons; to plunge into the infections of hospitals; to survey the mansions of sorrow and pa to take the gauge and dimensions of misery, depre

her Majesty deeply sympathises with the noble sufferers in their country's cause. You will be pleased to congratulate General Pelissier, in her Majesty's name, upon the brilliant result of the assault on the Malakoff, which proves the irresistible force as well as indomitable courage of our brave Allies. *Panmure.*

XLII. The Occupation of Alexander Severus.

The simple journal of his ordinary occupations exhibits a pleasing picture of an accomplished emperor, and, with some allowance for the difference of manners, might well deserve the imitation of modern princes. Alexander rose early; the first moments of the day were consecrated to private devotion, and his domestic chapel was filled with the images of those heroes who, by improving or reforming human life, had deserved the grateful reverence of posterity. But as he deemed the service of mankind the most acceptable worship of the gods, the greatest part of his morning hours was employed in his council, where he discussed public affairs, and determined private causes, with a patience and discretion above his years. The dryness of business was relieved by the charms of literature; and a portion of time was always set apart for his favourite studies of poetry, history, and philosophy. The works of Virgil and Horace, the republics of Plato and Cicero, formed his taste, enlarged his understanding, and gave him the noblest ideas of men and government. The exercises of the body succeeded to those of the mind; and Alexander, who was tall, active, and robust, surpassed most of his equals in the gymnastic arts. Refreshed by the use of the bath, and a slight dinner, he resumed with new vigour the business of the day; and till the hour of supper, the

principal meal of the [illegible] was attended by his secretaries, with whom he read and answered the multitude of letters, memorials, and petitions that must have been addressed to the master of the greatest part of the world. His table was served with the most frugal simplicity; and whenever he was at liberty to indulge his own inclination, the remainder of a few hours was consecrated to [illegible] friends, men of learning and virtue, most of whom had been his companions in the [illegible]. Their conversation was familiar and instructive; and the pleasures were sometimes enlivened by the recital of some ludicrous adventure. While Rome supplied the games of the [illegible], Cornelius and other gladiators, as formerly exhibited to the people of the rich and luxurious [illegible]. The house of [illegible] was plain and modest; its master was courteous and affable: at the [illegible] he [illegible] was open to all his subjects, [illegible] and in the [illegible] he [illegible] admonished: [illegible] is conscious of a life and [illegible]

[illegible]

I [illegible] his [illegible] eyes and [illegible] — [illegible] sometimes [illegible] of the [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] that [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible]

and countries; to remember the forgotten, to attend to the neglected, to visit the forsaken, and to compare and collate the distresses of all men in all countries. His plan is original; and it is as full of genius as it is of humanity. It was a voyage of discovery, a circumnavigation of charity. Already the benefit of his labour is felt more or less in every country: I hope he will anticipate his final reward, by seeing all its effects fully realized in his own. He will receive not by retail, but in gross, the reward of those who visit the prisoner; and he has so forestalled and monopolized this branch of charity, that there will be, I trust, little room to merit by such acts of benevolence hereafter. *Burke.*

XLIV. Atahuallpa, the Last of the Incas.

When some five or six thousand of his people had entered the place, Atahuallpa halted, and turning round with an inquiring look, demanded "Where are the strangers?" At this moment Vicente de Valverde, a Dominican friar, Pizarro's Chaplain, and afterwards bishop of Cuzco, came forward with his breviary, or as other accounts say, a Bible, in one hand and a crucifix in the other, and approaching the Inca, told him that he came by order of his commander to expound to him the doctrines of the true faith, for which purpose the Spaniards had come from a great distance to his country. The friar then explained, as clearly as he could, the mysterious doctrine of his religion, and concluded with beseeching the Peruvian monarch to abjure the errors of his own faith, to embrace that of the Christians now proffered to him, and to acknowledge himself a tributary of the Emperor Charles the Fifth, who, in that event, would aid and protect him as his loyal vassal. Whether Ata-

huallpa possessed himself of every link in the curious chain of argument by which the monk connected Pizarro with Saint Peter, may be doubted. But there is no doubt, he perfectly comprehended that the drift of the discourse was to persuade him to resign his sceptre and acknowledge the supremacy of another. The eyes of the Indian monarch flashed fire, and his dark brow grew darker as he replied, "I will be no man's tributary! I am greater than any prince upon earth. Your emperor may be a great prince; I do not doubt it when I see that he has sent his subjects so far across the waters; and I am willing to hold him as a brother. He then demanded of Valverde, by what authority he had said these things. The friar pointed to the book which he held as his authority. Atahuallpa taking it, turned over the pages a moment: then, as the insult he had received probably flashed across his mind, he threw it down with vehemence, and exclaimed, "Tell your comrades that they shall give me an account of their doings in my land. I will not go from here till they have made me full satisfaction for all the wrongs they have committed."

Prescott.

XLV. Richard Duke of Gloucester.

Richard assumed the title of protector of the king and kingdom; a station for which the analogy of the constitution in a hereditary monarchy seemed to designate him. It seemed probable that Hastings and Stanley, the friends of Edward IV., began to show misgivings at the designs of Richard, especially after he had compelled the queen to surrender the duke of York to him, under the specious colour of lodging him with his elde brother in the royal palace of the Tower. On the 13

and contempt; to remember the forgotten, to attend to the neglected, to visit the forsaken, and to compare and collate the distresses of all men in all countries. His plan is original; and it is as full of genius as it is of humanity. It was a voyage of discovery, a circumnavigation of charity. Already the benefit of his labour is felt more or less in every country: I hope he will anticipate his final reward, by seeing all its effects fully realized in his own. He will receive not by retail, but in gross, the reward of those who visit the prisoner; and he has so forestalled and monopolized this branch of charity, that there will be, I trust, little room to merit by such acts of benevolence hereafter. *Burke.*

XLIV. Atahuallpa, the Last of the Incas.

When some five or six thousand of his people had entered the place, Atahuallpa halted, and turning round with an enquiring look, demanded "Where are the strangers? "At this moment Vicente de Valverde, a Dominican friar, Pizarro's Chaplain, and afterwards bishop of Cuzco, came forward with his breviary, or as other accounts say, a Bible, in one hand and a crucifix in the other, and approaching the Inca, told him that he came by order of his commander to expound to him the doctrines of the true faith, for which purpose the Spaniards had come from a great distance to his country. The friar then explained, as clearly as he could, the mysterious doctrine of his religion, and concluded with beseeching the Peruvian monarch to abjure the errors of his own faith, to embrace that of the Christians now proffered to him, and to acknowledge himself a tributary of the Emperor Charles the Fifth, who, in that event, would aid and protect him as his loyal vassal. Whether Ata-

huallpa possessed himself of every link in the curious chain of argument by which the monk connected Pizarro with Saint Peter, may be doubted. But there is no doubt, he perfectly comprehended that the drift of the discourse was to persuade him to resign his sceptre and acknowledge the supremacy of another. The eyes of the Indian monarch flashed fire, and his dark brow grew darker as he replied, "I will be no man's tributary! I am greater than any prince upon earth. Your emperor may be a great prince; I do not doubt it when I see that he has sent his subjects so far across the waters; and I am willing to hold him as a brother. He then demanded of Valverde, by what authority he had said these things. The friar pointed to the book which he held as his authority. Atahuallpa taking it, turned over the pages a moment: then, as the insult he had received probably flashed across his mind, he threw it down with vehemence, and exclaimed, "Tell your comrades that they shall give me an account of their doings in my land. I will not go from here till they have made me full satisfaction for all the wrongs they have committed."

Prescott.

XLV. Richard Duke of Gloucester.

Richard assumed the title of protector of the king and kingdom; a station for which the analogy of the constitution in a hereditary monarchy seemed to designate him. It seemed probable that Hastings and Stanley, the friends of Edward IV., began to show misgivings at the designs of Richard, especially after he had compelled the queen to surrender the duke of York to him, under the specious colour of lodging him with his elder brother in the royal palace of the Tower. On the 13th

her Majesty deeply sympathises with the noble sufferers in their country's cause. You will be pleased to congratulate General Pelissier, in her Majesty's name, upon the brilliant result of the assault on the Malakoff, which proves the irresistible force as well as indomitable courage of our brave Allies. *Panmure.*

XLII. The Occupation of Alexander Severus.

The simple journal of his ordinary occupations exhibits a pleasing picture of an accomplished emperor, and, with some allowance for the difference of manners, might well deserve the imitation of modern princes. Alexander rose early; the first moments of the day were consecrated to private devotion, and his domestic chapel was filled with the images of those heroes who, by improving or reforming human life, had deserved the grateful reverence of posterity. But as he deemed the service of mankind the most acceptable worship of the gods, the greatest part of his morning hours was employed in his council, where he discussed public affairs, and determined private causes, with a patience and discretion above his years. The dryness of business was relieved by the charms of literature; and a portion of time was always set apart for his favourite studies of poetry, history, and philosophy. The works of Virgil and Horace, the republics of Plato and Cicero, formed his taste, enlarged his understanding, and gave him the noblest ideas of men and government. The exercises of the body succeeded to those of the mind; and Alexander, who was tall, active, and robust, surpassed most of his equals in the gymnastic arts. Refreshed by the use of the bath, and a slight dinner, he resumed with new vigour the business of the day; and till the hour of supper, the

principal meal of the Romans, he was attended by his secretaries, with whom he read and answered the multitude of letters, memorials, and petitions, that must have been addressed to the master of the greatest part of the world. His table was served with the most frugal simplicity; and whenever he was at liberty to consult his own inclination, the company consisted of a few select friends, men of learning and virtue, amongst whom Ulpian was constantly invited. Their conversation was familiar and instructive; and the pauses were occasionally enlivened by the recital of some pleasing composition, which supplied the place of the dancers, comedians, and even gladiators, so frequently summoned to the tables of the rich and luxurious Romans. The dress of Alexander was plain and modest; his demeanour courteous and affable; at the proper hours his palace was opened to all his subjects, but the voice of a crier was heard, as in the Eleusinian mysteries, pronouncing the same salutary admonition: "Let none enter these holy walls, unless he is conscious of a pure and innocent mind." *Gibbon.*

XLIII. On Howard.

I cannot name this gentleman without remarking that his labours and writings have done much to open the eyes and hearts of mankind. He has visited all Europe — not to survey the sumptuousness of palaces or the stateliness of temples; not to make accurate measurements of the remains of ancient grandeur; or to form a scale (Stufenleiter, *f.*) of the curiosity of modern art; not to collect medals, or collate manuscripts — but to dive into the depths of dungeons; to plunge into the infections of hospitals; to survey the mansions of sorrow and pain; to take the gauge and dimensions of misery, depression,

her Majesty deeply sympathises with the noble sufferers in their country's cause. You will be pleased to congratulate General Pelissier, in her Majesty's name, upon the brilliant result of the assault on the Malakoff, which proves the irresistible force as well as indomitable courage of our brave Allies. *Panmure.*

XLII. The Occupation of Alexander Severus.

The simple journal of his ordinary occupations exhibits a pleasing picture of an accomplished emperor, and, with some allowance for the difference of manners, might well deserve the imitation of modern princes. Alexander rose early; the first moments of the day were consecrated to private devotion, and his domestic chapel was filled with the images of those heroes who, by improving or reforming human life, had deserved the grateful reverence of posterity. But as he deemed the service of mankind the most acceptable worship of the gods, the greatest part of his morning hours was employed in his council, where he discussed public affairs, and determined private causes, with a patience and discretion above his years. The dryness of business was relieved by the charms of literature; and a portion of time was always set apart for his favourite studies of poetry, history, and philosophy. The works of Virgil and Horace, the republics of Plato and Cicero, formed his taste, enlarged his understanding, and gave him the noblest ideas of men and government. The exercises of the body succeeded to those of the mind; and Alexander, who was tall, active, and robust, surpassed most of his equals in the gymnastic arts. Refreshed by the use of the bath, and a slight dinner, he resumed with new vigour the business of the day; and till the hour of supper, the

principal meal of the Romans, he was attended by his secretaries, with whom he read and answered the multitude of letters, memorials, and petitions, that must have been addressed to the master of the greatest part of the world. His table was served with the most frugal simplicity; and whenever he was at liberty to consult his own inclination, the company consisted of a few select friends, men of learning and virtue, amongst whom Ulpian was constantly invited. Their conversation was familiar and instructive; and the pauses were occasionally enlivened by the recital of some pleasing composition, which supplied the place of the dancers, comedians, and even gladiators, so frequently summoned to the tables of the rich and luxurious Romans. The dress of Alexander was plain and modest; his demeanour courteous and affable; at the proper hours his palace was opened to all his subjects, but the voice of a crier was heard, as in the Eleusinian mysteries, pronouncing the same salutary admonition: "Let none enter these holy walls, unless he is conscious of a pure and innocent mind." *Gibbon.*

XLIII. On Howard.

I cannot name this gentleman without remarking that his labours and writings have done much to open the eyes and hearts of mankind. He has visited all Europe — not to survey the sumptuousness of palaces or the stateliness of temples; not to make accurate measurements of the remains of ancient grandeur; or to form a scale (Stufenleiter, *f.*) of the curiosity of modern art; not to collect medals, or collate manuscripts — but to dive into the depths of dungeons; to plunge into the infections of hospitals; to survey the mansions of sorrow and pain; to take the gauge and dimensions of misery, depression,

her Majesty deeply sympathises with the noble sufferers in their country's cause. You will be pleased to congratulate General Pelissier, in her Majesty's name, upon the brilliant result of the assault on the Malakoff, which proves the irresistible force as well as indomitable courage of our brave Allies. *Panmure.*

XLII. The Occupation of Alexander Severus.

The simple journal of his ordinary occupations exhibits a pleasing picture of an accomplished emperor, and, with some allowance for the difference of manners, might well deserve the imitation of modern princes. Alexander rose early; the first moments of the day were consecrated to private devotion, and his domestic chapel was filled with the images of those heroes who, by improving or reforming human life, had deserved the grateful reverence of posterity. But as he deemed the service of mankind the most acceptable worship of the gods, the greatest part of his morning hours was employed in his council, where he discussed public affairs, and determined private causes, with a patience and discretion above his years. The dryness of business was relieved by the charms of literature; and a portion of time was always set apart for his favourite studies of poetry, history, and philosophy. The works of Virgil and Horace, the republics of Plato and Cicero, formed his taste, enlarged his understanding, and gave him the noblest ideas of men and government. The exercises of the body succeeded to those of the mind; and Alexander, who was tall, active, and robust, surpassed most of his equals in the gymnastic arts. Refreshed by the use of the bath, and a slight dinner, he resumed with new vigour the business of the day; and till the hour of supper, the

principal meal of the Romans, he was attended by his secretaries, with whom he read and answered the multitude of letters, memorials, and petitions, that must have been addressed to the master of the greatest part of the world. His table was served with the most frugal simplicity; and whenever he was at liberty to consult his own inclination, the company consisted of a few select friends, men of learning and virtue, amongst whom Ulpian was constantly invited. Their conversation was familiar and instructive; and the pauses were occasionally enlivened by the recital of some pleasing composition, which supplied the place of the dancers, comedians, and even gladiators, so frequently summoned to the tables of the rich and luxurious Romans. The dress of Alexander was plain and modest; his demeanour courteous and affable; at the proper hours his palace was opened to all his subjects, but the voice of a crier was heard, as in the Eleusinian mysteries, pronouncing the same salutary admonition: "Let none enter these holy walls, unless he is conscious of a pure and innocent mind." *Gibbon.*

XLIII. On Howard.

I cannot name this gentleman without remarking that his labours and writings have done much to open the eyes and hearts of mankind. He has visited all Europe — not to survey the sumptuousness of palaces or the stateliness of temples; not to make accurate measurements of the remains of ancient grandeur; or to form a scale (Stufenleiter, *f.*) of the curiosity of modern art; not to collect medals, or collate manuscripts — but to dive into the depths of dungeons; to plunge into the infections of hospitals; to survey the mansions of sorrow and pain; to take the gauge and dimensions of misery, depression,

her Majesty deeply sympathises with the noble sufferers in their country's cause. You will be pleased to congratulate General Pelissier, in her Majesty's name, upon the brilliant result of the assault on the Malakoff, which proves the irresistible force as well as indomitable courage of our brave Allies. *Panmure.*

XLII. The Occupation of Alexander Severus.

The simple journal of his ordinary occupations exhibits a pleasing picture of an accomplished emperor, and, with some allowance for the difference of manners, might well deserve the imitation of modern princes. Alexander rose early; the first moments of the day were consecrated to private devotion, and his domestic chapel was filled with the images of those heroes who, by improving or reforming human life, had deserved the grateful reverence of posterity. But as he deemed the service of mankind the most acceptable worship of the gods, the greatest part of his morning hours was employed in his council, where he discussed public affairs, and determined private causes, with a patience and discretion above his years. The dryness of business was relieved by the charms of literature; and a portion of time was always set apart for his favourite studies of poetry, history, and philosophy. The works of Virgil and Horace, the republics of Plato and Cicero, formed his taste, enlarged his understanding, and gave him the noblest ideas of men and government. The exercises of the body succeeded to those of the mind; and Alexander, who was tall, active, and robust, surpassed most of his equals in the gymnastic arts. Refreshed by the use of the bath, and a slight dinner, he resumed with new vigour the business of the day; and till the hour of supper, the

principal meal of the Romans, he was attended by his secretaries, with whom he read and answered the multitude of letters, memorials, and petitions, that must have been addressed to the master of the greatest part of the world. His table was served with the most frugal simplicity; and whenever he was at liberty to consult his own inclination, the company consisted of a few select friends, men of learning and virtue, amongst whom Ulpian was constantly invited. Their conversation was familiar and instructive; and the pauses were occasionally enlivened by the recital of some pleasing composition, which supplied the place of the dancers, comedians, and even gladiators, so frequently summoned to the tables of the rich and luxurious Romans. The dress of Alexander was plain and modest; his demeanour courteous and affable; at the proper hours his palace was opened to all his subjects, but the voice of a crier was heard, as in the Eleusinian mysteries, pronouncing the same salutary admonition: "Let none enter these holy walls, unless he is conscious of a pure and innocent mind." *Gibbon.*

XLIII. On Howard.

I cannot name this gentleman without remarking that his labours and writings have done much to open the eyes and hearts of mankind. He has visited all Europe — not to survey the sumptuousness of palaces or the stateliness of temples; not to make accurate measurements of the remains of ancient grandeur; or to form a scale (Stufenleiter, *f.*) of the curiosity of modern art; not to collect medals, or collate manuscripts — but to dive into the depths of dungeons; to plunge into the infections of hospitals; to survey the mansions of sorrow and pain; to take the gauge and dimensions of misery, depression,

and contempt; to remember the forgotten, to attend to the neglected, to visit the forsaken, and to compare and collate the distresses of all men in all countries. His plan is original; and it is as full of genius as it is of humanity. It was a voyage of discovery, a circumnavigation of charity. Already the benefit of his labour is felt more or less in every country: I hope he will anticipate his final reward, by seeing all its effects fully realized in his own. He will receive not by retail, but in gross, the reward of those who visit the prisoner; and he has so forestalled and monopolized this branch of charity, that there will be, I trust, little room to merit by such acts of benevolence hereafter. *Burke.*

XLIV. Atahuallpa, the Last of the Incas.

When some five or six thousand of his people had entered the place, Atahuallpa halted, and turning round with an enquiring look, demanded "Where are the strangers? "At this moment Vicente de Valverde, a Dominican friar, Pizarro's Chaplain, and afterwards bishop of Cuzco, came forward with his breviary, or as other accounts say, a Bible, in one hand and a crucifix in the other, and approaching the Inca, told him that he came by order of his commander to expound to him the doctrines of the true faith, for which purpose the Spaniards had come from a great distance to his country. The friar then explained, as clearly as he could, the mysterious doctrine of his religion, and concluded with beseeching the Peruvian monarch to abjure the errors of his own faith, to embrace that of the Christians now proffered to him, and to acknowledge himself a tributary of the Emperor Charles the Fifth, who, in that event, would aid and protect him as his loyal vassal. Whether Ata-

huallpa possessed himself of every link in the curious chain of argument by which the monk connected Pizarro with Saint Peter, may be doubted. But there is no doubt, he perfectly comprehended that the drift of the discourse was to persuade him to resign his sceptre and acknowledge the supremacy of another. The eyes of the Indian monarch flashed fire, and his dark brow grew darker as he replied, "I will be no man's tributary! I am greater than any prince upon earth. Your emperor may be a great prince; I do not doubt it when I see that he has sent his subjects so far across the waters; and I am willing to hold him as a brother. He then demanded of Valverde, by what authority he had said these things. The friar pointed to the book which he held as his authority. Atahuallpa taking it, turned over the pages a moment: then, as the insult he had received probably flashed across his mind, he threw it down with vehemence, and exclaimed, "Tell your comrades that they shall give me an account of their doings in my land. I will not go from here till they have made me full satisfaction for all the wrongs they have committed."

Prescott.

XLV. Richard Duke of Gloucester.

Richard assumed the title of protector of the king and kingdom; a station for which the analogy of the constitution in a hereditary monarchy seemed to designate him. It seemed probable that Hastings and Stanley, the friends of Edward IV., began to show misgivings at the designs of Richard, especially after he had compelled the queen to surrender the duke of York to him, under the specious colour of lodging him with his elder brother in the royal palace of the Tower. On the 13th

and contempt; to remember the forgotten, to attend to the neglected, to visit the forsaken, and to compare and collate the distresses of all men in all countries. His plan is original; and it is as full of genius as it is of humanity. It was a voyage of discovery, a circumnavigation of charity. Already the benefit of his labour is felt more or less in every country: I hope he will anticipate his final reward, by seeing all its effects fully realized in his own. He will receive not by retail, but in gross, the reward of those who visit the prisoner; and he has so forestalled and monopolized this branch of charity, that there will be, I trust, little room to merit by such acts of benevolence hereafter. *Burke.*

XLIV. Atahuallpa, the Last of the Incas.

When some five or six thousand of his people had entered the place, Atahuallpa halted, and turning round with an enquiring look, demanded "Where are the strangers? "At this moment Vicente de Valverde, a Dominican friar, Pizarro's Chaplain, and afterwards bishop of Cuzco, came forward with his breviary, or as other accounts say, a Bible, in one hand and a crucifix in the other, and approaching the Inca, told him that he came by order of his commander to expound to him the doctrines of the true faith, for which purpose the Spaniards had come from a great distance to his country. The friar then explained, as clearly as he could, the mysterious doctrine of his religion, and concluded with beseeching the Peruvian monarch to abjure the errors of his own faith, to embrace that of the Christians now proffered to him, and to acknowledge himself a tributary of the Emperor Charles the Fifth, who, in that event, would aid and protect him as his loyal vassal. Whether Ata-

huallpa possessed himself of every link in the curious chain of argument by which the monk connected Pizarro with Saint Peter, may be doubted. But there is no doubt, he perfectly comprehended that the drift of the discourse was to persuade him to resign his sceptre and acknowledge the supremacy of another. The eyes of the Indian monarch flashed fire, and his dark brow grew darker as he replied, "I will be no man's tributary! I am greater than any prince upon earth. Your emperor may be a great prince; I do not doubt it when I see that he has sent his subjects so far across the waters; and I am willing to hold him as a brother. He then demanded of Valverde, by what authority he had said these things. The friar pointed to the book which he held as his authority. Atahuallpa taking it, turned over the pages a moment: then, as the insult he had received probably flashed across his mind, he threw it down with vehemence, and exclaimed, "Tell your comrades that they shall give me an account of their doings in my land. I will not go from here till they have made me full satisfaction for all the wrongs they have committed."

Prescott.

XLV. Richard Duke of Gloucester.

Richard assumed the title of protector of the king and kingdom; a station for which the analogy of the constitution in a hereditary monarchy seemed to designate him. It seemed probable that Hastings and Stanley, the friends of Edward IV., began to show misgivings at the designs of Richard, especially after he had compelled the queen to surrender the duke of York to him, under the specious colour of lodging him with his elder brother in the royal palace of the Tower. On the 13th

of June, 1483, a council was held in the Tower to regulate the approaching coronation; at which were present the lords Hastings and Stanley, together with several prelates. Richard, affecting an unwonted gaiety, desired the bishop of Ely to send for a dish of strawberries for breakfast. Retiring from council for almost an hour, he returned with his looks and gestures entirely altered, and with a sour and angry countenance, knitting his brows and gnawing his lips. After a short time he broke his sullen silence by crying out, "Of what are they worthy who have compassed the death of me, the king's protector by nature as well as by law?" "To be punished," said Hastings, "as heinous traitors." "That is," replied the protector, still dissembling, "that sorceress my brother's wife, and her kindred." This reply was not ungrateful to Hastings, the mortal enemy of the Woodvilles, who said, "Heinous, indeed, if true." The protector, weary of dissimulation, cried aloud, "Yes! I will make good your answer upon your body, traitor, in spite of your ifs and ands." Then he clapped his fist on the board with a great rap, at which token a man who stood without the door cried out, Treason! Men in armour, as many as the apartment could contain, entered into it. Richard said to Hastings, "I arrest thee, traitor!" Stanley and the other obnoxious lords were committed to various dungeons. The protector bade Hastings, in the words of Sir Thomas Moore, "to shrive himself apace; for by St. Paul, I will not dine till I see thy head off!" "It booted him not to ask why? He took a priest at a venture, and made a short shrift; for the protector made haste to dinner, which he might not go to until they were done, for saving of his oath." He was brought

down to the green by the chapel, and being laid on a long log of timber, which happened to be near, his head was struck off, without any form of trial or even specification of his pretended offence. Those who, after such deeds, could have doubted the dire designs of the merciless protector, must surely have relinguished their opinion, when they learned shortly after, that, on the very 13th of June which witnessed the murder of lord Hastings, a like scene was exhibited near the northern frontier of the Kingdom. On that day, Radcliffe, one of Richard's emissaries, entering the castle of Pomfret at the head of a body of armed men, put Rivers and his friends to death, before a crowd of bystanders, with as little semblance of judicial proceeding as was vouchsafed to Hastings. *Sir James Mackintosh.*

XLVI. On Examinations.

There must be University examinations, because the University must, in the discharge of its proper functions, have tests of proficiency, to be applied before her degrees and honours are granted. But examinations are only a means, not an end; a good education, a sound and liberal cultivation of the faculties, is the object at which we ought to aim; examinations cease to be a benefit, when they interfere with this object. The knowledge which is required for the purpose of an examination merely, is often of little value or effect compared with the knowledge which is pursued for its own sake. When a man gives his mind to any subject of study on account of a genuine wish to understand it, he follows its reasonings with care and thought; ponders over its difficulties, and is not satisfied till all is clear to his mental vision. On the other hand, when

he studies for an examination only, he does not wish to understand, but appear to understand; he cares not for unsolved difficulties in his mind, if the examiner detect them not; he wishes to see clearly, only in order that he may express himself clearly. He may thus lose much of what is best in the influence of those studies which tend to educe distinct ideas and sound reasoning habits. Again what is acquired for an examination is likely to be soon forgotten; the mind is bent upon it with an effort, which, though strong at the time, is felt to be temporary, and is followed by a relapse into comparative apathy and obliviousness. Again the habit of preparing for examinations makes the studies which are not recommended by an obvious reference to such an object, appear flat and insipid. The mind craves for the excitement to which it has been accustomed; it becomes restless and volatile; loses the appetite for quiet thought and patient study, and the trust in advantages which must be waited for. Again — if examinations become too frequent, all good courses of study are interfered with. Men are always ready to transfer their solicitude from the end to the mean. We cannot make our examinations every thing to our students, without making their love of knowledge nothing. Compulsory examinations must exist in a University; but there is a servile and ignoble influence breathing about them, since they act not on the hopes, but on the fears, and hold disgrace and degradation before the eyes of the candidate.

Whewell, on the principles of English University Education.

XLVII. Sir Robert Walpole's Reply to Sir John St. Aubin's Speech for repealing the Septennial Act.

Mr. Chancellor of the Exchequer, — Though the question has been already so fully opposed, that there is no great occasion to say anything farther against it, yet I hope the house will indulge me in the liberty of giving some of those reasons which induce me to be against the motion. In general I must take notice, that the nature of our constitution seems to be very much mistaken by the gentlemen who have spoken in favour of this motion. It is certain that ours is a mixed government, and the perfection of our constitution consists in this, that the monarchical, aristocratical, and democratical forms of government are mixed and interwoven in ours, so as to give us all the advantages of each, without subjecting us to the dangers and inconveniences of either. The democratical form of government, which is the only one I have now occasion to take notice of, is liable to these inconveniences: that they are generally too tedious in their coming to any resolution, and seldom brisk and expeditious enough in carrying their resolutions into execution: that they are always wavering in their resolutions, and never steady in any of the measures they resolve to pursue; and that they are often involved in factions, seditions, and insurrections, which expose them to be made the tools, if not the prey, of their neighbours; therefore, in all the regulations we make, with respect to our constitution, we are to guard against running too much into that form of government which is properly called democratical; this was, in my opinion, the effect of the triennial law, and will again be the effect if ever it should be restored.

That triennial elections would make our government

too tedious in their resolves, is evident; because, in such case, no prudent administration would ever resolve upon any measure of consequence, till they had felt not only the pulse of the Parliament, but the pulse of the people; and the ministers of state would always labour under this disadvantage, that as secrets of state must not be immediately divulged, their enemies (and enemies they will always have) would have a handle for exposing their measures, and rendering them disagreeable to the people, and thereby carrying perhaps a new election against them, before they could have an opportunity of justifying their measures, by divulging those facts and circumstances, from whence the justice and wisdom of their measures would clearly appear.

Then, Sir, it is by experience well known, that what is called the populace of the country, are apt to be too much elated with success, and too much dejected with every misfortune; this makes them wavering in their opinions about affairs of state, and never long of the same mind: and as this house is chosen by the free and unbiassed voice of the public in general, if this choice were so often renewed, we might expect, that this house would be as wavering and as unsteady as the people usually are: and it being impossible to carry on the public affairs of the nation, without the concurrence of this house, the ministers would always be obliged to comply, and consequently would be obliged to change their measures as often as the people changed their minds.

With septennial Parliaments, Sir, we are not exposed to either of these misfortunes, because, if the ministers, after having felt the pulse of the Parliament, which they can always soon do, resolve upon any measures, they have generally time enough, before the new election

comes on, to give the people proper information, in order to show them the justice and the wisdom of the measures they have pursued; and if the people should at any time be too much elated, or too much dejected, or should without a cause change their minds, those at the helm of affairs have time to set them right before a new election comes on.

As to faction and sedition, Sir, I will grant, that in monarchical and aristocratical governments it generally arises from violence and oppression; but in democratical governments it always arises from the people having too great a share in the government; for in all countries, and in all governments, there always will be many factious and unquiet spirits, who can never be at rest either in power or out of power; when in power, they are never easy, unless every man submits entirely to their direction; and when out of power, they are always working and intriguing against those that are in, without any regard to justice or to the interest of their country: in popular governments such men have too much game, they have too many opportunities for working upon and corrupting the minds of the people, in order to give them a bad impression of, and to raise discontents against those that have the management of the public affairs for the time; and these discontents often break out into seditions and insurrections. This, Tir, would, in my opinion, be our misfortune, if our Parliaments were either annual or triennial: by such frequent elections, there would be so much power thrown into the hands of the people, as would destroy that equal mixture, which is the beauty of our constitution: in short, our government would really become a democratical government, and might from thence very pro-

bably diverge into a tyrannical. Therefore, in order to preserve our constitution, in order to prevent our falling under tyranny and arbitrary power, we ought to preserve that law, which I really think has brought our constitution to a more equal mixture, and consequently to greater perfection than it was ever in before that law took place.

XLVIII. On Sincerity.

Truth and sincerity have all the advantages of appearance, and many more. If the show of anything be good for anything, I am sure the reality is better; for why does any man dissemble, or seem to be what he is not, but because he thinks it good to have the qualities he pretends to? For to counterfeit and to dissemble is to put on the appearance of some real excellency. Now the best way for a man to seem to be anything, is really to be what he would seem to be. Besides, it is often as troublesome to support the pretence of a good quality as to have it; and if a man have it not, it is most likely he will be discovered to want it, and then all his labour to seem to have it is lost. There is something unnatural in painting, which a skilful eye will easily discern from native beauty and complexion.

It is hard to personate and act a part long; for where truth is not at the bottom, nature will always be endeavouring to return, and will betray itself at one time or other. Therefore if any man think it convenient to seem good, let him be so indeed, and then his goodness will appear to every one's satisfaction; for truth is convincing, and carries its own light and evidence along with it, and will not only commend us to every man's conscience, but, which is much more, to God,

who searcheth our hearts. So that upon all accounts sincerity is true wisdom. Particularly as to the affairs of this world, integrity hath many advantages over all the artificial modes of dissimulation and deceit. It is much the plainer and easier, much the safer and more secure way of dealing in the world; it has less of trouble and difficulty, of entanglement and perplexity, of danger and hazard in it; it is the shortest and nearest way to our end, carrying us thither in a straight line, and will hold out and last longest. The arts of deceit and cunning continually grow weaker and less effectual and serviceable to those that practise them; whereas integrity gains strength by use, and the more and longer any man practiseth it, the greater service it does him, by confirming his reputation, and encouraging those with whom he hath to do, to repose the greatest confidence in him, which is an unspeakable advantage in business and the affairs of life.

A dissembler must always be upon his guard, and watch himself carefully, that he do not contradict his own pretensions; for he acts an unnatural part, and therefore must put a continual force and restraint upon himself. Whereas he that acts sincerely hath the easiest task in the world; because he follows nature, and so is put to no trouble and care about his words and actions; he needs not invent any pretences beforehand, nor make excuses afterwards, for anything he hath said or done.

But insincerity is very troublesome to manage; a hypocrite hath so many things to attend to, as make his life a very perplexed and intricate thing. A liar hath need of a good memory lest he contradict at one time what he said at another; but truth is always consistent with itself, and needs nothing to help it out; it is always near at hand, and sits upon our lips, whereas

a lie is troublesome, and needs a great many more to make it good.

Add to all this, that sincerity is the most compendious wisdom, and an excellent instrument for the speedy dispatch of business. It creates confidence in those we have to deal with, saves the labour of many inquiries, and brings things to an issue in few words. It is like travelling in a plain beaten road, which commonly brings a man sooner to his journey's end than bye-ways, in which men often lose themselves. In a word, whatsoever convenience may be thought to be in falsehood and dissimulation, it is soon over; but the inconvenience of it is perpetual, because it brings a man under an everlasting jealousy and suspicion, so that he is not believed when he speaks truth, nor trusted when perhaps he means honestly. When a man hath once forfeited the reputation of his integrity, nothing will then serve his turn, neither truth nor falsehood.

Indeed, if a man were only to deal in the world for a day, and should never have occasion to converse more with mankind, never more need their good opinion or good word, it were then no great matter (as far as respects the affairs of this world) if he spent his reputation all at once, and ventured it at one throw. But if he be to continue in the world, and would have the advantage of reputation whilst he is in it, let him make use of truth and sincerity in all his words and actions, for nothing but this will hold out to the end. All other arts may fail, but truth and integrity will carry a man through, and bear him out to the last. *Tillotson.*

Düben. Printed by W. Steinmüller.

Books

FOR THE ACQUIREMENT OF

FOREIGN LANGUAGES,

PUBLISHED BY

DAVID NUTT, 270, STRAND.

GERMAN.

TIARKS' PRACTICAL GRAMMAR OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE. Eleventh edition, 12mo, *cloth*, 6*s*.

——— PROGRESSIVE GERMAN READER, containing Grammatical Exercises, Easy Letters, Short Stories, Historical Sketches, Dialogues, Idiomatical Phrases and Proverbs. Eighth edition, 12mo, *cloth*, 3*s*. 6*d*.

——— EXERCISES FOR WRITING GERMAN, adapted to the Rules of his GERMAN GRAMMAR. Tenth edition, 12mo, *cloth*, 3*s*.

——— KEY TO THE EXERCISES FOR WRITING GERMAN, which may also be used as a Reading Book for practising the Rules of Grammar by those who do not wish to write Exercises. 12mo, *cloth*, 2*s*. 6*d*.

——— INTRODUCTORY GRAMMAR OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE, with an INTRODUCTORY READER, and INTRODUCTORY EXERCISES. Seventh Edition, 12mo, *cloth*, 3*s*. 6*d*.

——— SACRED GERMAN POETRY, OR COLLECTION OF HYMNS. 12mo, *cloth*, 2*s*.

This is the most extensively used Series of Elementary German Books, and they enjoy the highest reputation both for public and private tuition.

APEL'S GRAMMAR OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE, founded upon the Principles of Grimm, Becker, Schmitthenner, &c. 8vo, *cloth boards*, 5*s*.

THE MODERN LINGUIST; or, Conversations in English, French, and German; preceded by Rules for the Pronunciation of German, a copious Vocabulary, and a Selection of Familiar Phrases; and followed by Models of Receipts, Bills of Exchange, Letters, Notes, Tables of the English, French, and German Coins, and of the English and French Weights and Measures. By ALBERT BARTELS. In square 16mo, neatly bound in cloth. Third edition, price 3*s*. 6*d*.

——— in ENGLISH and GERMAN (only). 18mo, bound in cloth. Third edition, price 2*s*. 6*d*.

It has been the aim of the compiler of these Works to introduce only such phrases and expressions as refer more exclusively to the current topics of the day; and he believes they will be found more practically useful to the student and to the traveller than the majority of Guides and Dialogue Books hitherto published.

AHN'S NEW PRACTICAL AND EASY METHOD OF LEARNING THE GERMAN LANGUAGE. Parts 1 & 2 in 1 vol., 12mo, *cloth*, 3*s*. Part 1, separately, 1*s*. Part 2, 1*s*. 6*d*. Part 3 (Reading Course), 1*s*. 6*d*.

——— KEY to Ditto, *sewed*, 8*d*.

BERNARD'S (Madame.) German Equivalents for English Thoughts. 12mo, *cloth*, 5*s*.

BOILEAU. On the NATURE and GENIUS of the GERMAN LANGUAGE. New edition, 12mo, *cloth boards*, 5*s*.

——— LINGUIST. A complete Course of Instruction in the German Language, in which attention is particularly directed to peculiarities in Grammatical forms and constructions: exemplified by selections from the best authors. New Edition, 12mo, *boards*, reduced from 7*s*. to 3*s*. 6*d*.

BÜNGER'S GERMAN TRAVELLING CONVERSATION, for Schools and Tourists; German and English on opposite pages, interleaved with blank paper, New Edition, 16mo, *cloth*, 2*s*.6*d*.

——— German Tales and Poetry by the best Authors, selected and adapted for the use of English Students, with a complete Vocabulary of the Prose Text. 12mo, *cloth*, 5*s*.

CAMPAN'S CONVERSATIONS OF A MOTHER WITH HER DAUGHTER; in a Series of Dialogues, arranged for English Young Ladies. Translated into German, by HENRIETTA VEITH. 12mo, *cl*., 4*s*.

CRABB'S EXTRACTS FROM THE BEST GERMAN AUTHORS. Eighth edition, entirely remodelled and considerably enlarged, with Analytical Translation, Notes, and a copious Vocabulary, for the Use of Beginners in Schools and private Tuition. By DR. HAUSMANN. 12mo, *cloth*, 5*s*.

——— ELEMENTS OF GERMAN AND ENGLISH CONVERSATION ON FAMILIAR SUBJECTS, with a Vocabulary to each Dialogue. Eleventh edition. By DR. BERNAYS. 12mo, *cloth*, 3*s*. 6*d*.

DEMMLER (F.) COMPENDIOUS GRAMMAR OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE. Second edition, 12mo, *cloth*, 4*s*.

——— GERMAN READER, a Selection of Extracts from distinguished German Authors. New edition, 12mo, *cloth*, 4*s*.

——— EXERCISES ON THE GERMAN GRAMMAR. Second edition, 12mo, *cloth*, 2*s*. 6*d*.

——— KEY TO DITTO, 12mo, 2*s*. 6*d*.

The Author of this series of School Books is the Professor of German at the Royal Military College, Sandhurst.

DONATTI'S GERMAN AND ENGLISH GRAMMAR. Third edition, 12mo, *cloth*, 2*s*.

EGESTORFF (C. H. C.) A CONCISE GRAMMAR OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE on the principles adopted in the Schools of Germany, etc. 4*s*.

ERMELER (C. F.) DEUTSCHES LESEBUCH, or GERMAN READING BOOK. New edition, enlarged, improved, and adapted to the use of English Students, by DR. A. HEIMANN, Professor of German at the London University. Seventh edition, 12mo, *cloth boards*, 5*s*.

This is one of the most desirable and useful Reading Books that can be placed in the hands of a student of the German language. The selection has been made with great taste and care, and does not contain a single piece that is not a perfect specimen of composition.

EULENSTEIN'S GERMAN GRAMMAR. Fourth edition, 12mo, *cl.*, *4s.*

——— EXERCISES on Ditto. 12mo, *cloth boards*, *2s. 6d.*

FEILING'S PRACTICAL GUIDE TO THE STUDY AND GRAMMAR OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE. Second edition, 12mo, *roan*, *5s.*

——— COURSE OF GERMAN LITERATURE. 3rd edit., *cl.*, *bds.*, *5s.*

——— KEY TO THE GUIDE. 12mo, *cloth*, *4s.*

The Author of these works is the Professor of German at the City of London School, and the Royal Military Academy at Woolwich.

FISCHEL (DR. M. M.) A GERMAN READING BOOK, on a new principle, containing a Story by F. HOFFMANN, literally translated, with Notes of Elementary Grammar, etc., by DR. M. M. FISCHEL, of Queen's College, London. Second Edition, corrected and Improved. 1 vol., crown 8vo., *5s.*

FLUEGEL'S GERMAN AND ENGLISH AND ENGLISH AND GERMAN DICTIONARY. New edition, adapted to the English Student, with great additions and improvements, by C. A. FEILING, DR. A. HEIMANN, and J. OXENFORD, Esq. 2 vols., 8vo, *cloth boards*, *1l. 4s.*

. It is very desirable that parties wishing to have this work should be particular in specifying the *New London Edition*, as there are two other editions bearing the name of Fluegel: the one more bulky and much dearer,—the other, edited by the *Son* of the Lexicographer, smaller and somewhat cheaper, though both are greatly inferior in utility for the English student, having been compiled without English assistance, and for the use *especially of German students*.

——— Abridged edition for the Use of Travellers and Schools. New Edition. 1854. Royal 18mo (760 pages), *7s. 6d.*

FOUQUÉ (DE LA MOTTE). UNDINE. Square 12mo, *cloth*, *3s.*

——— SINTRAM UND SEINE GEFAHRTEN. Square 12mo, *cloth*, *3s. 6d.*

——— DIE BEIDEN HAUPTLEUTE. Square 12mo, *cloth*, *2s.*

——— ASLAUGA'S RITTER. Square 12mo, *cloth*, *2s.*

——— DIE JAHRESZEITEN. Four Parts in 1 vol., square 12mo, *cloth*, *7s. 6d.*

The above Editions of Fouqué's celebrated Romances, known as the "Four Seasons", are elegantly and correctly reprinted, and adapted both for presents and reading books.

The FIRST GERMAN READING BOOK, for English Children and Beginners, with Explanatory Notes by DR. A. HEIMANN. New Edition. 12mo, *cloth bds.*, *3s. 6d.*

This very admirable little work, compiled by the Professor of German at the London University, has met with much success; and is as well suited for adults commencing the study of the Languages as for children.

GOETHE'S IPHIGENIE AUF TAURIS, arranged for the use of the German Student, with Notes, Vocabulary, and Interlinear Translations of the First Scenes, by M. BEHR, Ph.D., late Professor of the German Language and Literature at Winchester College. 12mo, cloth, *2s. 6d.*

——— FAUST; with explanations of the most difficult words and phrases, by the REV. DR. TIARKS, to which are added the two celebrated Hymns, Stabat Mater and Dies Iræ, in the original, and with a German Metrical Translation. 18mo, *cloth*, *3s. 6d.*

GRIMM'S Fünf Mærchen aus der Tausend und Einen Nacht. 12mo, *cloth*, 3*s*. 6*d*.

This little work contains a translation, by A. L. Grimm, of five of the most popular tales out of the Arabian Nights; it was reprinted at the suggestion of Dr. Tiarks, and is used in many schools.

HAUFF, Das kalte Herz. With a literal translation of the first half-dozen pages, explanation of idiomatic peculiarities, etc., by H. Apel. New edition, 12mo, *cloth boards*, 3*s*. 1856.

HEILNER'S (G. M.) Grammar of the German Language philosophically developed. 8vo, *cloth*, 7*s*. 6*d*., originally published at 10*s*.

This is, undoubtedly, one of the most scientific and profound Treatises on German Grammar that has ever been published in this country.

HEIMANN'S (DR. A.) Fifty Lessons on the Elements of the German Language. 12mo, *cloth*, 5*s*.

——— Materials for translating English into German. Two parts in 1 vol., 12mo, *cloth*, 5*s*. 6*d*.

Either part can be had separately, price 3*s*.

——— Key to Ditto, by Dr. Erdmann. 8vo, *sewed*, 3*s*. 6*d*.

The Author of these two very useful works is Professor of the German Language and Literature at the London University.

HILPERT'S German and English Dictionary. 2 stout vols., 8vo., 1900 pages, *sewed*, 7*s*.; bound in 1 vol., *cloth*, 8*s*.; *half-morocco, flexible back*, 10*s*. 6*d*.

This is unquestionably the cheapest German and English Dictionary.

KOHLRAUSCH'S Kurze Darstellung der Deutsche Geschichte, with copious English Notes, and a short Sketch of German Literature, by Dr. A. Bensbach, Professor of German at Queen's College, Galway. 8vo, *cloth bds*., 4*s*. 6*d*.

This work contains an admirable compendium of Kohlrausch's well-known History of Germany. The notes were specially compiled for the use of the scholars in Winchester College.

MARCUS' Comparative Vocabulary of the English and German Languages. Square 12mo, *cloth*, 3*s*. 6*d*.

This little work is compiled on an entirely new and original plan, and will be found of great assistance in tracing the connection between the two languages, and in shewing the value and bearing of numerous idiomatical expressions.

——— The Declension of the German Article, Adjective, Pronoun, and Noun. 8vo, *sewed*, 1*s*.

NAGEL'S Treatise on the Pronunciation of the German Language. 12mo, *cloth boards*, 4*s*.

"The theory is Becker's; but Mr. Nagel has worked it out on a plan of his own, carefully discussing the value of every letter, and the principles of accentuation in detail, illustrating his remarks with copious exercises. It is altogether a very useful book, and unique in its kind—and we are not aware of any other that will fully supply its place."—*Times*.

NOEHDEN'S German and English Grammar. Ninth edit., 7*s*. 6*d*.

——— Elements of German Grammar. 12mo, *bds*., 5*s*.

——— German Exercises. 12mo, *boards*, 6*s*.

——— Key to Exercises, by Schultz. 8vo, *boards*, 3*s*. 6*d*.

OCTAVE. Difficult Grammatical Forms of the German Language, on a sheet, 1*s*, or neatly mounted in case, 2*s*. 6*d*.

OLLENDORFF'S GERMAN METHOD, TRANSLATED, unabridged, from the original French edition, by H. W. DULCKEN, 12mo, *cloth*, 5*s*. 6*d*. KEY TO DITTO, 3*s*. 6*d*.

OTTO (DR. E.) GERMAN CONVERSATION-GRAMMAR, revised by DR. T. GASPEY. *New Edition.* One vol., square 12mo, *cloth*, 5*s*.

———— KEY TO DITTO, 2*s*.

SCHMIDT (J. A. F.) GRAMMATICAL AND PRACTICAL GUIDE TO THE GERMAN LANGUAGE. Two Parts in 1 vol., 12mo, *cloth*, 3*s*. 6*d*.

———— KEY TO DITTO, 1*s*.

———— BOY AND THE BIBLE; an interesting tale in German, with interlinear translation in English, 2*s*.

SELIG (M.) GERMAN MADE EASY; a New Practical and Speedy Method for Self-Instruction in the German Language, in which the Accentuation and Pronunciation are Adapted throughout to the English Manner of Spelling. By Professor SELIG, in Berlin. One vol., 8vo, *cloth*, 6*s*.

SONNENSCHEIN AND S. STALLYBRASS' EASY READING BOOK FOR STUDENTS OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE, consisting of Short Poems selected from Goethe, Schiller, Uhland, etc., with interlinear translations, Notes and Tables, chiefly Etymological. 1 vol., 12mo., *cloth boards*, 4*s*. 6*d*.

STEINMETZ (DR. H.) THE ACCIDENCE OF GERMAN GRAMMAR: shewing in a simple Tabular Form the Inflections of the various Parts of Speech, 1 vol. 12mo, 1*s*. 6*d*.

———— German Exercises for the Use of Beginners; With a Key. 12mo, cloth, 2s. 6d.

———— First Reading Book for Beginners; being a Selection of Grimm's Tales, and elegant Extracts of Poetry. With Notes and Vocabulary. 12mo, cloth, 2s.

STROMEYER'S GERMAN EXERCISES, with a Grammatical Introduction, being a Guide to German Writing. 12mo, *cloth*, 2*s*.

TIECK'S BLAUBART, EIN MÄRCHEN IN FÜNF AKTEN, with a translation of difficult words and passages, examination of Grammatical peculiarities, &c., by H. APEL, 12mo, *cloth*, 3*s*.

THIEME'S (BLACK'S) GRAMMATICAL GERMAN AND ENGLISH AND ENGLISH AND GERMAN DICTIONARY. Two Parts in 1 vol., Crown 8vo., *roan*, Sixth edition, 7*s*.

TROPPANEGER (A.) ENGLISH GERMAN GRAMMAR, with Reading Lessons and Progressive Exercises. Fifth edition, 12mo, 6*s*.

WENDEBORN'S GERMAN GRAMMAR. Eleventh edition, entirely remodelled by Professor A. HEIMANN, of the London University. 12mo, *cloth*, 6*s*.

WITTICH'S GERMAN GRAMMAR. Fifth edit., 12mo, *cloth*, 6*s*. 6*d*.

———— GERMAN FOR BEGINNERS. New edition, 12mo, *cloth*, 5*s*.

———— KEY TO DITTO. 12mo, *cloth*, 7*s*.

———— GERMAN TALES FOR BEGINNERS, arranged in a progressive order. Seventh edition, 12mo, *cloth*, 6*s*.

SPANISH.

DELMAR'S Complete Theoretical and Practical Grammar of the Spanish Language, in a Series of Lectures, with copious Examples and Exercises *written* with the new Spanish Orthography, and particularly adapted for Self-Tuition. 6th Edition, carefully revised, 12mo, cloth, 8*s*.

——— Key to the Exercises contained in Ditto. Cloth, 3*s*. 6*d*.

DELMAR'S Guide to Spanish and English Conversation. 3rd Edition, enlarged and improved, 4*s*.

——— Modelos de Literatura Española: or, Choice Selections in Prose, Poetry, and the Drama, from the most celebrated Spanish writers, from the Fifteenth century to the present day; with a brief sketch of Spanish literature, and explanatory notes in English, by E. Delmar. 12mo, *cloth* (300 pages), 7*s*.

ROWBOTHAM'S New Guide to Spanish and English Conversations, consisting not only of Modern Phrases, Idioms, and Proverbs, but containing also a copious Vocabulary; with Tables of Spanish Moneys, Weights, and Measures, for the use of the Spaniards as well as the English. 3rd Edition, enlarged and improved, square 18mo, cloth, 3*s*. 6*d*.

NEUMANN and **BARETTI'S** Dictionary of the Spanish and English Languages. Two vols., *boards*, 1*l*. 8*s*.

——— Pocket Abridged Edition. 18mo, *roan*, 6*s*.

ITALIAN.

BLANC'S New Pocket Dictionary of the Italian and English Languages, from Baretti, Graglia, and others. Two parts in 1 thick vol., 32mo, 834 pages, *roan*, 3*s*. 6*d*.

GRAGLIA'S Pocket Dictionary of the English and Italian Languages. Two Parts in 1 vol., 18mo, *roan*, 4*s*. 6*d*.

CLASSIC READINGS in Italian Literature. A Selection from the Prose Writings of the best Italian Authors from the thirteenth century to the present time; with Critical and Explanatory Notes and Biographical Notices, for the Use of Students. By G. Cannizzaro. Thick 8vo, 900 pages, *cloth boards*, 7*s*., published at 15*s*.

This excellent compilation may almost be said to contain a complete repertory of Italian Literature, and the price at which it is offered is much below the cost of printing, etc.

RACCOLTA DI POESIE, tratte dai più celebri Autori antichi e moderni, ad uso degli Studiosi della Lingua Italiana; per cura di G. Venosta. 8vo, neatly bound in cloth, 6*s*. 6*d*.

BARETTI'S Italian and English Dictionary, a New Edition, much improved, and entirely re-edited by Davenport and Cometati, 2 vols. 8vo, *cloth*, 1*l*. 10*s*.

JAMES and **GRASSI.** English and Italian and Italian English Dictionary, with the Pronunciation and Accentuation of every Word in both Languages. 1 vol., 12mo, roan, 6*s*., *sewed*, 5*s*.

FRENCH.

A COMPLETE COURSE OF INSTRUCTION IN THE FRENCH LANGUAGE, in 3 parts. Grammatical Course—Reading and Translation Course — Conversational Course, by ANDRÉ **SEARS**, Professor of the French Language and Literature in the Collegiate Institution, Liverpool. One thick vol., 12mo., bound in cloth, price 5*s*. Each part can be had separately, price 2*s*.; and a Key to the whole, price 2*s*.

ANGOVILLE'S COMPLETE TREATISE ON FRENCH GRAMMAR, illustrated by numerous Examples. *New and revised edition.* Thick 12mo, bound in roan, 6*s*. 6*d*.

The Author of this excellent work is Professor of the French Language at Winchester College, and formerly the Naval School at Gosport, &c., &c., and his Grammar has been introduced in several schools and private families with great and well-merited success.

BARTEL'S MODERN LINGUIST; or, Conversations in English and French, followed by Models of Receipts, Bills of Exchange, Letters, Notes, Tables of French and English Coins, &c. Third edition, conveniently printed in pocket size, price 2*s*., neatly bound in cloth.

BLANC'S POCKET DICTIONARY OF THE FRENCH AND ENGLISH LANGUAGE. Two parts in one thick vol., 32mo, 990 pages, *roan*, 3*s*.

This is the cheapest French Dictionary ever published.

NUGENT'S POCKET DICTIONARY OF THE FRENCH AND ENGLISH LANGUAGES. Two Parts in 1 vol., 18mo, *roan*, 4*s*. 6*d*.

JAMES AND **MOLÉ'S** DICTIONARY OF THE FRENCH AND ENGLISH LANGUAGES, FOR GENERAL USE, with the Accentuation and a Literal Pronunciation of each Word in both Languages; compiled from the best and most approved English and French Authorities. Two Parts in 1 vol., 8vo., *sewed*, 4*s*. 6*d*.; *roan*, 5*s*. 6*d*.

FABLES DE LAFONTAINE, avec Notices sur sa vie et sur celles d'Esope et de Phèdre, et des Notes, par M. de Levizac. Neuvième edition, 12mo, roan, 5*s*.

NUMA POMPILIUS, par Florian. Neuvième edition, revue et soigneusement corrigée, par N. Wanostrocht, 12mo. roan, 4*s*.

The **LEXICON FRENCH GRAMMAR**, for the use of English Students, by SAINT ANGE SIMEON, late Professor at Glasgow. One vol., 12mo, containing 456 closely printed pages, neatly bound in cloth, 5*s*.

WANOSTROCHT'S GRAMMAR OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE, with practical exercises, revised and enlarged, by J. C. TARVER, 12mo. roan, 4*s*.

MANIER'S FRENCH PHRASE AND WORD BOOKS, after the plan of the Abbé Bossut, 32mo, in stiff wrapper, 1*s.* each.

———— FIRST AND SECOND FRENCH READER, 32mo, stiff wrapper, 1*s.* 6*d.* each.

These admirable little works will be found of great utility for beginners in the study of the language.

LES DEUX PERROQUETS; Ouvrage Français destiné à faciliter aux Anglais la Causerie Elégante, la Lettre et le Billet, à l'usage des Dames, des Jeunes Filles, et des Enfans; par UNE DAME. 12mo, handsomely bound in cloth, 4*s.*

"To recommend this little book to general favour it is only necessary to state briefly its useful object, which is to facilitate the acquirement by the English of the particular tone and idiom of the every day language, spoken and written in the best French society, the 'talk', the prattle, the chat, the gossip, but all perhaps better expressed by the term *causerie* than by any English word that at present occurs to us. Without this acquirement one cannot get on in Paris, though he may have long studied the language and acquired a familiar acquaintance with the most elegant French writers."—*Morning Chronicle.*

FRENCH SCHOOL BOOKS,

WITH THE ELISIONS MARKED, AND THE MODIFICATION OF VOWELS,

BY J. TOURRIER.

1. FRENCH AS IT IS SPOKEN IN PARIS. Forty-four Lessons on the Elisions, the Modification of Vowels, Accents, Quantity, &c. 28rd Thousand, *sd.*, 1*s.*; *cl.* 1*s.* 6*d.*
2. EASY FRENCH LESSONS. A French Primer, 1*s.*
3. THE LITTLE MODEL-BOOK. Bound with the above, making altogether Eighty very progressive French Lessons, and a small Treatise on French as it is spoken, *sewed*, 1*s.* 9*d.*; *cloth*, 2*s.*
4. THE JUVENILE FRENCH GRAMMAR, Rules, Exercises, and many Examples, &c., 300 pp., *cloth*, 2*s.* 6*d.*
5. KEY to Ditto, 2*s.* 6*d.*

FRENCH BOOKS FOR ADVANCED PUPILS.

6. THE MODEL-BOOK, being a complete course of One Hundred Lessons, Prose and Poetry, 400 pp., 8vo, *cloth boards*, reduced to 7*s.* 6*d.*
7. FRENCH GRAMMAR, with 337 numbered Rules, 224 Exercises, with Referring Numbers. Seventh Edition, 400 pp., 8vo, *cloth boards*, 4*s.*
8. KEY to Ditto, 3*s.*
9. A GUIDE TO PARIS AND ITS ENVIRONS; or, Familiar Dialogues in French and English, with a Map. Seventh thousand, 2*s.* 6*d.*; *cloth*, 3*s.*
10. JACOTOT'S METHOD Explained. A new plan of Education and Intellectual Emancipation, 1*s.*
11. THE EIGHTY FRENCH CONSONANTS, 1*s.*

T. Richards, 37, Great Queen Street.